

PDF version: for searching purposes the symbol ° has been changed to @, ◆ to +,

≈ to ^, ŋ to ʌ (Alt+252); and both || and || to "

To enable specifically upper- or lower-case searches, use Advanced Search and mark "Case sensitive".  
To search for one of the following characters, copy it into a search box.

ö Ö ü Ü š Š § « »

---

STREET'S TEXT OF THE *SECRET HISTORY OF THE MONGOLS*

Version 24 of 10 October 2013

Copyright John C. Street 1985-2013

1010 Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-un niuca tobcaan<sup>1</sup>

1011 (§1) C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan-u hujaur.

1012 Deere te<sup>n</sup>geri-ece jayaa-tu töre=gsen börte cino: a=juu.

1013 Gergey in-u qoay maral a=jjay. Te<sup>n</sup>gis ketül=jü ire=BA.

1014 Onan müren-ü teriün-e Burqan<sup>2</sup> qaldun-a nuntuqla=ju

1015 töre=gsen Bataciqan a=juu.

1018 (§2) Bataciqan-u köün Tamaca; Tamaca-yin köün Qoricar\_ mergen.

1019 Qoricar\_ mergen-ü köün Aujam\_ boroul. Aujam\_ boroul-un köün

1020 Sali\_ qacau; Sali\_ qacau-yin köün Yeke\_ nidün; Yeke\_ nidün-ü köün Sem\_ soci;

1021 Sem\_ soci-yin köün Qarcu.

1025 (§3) Qarcu-yin köün Borjigiday\_ mergen. Mo<sup>n</sup>qoljin\_ qoa gergey-tü a=juu.

1026 Borjigiday\_ mergen-ü köün Toroqoljin\_ bayan; Boroqcinq\_ qoa gergey-tü

---

1: YCPS nyuca emended by all editors to niuca (i.e. n<yu>[iu]ca), and tocaan to tobcaan (i.e. to[b]caan). This clumsy-looking means of showing emendations (and interpretations) through bracketing is intended to make possible computer-searches not only for the original and the altered forms, but also for particular segments which it is suggested be dropped or added.

For compressed writings such as niuca for ni<sup>n</sup>uca (i.e. my nyuca for niuca) see deR4.615 and Most99.257-58 (who calls this "l'omission fäutive de l'hiatus"). Related is the use of h or w "to `bridge' the hiatus created by the disappearance of the intervocalic velar stops ɣ/g, hence qahan = qa'an...mawun = ma'u [etc.]" (deR4.222-23). See also Most99.258. references there.

In discussing SH emendations of the Chinese text (= YCPS) below, both the original and the suggested new form are normally presented in my own transcription systems (except, of course, in direct quotation marked by "..."). Thus, for example, the emendation of YCPS abua in line 8478 to abuad (i.e. abuaf[d]) by Haensch (H62txt.69). Haensch actually emended his "abu'a" to "abu'af[t]". Similarly, Haensch's emendation of "Tüggeli" in 1202 to "Tüggelik" (H62.106 and 4) is referred to as a change of Tüggeli to Tüggelig (i.e. Tüggeli[g]).

2: Here, and usually below, the YCPS actually writes not Burqan (as 2474, Z033, for example) but Burhan; i.e. the diacritic character changing h to q is omitted. Such omission in this word is not noted in the present text.

- 1027 Borolday\_ suyalbi jalau-tu dayir boro qoyar külü+üd aqta+s-tu  
 1028 bü=lee. Toroqoljin-u köün Duwa\_ soqor Dobun\_ mergen  
 1029 qoyar bü=lee.  
 1033 (§4) Duwa\_ soqor ma<sup>n</sup>lay dumda qaqca nidü-tü qurban neüri+d qajar-a  
 1034 qara=qu bü=lee.  
 1036 (§5) Niken üdür Duwa\_ soqor Dobun\_ mergen deü-lüe-been Burqan\_ qaldun  
 1037 deere qar=BA. Duwa\_ soqor Burqan\_ qaldun deere-ce qara=ju  
 1038 Tü<sup>n</sup>gelig qoroqan huruu niken böläg irgen newü=jü oro=ju  
 1039 ayisu=qu-yi qara=ju üje=jü  
 1042 (§6) ügüle=rün Te+de newü=jü ayisu=qu+n irgen-ü dotora  
 1043 niken qarau-tay tergen-ü öljige-de niken ökin sayin bu=yu. Güün-e ese  
 1044 ög=te=gsen bö=esü Dobun\_ mergen deü-de-en cima-da quyu=ya kee=jü  
 1045 Dobun\_ mergen deü-yü-en üje=re ile:=BA.<sup>3</sup>  
 1048 (§7) Dobun\_ mergen te+de irgen-dür gür=üesü ün @gü qoa sayin  
 1049 aldar nere yeke-tey Alan\_ qoa nere-tey güün-e @ber ög=te=ey üdüüy  
 1050 ökin a=juu.  
 1052 (§8) Te+de böläg irgen @ber Köl\_ barqujin tögüm-ün ejen  
 1053 Barquday\_ mergen-ü ökin Barqujin\_ qoa nere-tey ökin-i Qori\_ tuma+d-un<sup>4</sup> noyan  
 1054 Qorilartay\_ mergen-e ög=de=gsen a=juu. Qori\_ tuma+d-un qajar-a  
 1055 Ariq\_ usun-a Qorilartay\_ mergen-ü Barqujin\_ qoa-ca  
 1056 töre=gsen<sup>5</sup> Alan\_ qoa nere-tey ökin tere.  
 1060 (§9) Qorilartay\_ mergen Qori\_ tuma+d-un qajar-tur-ıyan buluqan keremün  
 1061 göröe-tey qajar-ıyan qorila=ldu=ju mawula=ldu=ju  
 1062 Qorilar oboq-tu bol=ju *Burqan\_ qaldun-u göröesün*  
 1063 *görüüli sayi-tu qajar sayin kee=n Burqan\_ qaldun-u eje+d*  
 1064 Burqan\_ bos=qaqsan Šinci\_ bayan Urya<sup>n</sup>qay-tur newü=jü ayis=un a=juu.  
 1065 Qori\_ tuma+d-un Qorilartay\_ mergen-ü ökin Ariq\_ usun-a  
 1066 töre=gsen<sup>6</sup> Alan\_ qoa-yi tende quyu=ju Dobun\_ mergen-ü ab=uqsan  
 1067 yosun teyimü.

---

3: Note that YCPS ile- in most occurrences is a causative (= Script ilege-) 'send', hence romanized ile:- here (cf. H62dict.81, which tries to contrast forms with long and short vowel). See deR4.244 and references there.

4: For the marking of plurals in such ethnonyms see Street's 'Nominal plural formations in the Secret History (AOH 14:3.345-378 [1990]). Many of these are highly tentative, since the singular form is questionable or unknown.

5: The g (present in PP) is missing from C.

6: The g (present in PP) is missing from C.

1071 (§10) Alan\_ qoa Dobun\_ mergen-tür ire=jü qoyar köün töre=ül=bi;<sup>7</sup>  
 1072 Bügünütey Belgünütey nere-te+n bü=lee.  
 1074 (§11) Duwa\_ soqor aqa in-u dörben köü-tü bü=lee. Tedüy a=tala  
 1075 Duwa\_ soqor aqa in-u ügey bol=BA<sup>8</sup>. Duwa\_ soqor ügey bol=uqsan-u<sup>9</sup>  
 1076 qoyina dörben köü+d in-u Dobun\_ mergen abaqqa-yu-an  
 1077 uruq-a ülü bol=qa=n doromjila=ju qaqaca=ju ge:=jü newü=BA.  
 1078 Dörben oboq-ta+n bol=ju Dörben irgen te+de bol=BA.  
 1081 (§12) Tein-ü qoyina niken üdür Dobun\_ mergen Toqocaq Ündür deere  
 1082 göröele=re qar=BA. Hoy dotora Urya<sup>n</sup>qa<sup>^</sup>day güün cöe buqu  
 1083 ala=ju qabirqa+s<sup>10</sup> in-u abi+d in-u šira=ju bü=gü-yi jolqa=ju  
 1086 (§13) Dobun\_ mergen ügüle=rün Nökör *široqla-da*<sup>11</sup> ke:=jüü.  
 1087 Ög=sü kee=jü auşgi-tu jildü arasan in-u ab=cu cöe~ buqu-yin  
 1088 miqa gübcin-i Dobun\_ mergen-e ög=BA<sup>12</sup>.  
 1090 (§14) Dobun\_ mergen tere cöe~ buqu-yi aci=ju ayis=urun jaura  
 1091 niken yada<sup>n</sup>gi güün köün-been kötöl=jü yabu=qu-yi jolqa=ju  
 1093 (§15) Dobun\_ mergen Yaun güün ci kee=n asaq=uasu tere güün  
 1094 ügüle=rün Bi Maaliq\_ bayaud-ay; yada=ju yabu=mu. Tere  
 1095<sup>1</sup> göröesün-ü miqan-aca na-da ög. Bi ene köün-been cima-da ög=sü  
 1096 ke:=jüü.  
 1099 (§16) Dobun\_ mergen tere üge-tür cöe buqu-yin öröele quya in-u  
 1100 ququl=ju ög=cü<sup>13</sup> tere köün-i in-u abcira=ju<sup>14</sup> ger dotora  
 1101 jaru=ju a=qu bü=lee.

---

7: C has odd writings for töreülbi here and in 1104, 1126, 1244; in 1104 and 1126 both PP and C actually show the l placed after the bi! In 1071 the bi is to the left of l.

8: YCPS boluBA interpreted as bolBA (i.e. bol<u>BA), here and below (in lines 1171, 1240, 1246, 1248, 1251, 1257(bis), 1253(bis), 1265, 1275, 1276, 1279, 1281, 1284, 1294, 1296, 1297, 1310, 2022.) We find the bolBA form itself written five times in lines 1074-1495, and regularly thereafter. Chinese sources of the 13th-14th centuries often used the Chinese syllable lu (written with various characters) to transcribe syllable-final -l in foreign names and terms. Such use of lu for syllable-final l is not uncommon in other SH forms as well, as noted below passim.

9: The q (present in PP) is missing from C.

10: YCPS qabirqar emended (by Pelliot 6; cf. T'oung Pao 37.102, note 1 [1944]) to qabirqas (i.e. qabirqa<r>[s]).

11: Ligeti here writes two words široqla da, rather than široqla-da (as Pelliot). Cf. deR4.256.

12: The g (present in PP) is missing from C.

13: C öjü, PP ögjü; emended (by H62dict.2, 105) to ögcü (i.e. ög<j>[c]ü).

14: YCPS aciraju emended (H62txt.2, 105, Pelliot 6) to abciraju (i.e. a[b]ciraju).

- 1103 (§17) Teyin a=tala Dobun\_ mergen ügey bof=BA; Dobun\_ mergen-i ügey  
 1104<sup>2</sup> bof=uqsan-u qoyina Alan\_ qoa ere ügeüy<sup>15</sup> bö=ed qurban köü+d töre=ül=bi;  
 1105 Buqu\_ qadagi Buqatu\_ salji Bodoncar\_ mu<sup>n</sup>qaq nere-ten bü=lee.  
 1108 (§18) Urida Dobun\_ mergen-ece töre=gse Belgünütey Bügünütey qoyar köü+d  
 1109 in-u eke-yü-en Alan\_ qoa-yin ecine ügüle=ldü=rün  
 1110 Ene eke bidan-u aqa deü üye~ qaya güün ügey ere ügeüy  
 1111 böe=tele e+de qurban köü+d töre=ül=bi. Ger dotora qaqa  
 1112 Maaliq\_ bayaud-ay güün bu=yu. E+de qurban köü+d teün-ü-ey bu=y~ @je kee=n  
 1113 eke-yü-en ecine kele=ldü=küy-i eke an-u Alan\_ qoa uqa=ju  
 1116 (§19) qabur niken üdür kö<sup>n</sup>šilemel qonin cina=ju Belgünütey  
 1117 Bügünütey Buqu\_ qatagi Buqatu\_ salji Bodoncar\_ mu<sup>n</sup>qaq e+de tabun  
 1118 köü+d-iyen jergele=n sau=:f=ju<sup>16</sup> nijiel müsü+d<sup>17</sup> Ququl=udqun  
 1119 kee=jü ög=BA. Nijiel-i yau bayi=ul=qu+n<sup>18</sup> ququci=ju oor=BA.  
 1120 Basa tabun müsü+d qamtu cuqla=ju<sup>19</sup> Ququl=udqun ke=:jü ög=BA.  
 1121 Tabuula tabun cuq-tay müsü+d güüle=ldü=n bari=ju bitü=ül=jü<sup>20</sup> ququl=un  
 1122 yada=BA.  
 1125 (§20) Tende Alan\_ qoa eke in-u ügüle=bi. Ta~ Belgünütey Bügünütey  
 1126 qoyar köü+d min-u nama-yi<sup>21</sup> E+de qurban köü+d-i töre=ül=bi.  
 1127 Ken-ü yaun-u köü+d bu=yu' kee=n sere=ldü=n kele=ldü=müy;  
 1128 sere=küy @ber tan-u jöb.  
 1130 (§21) Söni+d büri cewgen šira güün ger-ün erüge dotoqa-yin gege:-er  
 1131 oro=ju keeli min-u bili=jü gegeen in-u keeli-tür min-u  
 1132 šir<sup>n</sup>ge=gü bü=lee. Qar=urun naran sara-yin kili-yer šira noqay metü  
 1133 šicabalja=ju qar=qu bü=lee. {<sup>22</sup>Deleme yeki=n ügüle=d<sup>23</sup>~ ta.

---

15: YCPS ügeüyü emended to ügeüy (i.e. üge<y>üy), here and throughout the text (but see note at line 6095). It was apparently Ligeti who first suggested this now generally accepted interpretation. (But note note to 6095 below.)

16: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

17: For this word, plural of an obsolete müsün 'rod, [arrow-]shaft', see deR4.262. The singular (transcribed mösun by Vietze92.4 line 168, etc.) occurs in the parallel passage in Altan Tobchi §6a.

18: YCPS bayiunqun emended by Haenisch and Pelliot to bayiulqun (i.e. bayiu[l]qun); the small character changing a syllable closed by n to one with l was simply omitted..

19: The q (present in PP) is missing from C.

20: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

21: Note the referential object (Street13.12-15): 'saying of me "She has..."'.

22: Five of the primary sources for the present SH text attempt to distinguish poetry from prose. Kozin and Ligeti do so in their romanized Mongolian texts, and Pelliot uses boldface type to show what he took to

- 1134 {Tewü-ber uqa=asu temdeg in-u {te<sup>n</sup>giri-yin köü+d bu=yu~ @je. {Qara terüü-tü
- 1135 güün-tür {qanilqa=n yeki=n ügüle=d~ ta. {Qamuq-un qa+d bol=uasu
- 1136 {qaracu+s tende uqa=d~ @je }kee=BA.
- 1140 (§22) Basa Alan\_ qoa tabun köü+d-te-en söyüer üge ügüle=rün
- 1141 Ta tabun köü+d min-u qaqca keeli-ece töre=BA. Ta tuqar-un tabun müsü+d
- 1142 metü qaqca qaqca bol=uasu tere nijiel müsü+d metü
- 1143 ken-e @ber kilbar-a ququl=da=qu+n ta. Tere cuq-tay müsü+d metü
- 1144 qamtu niken eye-te+n bol=uasu ken-e @ber kilbar-a yeki=n bol=qu+n ta kee=bi.<sup>24</sup>
- 1145 a=tala Alan\_ qoa eke an-u ügey bol=bi.
- 1148 (§23) Eke-yü-en Alan\_ qoa-yi ügey bol=uqsan-u qoyina aqa+nar
- 1149 deü+ner tabuula adusun idee-ben qubiya=ldu=run
- 1150 Belgünütey<sup>25</sup> Bүgünütey Buqu\_ qatagi Buqatu\_ saljı<sup>26</sup> dörbeüle ab=ulca=BA;
- 1151 Bodoncar-a~ Mu<sup>n</sup>qaq budawu bu=yu kee=n uruq-a ülü toa=n qubi ese
- 1152 ög=BA.
- 1155 (§24) Bodoncar uruq-a ese toa=qda=ju<sup>27</sup> Ende<sup>28</sup> a=tala yaun kee=jü
- 1156 <sup>29</sup>**qol**~ daari-tu **qodoli** seül-tü oroq~ şıqula-yi unu=ju
- 1157 Ükü=esü in-u ükü=sügey. A=asu in-u a=suqay kee=jü

---

be poetic instances of initial alliteration (but does not actually demarcate poetic lines); Cleaves and de Rachewiltz distinguish poetry by indentation of lines in their English translations.

Footnotes will be included below for each set of poetic lines, unless in a particular passage these are treated in the same way by all five of these writers. Such notes detail major differences in the way poetic lines are divided up, or occasional exclusion of a word or two from the poetic lines.

The symbols { and } -- showing the start of a hypothetical poetic line and the following resumption of prose -- mark my own preference for poetic line-breaks, usually following de Rachewiltz.

In the present passage in §21 the poetry is marked by CL82.4 and deR4.4-5, following Pelliot and Ligeti; only Kozin fails to indicate poetry.

23: For this form of the verb, a plural of the modal (-n) converb used as a finite verb, see MostSQP.10-11 (= HJAS 13.294-5); and for more extensive discussion, fn. 178 on pp. 194-95 of that work (= HJAS 15.324-5).

24: YCPS kee=bi[.] Such errors in spacing-as-punctuation (Street86) are, for the most part, shown in this text — rather haphazardly, and primarily at line-end or where the actual spacing is misleading — only for major space (here romanized as a period, semicolon, or dash) and only in Chapters 1-5 (or later, truly exceptional cases). See note to 4505.

25: The | (present in PP) is missing from C.

26: The | (present in PP) is missing from C.

27: The q (present in PP) is missing from C.

28: YCPS ede emended by Ligeti to ende (i.e. e[n]de).

29: CL82.5 generally marks as poetry any sequence here bolded by Pelliot to show initial alliteration, even when other editors do not. Such passages will not be marked by { and } below.

- 1158 Onan<sup>30</sup> müren huruu yorci=ju talbi=BA. Yorci=ju Baljun\_ araf<sup>31</sup>
- 1159 gür=cü tende ebesün nembüle ger ki=jü tende a=BA sau=BA<sup>32</sup>.
- 1162 (§25) Teyin a=quy-dur-iyen boroqcin<sup>33</sup> qarciqay qara~ quru bari=ju ide=n
- 1163 bü=küy-i üje=jü <sup>34</sup>qol~ daari-tu qodoli seül-tü oroq<sup>35</sup>~ šnqula-yin
- 1164 kilqasu-bar<sup>36</sup> huraqala=ju bari=ju asara=BA.
- 1166 (§26) Ide=küy ideen ügey arun cino:-yin qun-tur qorqa=qsan göröesün
- 1167 mariya=ju qarbu=ju ala=ju ide=ldü=ed cino:-yin ide=gsen-i
- 1168 temgü=ldü=jü ide=ed öer-ün qoolay-da-an qarciqay-baan @ber
- 1169 tejie=ldü=n tere hon qar=BA.
- 1171 (§27) Qabur bol=BA; noqo+d ire=küy caq-tur qarciqay-baan teyile=ül=jü
- 1172 oor=BA. Noqo+d qalawu+d {<sup>37</sup>qojiula+s tutum qo<sup>n</sup>ši+ud {hünjiüle+s
- 1173 tutum hün<sup>n</sup>ši+üd } hünis=tele<sup>38</sup> talbi=BA.
- 1175 (§28) Düyiren gerü-dece<sup>39</sup> Tüngelig qoroqan huruu bölög irgen
- 1176 newü=jü ire=BA. Bodoncar te+de irgen-tür qarciqay-baan
- 1177 oor=uad od=cu üdür esügilejü söni ebesün nembüle
- 1178 ger-dür-iyen ire=jü qono=qu bü=lee.
- 1181 (§29) Te+de irgen Bodoncar-un qarciqay quyu=asu ese ög=BA.

---

30: Capitalization added: Onan is not glossed or marked as a name in C or PP; so line 1186.

31: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

32: C has incorrect glossing division equivalent to aBAsa uBA; PP has the correct division.

33: The q (present in PP) is missing from C.

34: CL82.3 (following Pelliot) marks poetic lines here.

35: The q (present in PP) is missing from C.

36: YCPS kilqasunbar interpreted (by Ligeti) as kilqasubar (i.e. kilqasu<n>bar). Ligeti apparently believed that the nasal in such writings was simply a peculiarity of the Chinese transcription, but de Rachewiltz (see Most/deR 1995.38) insists that occasional retention of the nasal reflects a genuine dialectal phenomenon of Middle Mongolian. All occurrences of such nasals are here relegated to notes, where a search for <n> will find all of them in the YCPS text.

37: Ligeti includes one more word in the third poetic line here; Kozin shows that and a second word as a fourth poetic line.

38: Probably emend to hünüstele (JCS; i.e. hün<ü>[ü]stele); hünüscü occurs in 1359 and X392.

39: YCPS gerü-daca interpreted as front-harmonic (i.e. gerü-d<a>[e]c<a>[e]).

1182 Te+de irgen Bodoncar-ı<sup>40</sup> Ken-ü-ey~ @ba yaun-u-ay~ @be<sup>41</sup> kee=n asa<sup>42</sup>=qu  
 1183 ügey Bodoncar @be<sup>42</sup> te+de irgen-i Yaun irgen kee=n  
 1184<sup>3</sup> asa=ulca=qu ügey yabu=ldu=BA.  
 1186 (§30) Buqu\_ qatagi aqa in-u Bodoncar\_ mu<sup>n</sup>qaq deü-yü-en Ene Onan  
 1187 müren huruu od=ulaa kee=n eri=n ire=jü Tü<sup>n</sup>gelig<sup>43</sup> qoroqan  
 1188 huruu newü=jü ire=gse+d<sup>44</sup> irgen-tür Teyimü teyimü güün  
 1189 teyimü mori-tu<sup>45</sup> bü=lee. kee=n sura=asu  
 1192 (§31) te+de irgen ügüle=rün Güün @ber morin @ber cin-u sura=qu-tur  
 1193 adali bu=yu. Qarciqay-tu~ @je bu=yu. Üdür büri~ man-tur ire=jü  
 1194 esügcilejü od=umu. Söni maqa qaa~ qono=n<sup>46</sup> a=juu. Hörene  
 1195<sup>4</sup> ümERE-ece key bol=uasu qarciqay-bar bari=ul=uqsan noqu+d  
 1196 qalawu+d-un ödün hüsün an-u burqaliq casun metü butara=ju  
 1197 keyis=cü<sup>47</sup> ire=mü. Ende<sup>48</sup> oyira bu=yu~ @je. Edöe ire=gü caq  
 1198 bol=BA. Qorum+ud gülice kee=BA.  
 1202 (§32) Qorum a=tala Tü<sup>n</sup>gelig<sup>49</sup> qoroqan öede niken güün ayis=un bu=yu;  
 1203 gür=cü<sup>50</sup> ire=besü Bodoncar mün a=juu. Buqu\_ qatagi aqa in-u üje=ed

---

40: Note the referential object (note to line 1126, Street13.55): `without those people asking of Bodoncar [lit. `with respect to Bodoncar'] "Whose [son are you], and of what tribe?". Similarly the te+de irgen-i in 1183.

41: Probably this represents a reduced shape of the copula büy. Cf. Most/Cl.453) for bei = büi in a document of 1290, and similar forms elsewhere in Middle Mongolian, e.g. bī in Mukaddimat al-Adab, Ibn al-Muqannā, and the Leiden MS. Note that the Altan Tobchi has kenükei bui yuyan-uqai bui here (Vietze92, line 207).

42: Probably emend to be[r]; see note to 1468.

43: The g (present in PP) is missing from C, but blank space was left for its insertion.

44: The g and d (present in PP) are missing from C.

45: C molintu, PP morintu interpreted (by Ligeti) as moritu (i.e. mori<n>tu).

46: YCPS qono emended to qonon (i.e. qono[n]). This emendation was apparently suggested first by Ozawa (de Rachewiltz, personal communication 6 April 1997). (Pelliot had emended rather to qono[ju], Shiratori to qono[qu], deR72.18 to qono[q]; Haenisch and Ligeti retained the unemended form.) Similar omission of the converbial -n is found in 2220 and 5457.

47: YCPS keyisjü emended to keyiscü (i.e. keyis<j>[c]ü); emendation mine (JCS). The sequence sj seems to occur in the YCPS text only here and in line 1435.

48: C ede emended to ende (i.e. e[n]de). In C there's a tiny bit of blank space before the d; PP has an impossible egde. The emendation was tentatively suggested by H62txt.106 (vs. p. 4), and accepted by Ligeti 29, et al.

49: YCPS Tüngeli emended to Tüngelig, as elsewhere in the text (i.e. Tüngeli[g]).

50: YCPS gürjü emended (by H62txt.106, 4) to gürcü (i.e. gür<j>[c]ü).

1204 tani=ju ab=uad udurid=cu Onan müren öede qatara=ju  
 1205 yorci=ju talbi=BA.  
 1207 (§33) Bodoncar Buqu\_ qatagi aqa-yu-an qoyina-ca daqa=ju qadara=ju  
 1208 yabu=ju<sup>51</sup> ügüle=rün Aqa aqa <sup>52</sup>*beye teriü-tü deel jaqa-tu sayin kee=BA*;  
 1209 aqa in-u Buqu\_ qatagi tere üge in-u yaun-a @ber ese bol=qa=BA.  
 1211 (§34) Basa mün üge ügüle=esü aqa in-u yaun-a @ber ülü bol=qa=n  
 1212 qariu in-u ese donqod=ba<sup>53</sup>. Bodoncar yabu=ju basa mün~ @gü üge ügüle=BA;  
 1213 tere üge-tür aqa in-u ügüle=rün Tuqar-aca mün mün yaun üge ügüle=mü  
 1214 ci kee=be<sup>54</sup>.  
 1216 (§35) Tende-ce Bodoncar ügüle=rün Tuqar-un *Tüngelig qoroqan-a bü=kü+n*  
 1217 *irgen yeke ücü:gen mawuy sayin teriü šiira ügeü+n<sup>55</sup> sacau+n~ bu=y.*  
 1218 Kilbar irgen bu=y. Bida te+den-i haul=uya kee=BA.  
 1220 (§36) Tende-ce aqa in-u ügüle=rün Je teyin bö=esü ger-tür-iyen gür=cü  
 1221 *aqa+nar deü+ner eyetü=ldü=jü<sup>56</sup> te+de irgen-i haul=uya<sup>57</sup>*  
 1222 kee=ldü=jü<sup>58</sup>  
 1224 (§37) ger-tür-iyen gür=üed aqa+nar deü+ner kelele=ldü=jü<sup>59</sup> morila=BA.  
 1225 Mün Bodoncar-i alginci haul=qa=BA.  
 1227 (§38) Bodoncar alginci haul=ju dumda keeli-tey eme-yi bari=ju  
 1228 Yau^jin *güün ci kee=n hasaq=BA<sup>60</sup>. Tere eme ügüle=rün Jarciu+d*  
 1229 *Ada<sup>n</sup>qan Urya<sup>n</sup>qa^jin bi kee=BA.*  
 1232 (§39) Te+de irgen-i aqa+nar deü+ner tabuula dawuli=ju aduun ideen-e

---

51: YCPS yabu emended (by all editors) to yabuju (i.e. yabuf[ju]), as in Altan Tobchi (Vietze92.5, line 221).

52: Marked as two poetic lines by CL82.7.

53: In this line C has a minor space after donqodba and a major space after yabuju. Probably this spacing should be emended to reverse these two, i.e. the intervening words Bodoncar yabuju should have been written lower in the column. Hence [...<,>]

Note also that the ending -ba here is written with the 4-character ba character rather than the usual 15-stroke one (with or without a note); so in lines 1324, 1326, 1424, 1435.

54: Ending written with the 7-stroke be character (and no note).

55: YCPS ügeyün emended to ügeün (i.e. üge<y>ün). See note in line 1104.

56: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

57: Erroneous major space here; i.e. emend spacing as <,>

58: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

59: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

60: The q (present in PP) is missing from C.



1233 haran tudqar-a a=quy sau=quy-a gür=BA.  
 1235 (§40) Tere dumda keeli-tey eme Bodoncar-tur ire=jü köüle=bi.  
 1236 Jad irgen-ü köün bü=lee kee=n Jajiraday nereyid=BA. Jadaran-u  
 1237 ebüge tere bol=BA. Tere Jadaraday-in köün Tügüüdey nere-tü bü=lee;  
 1238 Tügüüdey-in köün Buri\_ bulciru bü=lee; Buri\_ bulciru-yin köün Qara\_ qadaan  
 1239 bü=lee. Qara\_ qadaan-u köün Jamuqa bü=lee. Jadaran oboq-ta+n  
 1240 te+de bol=BA.  
 1244 (§41) Tere eme basa Bodoncar-aca niken köün töre=ül=bi. Bari=ju  
 1245 ab=uqsan eme bü=lee kee=n tere köün-i Baariday nereyid=BA.  
 1246 Baari+n-u ebüge tere bol=BA. Baariday-in köün Ciduqul\_ bökö;  
 1247 Ciduqul\_ bökö eme+s olo-tu bü=lee. Köün in-u mene~ metü töre=BA;  
 1248 Menen\_ baari+n oboq-ta+n te+de bol=BA.  
 1251 (§42) Belgünütey Belgünü+d oboq-ta+n bol=BA. Bögünütey Bögünü+d oboq-ta+n  
 1252 bol=BA. Buqu\_ qatagi Qatagi+n oboq-ta+n bol=BA. Buqutu\_ salji  
 1253 Salji+ud oboq-ta+n<sup>61</sup> bol=BA. Bodoncar Borjigi+n oboq-ta+n bol=BA.  
 1256 (§43) Bodoncar-un ablin<sup>62</sup> eme-dece töre=gsen Barim\_ šiiratu\_ qabici nere-tü  
 1257 bü=lee. Tere Qabici\_ baatur-un eke-yin inje ire=gsen-ï<sup>63</sup>  
 1258 Bodoncar tata=ju bü=lee. Niken köün töre=BA. Jewüredey<sup>64</sup> nere-tü  
 1259 bü=lee. Jewüredey urida jügeli-tü oro=n bü=lee.  
 1262 (§44) Bodoncar ügey bol=uqsan-u qoyina tere Jewüredey-ï<sup>65</sup> Ger darua  
 1263 Ada<sup>n</sup>qa Urya<sup>n</sup>qa<sup>^</sup>day güün a=lua. Teün-ü-ey bu=y~ @je kee=jü  
 1264 jügeli-dece qar=qa=ju Jewüreyi+d oboq-tu bol=qa=ju<sup>66</sup> Jewre+d-ün<sup>67</sup>  
 1265 ebüge tere bol=BA.  
 1268 (§45) Qabici\_ baatur-un köün Menen\_ tudun bü=lee. Menen\_ tudun-u köün  
 1269 Qaci\_ külüg Qacin Qaciu Qacula Qaciun Qaralday Nacin\_ baatur  
 1270 dolban bü=lee.

---

61: The q (present in PP) is missing from C.

62: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

63: YCPS iregni emended (by Pelliot) to iregseni (i.e. ireg[se]ni).

64: See last note to line 1264.

65: Either a referential object (note to 1126 below), or the direct object of qar-qa- (Street 13.13).

66: YCPS boluqaju interpreted as bolqaju (i.e. bol<u>qaju).

67: For Jewred-ün probably read Jewüre:d-ün, i.e. Jew[ü]red-ün interpreted as having a long vowel on the basis of the Jewüreyid earlier in this line and the Altan Tobchi's Jegüriyed (Vietze92.6, line 255). This would also mean interpreting the Jewüredey in the lines above (and 6455) as Jewüre:dey.

- 1273 (§46) Qaci\_ külüg-ün köün Qaydu<sup>68</sup>. Nomolun eke-dece töre=gšen bü=lee.
- 1274 Qacin-u köün Noyagiday nere-tey bü=lee. Noyamšig aburi-tu tula
- 1275 Noyaki+n oboq-ta+n bol=BA. Qaciu-yin köün Barulatay nere-tü bü=lee;
- 1276 yeke bee-tü ideen-e baruq<sup>69</sup> bü=lee. Barula+s<sup>70</sup> oboq-ta+n bol=BA.<sup>71</sup>
- 1277 Qacula-yin köün ideen-e baruq tula yeke Barula ücü:gen Barula
- 1278 nereyid=cü Barula+s oboq-ta+n bol=qa=ju Erdemtü\_ barula
- 1279 Tödöen\_ barula teriü-te+n Barula+s te+de bol=BA. Qaralday-in köü+d
- 1280 budaan qudqula=qu eki teriü ügeü+n tula Budaa+d oboq-ta+n
- 1281 te+de bol=BA. Qaciun-u köün Adarkiday nere-tü bü=lee.
- 1282 Aqa deü jaura adar=uqci<sup>72</sup> tula Adargi+n oboq-ta+n bol=BA.
- 1283 Nacin\_ baatur-un köü+d Uruuday Ma<sup>n</sup>qutay nere-tE+n bü=lee. Uruu+d<sup>73</sup>
- 1284 Ma<sup>n</sup>qu+d oboq-ta+n te+de bol=BA. Nacin\_ baatur-un ablin<sup>74</sup> eme-dece töre=gšen
- 1285 Šijuuday Doqoladay nere-te+n bü=lee.
- 1292 (§47) Qaydu-yin köü+d Bay\_ š<sup>n</sup>qor\_ doqš<sup>n</sup><sup>75</sup> Caraqay\_ l<sup>n</sup>qu Cawjin\_ örtegey qurban
- 1293 bü=lee. Bay\_ š<sup>n</sup>qor\_ doqš<sup>n</sup>-u köün Tumbinay\_ secen bü=lee. Caraqay\_ l<sup>n</sup>qu-yin
- 1294 köün Se<sup>n</sup>güm\_ bilge; Ambaqay-ta+n Tayiciu+d oboq-ta+n bol=BA. Caraqay\_ l<sup>n</sup>qu-yin
- 1295 berigen eme-dece töre=gšen Besütey nere-tü bü=lee. Besü+d<sup>76</sup> oboq-ta+n
- 1296 te+de bol=BA. Cawjin\_ örtegey-in köü+d Oronar Qo<sup>n</sup>qota+n
- 1297 Arula+d<sup>77</sup> Söni+d Qabturqa+s Genige+s oboq-ta+n te+de bol=BA.
- 1302 (§48) Tumbinay\_ secen-ü köün Qabul qahan Sem\_ qacula<sup>78</sup> qoyar bü=lee; Sem\_ qacula-yin

---

68: Most editors tacitly assume that the major space was an error here, and that there is only a single sentence in this line.

69: The q (present in PP) is missing from C.

70: The YCPS thrice marks the morpheme division in this section, but not in other occurrences (lines 3341, 3360).

71: YCPS bol=BA[.]

72: YCPS adaluqci emended to adaruqci (i.e. ada<ɫ>[r]uqci).

73: Locus of morpheme division is unclear; cf. man's name Uruuday, probably Uruu + day.

74: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

75: YCPS došin emended to the doqšin found in the next line (i.e. do[q]šin).

76: Locus of morpheme division not clear.

77: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

78: YCPS Semsecüle, emended twice in this line to Sem\_ qacula (where the difference in vowel harmony is merely a difference in romanization; i.e. Sem[ ]<s>[q]acula); for the emendation see Ligeti in Acta Orientalia Hungarica 26.3-4 (1972). Initial s and q in the Uighur script were often confused by copyists.

- 1303 köün Bültecü\_ baatur bü=lee. Qabul qahan-u köü+d doloan bü=lee.
- 1304 Ä<sup>n</sup>qa yeke in-u Ökin\_ barqaq Bartan\_ baatur Qutuqtu<sup>79</sup>\_ möngür
- 1305 Qutula qahan Qulan Qadaan Tödöen\_ odcigin<sup>80</sup> e+de doloan bü=lee.
- 1309 (§49) Ökin\_ barqaq-un köün Qutuqtu<sup>81</sup>\_ yürki bü=lee. Qutuqtu\_ yürki-yin köü+d
- 1310 Sece\_ beki Taycu qoyar bü=lee. Yürki oboq-ta+n te+de bol=BA.
- 1312 (§50) Bartan\_ baatur-un köü+d Möngütü\_ kiyan Nekün\_ taysi Yisügey\_ baatur
- 1313 Daritay\_ odcigin e+de dörben bü=lee. Qutuqtu\_ möngür-ün köün
- 1314 Büri\_ bökö bü=lee. Onan-u tün-tür qurimla=quy-tur Belgütey-in
- 1315 mürü qa<sup>n</sup>qa=s<sup>82</sup> cabci=qsan<sup>83</sup> tere bü=lee.
- 1318 (§51) Qutula qahan-u köü+d Joci Girmau Altan qurban bü=lee.
- 1319 Qulan\_ baatur-un köün Yeke\_ ceren bü=lee. Baday Kişiliq qoyar
- 1320 darqa+d-un<sup>84</sup> noyan tere bü=lee. Qadaan Tödöen qoyar uruq ügeü+n
- 1321 bü=lee.
- 1324 (§52) Qamuq Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-i Qabul qahan mede=n~ a=ba; Qabul qahan-u qoyina Qabul qahan-u
- 1325 üge-ber doloan köü+d-iyen böe=tele Se<sup>n</sup>güm\_ bilge-yin köün Ambaqay qahan
- 1326 qamuq Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-i mede=n a=ba.
- 1328 (§53) Buyur naur Kölen naur qoyar jaura Uršün müren-e bü=kü+n
- 1329 Ayiri+ud<sup>85</sup> Buyru+ud Tatar irgen-e Ambaqay qahan ökin ög=cü
- 1330 öesün ökin-iyen hüde=jü od=qu bol=un Tatar Jüyi+n irgen
- 1331 Ambaqay qahan-i bari=ju Kita+d-un altan qahan-a ab=cu<sup>86</sup> od=quy-tur

---

79: The q (present in PP) is missing from C.

80: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

81: Twice in this line the syllable-final q of this word (present in PP) is missing from C.

82: Historically this seems the -s converb of a stem formed with causative qa from a verb \*qanu-/qan-/qan-; cf. Cleaves in HJAS 11:3/4.317, referring to the qanqun of Z239. In what follows I have marked relatively few morpheme divisions before possible instances of the -s converb (for which see Murayama "Genchô-hishi no -s owaru converbum" in Gengo Kenkyû 19-20.51-67). In many cases we seem to have frozen forms which should perhaps be treated as simple adverbs (e.g. negüs, tulbas, qaqas, and the like). See line 3062 for the sole SH passage in which an -s converb clearly has its own direct object.

It should be noted that de Rachewiltz (deR4.292-3, 309, 403, et passim) while allowing a suffix s that forms deverbal adverbs (and nouns [deR4.349]), does not believe in Murayama's -s converb (deR4.309).

83: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

84: YCPS darqandun emended (by Haenisch and Pelliot) to darqadun (i.e. darqa<n>dun).

85: Locus of morpheme division unclear in this and the following word.

86: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

- 1332 Ambaqay qahan Besü<sup>87</sup>tey güün Balaqaci elci+n-ier<sup>87</sup> ügüle=jü ile:=rün
- 1333 *Qabul qahan-u doloan köü+d-ün dumda-tu Qutula-da ügüle=rün harban köü+d-ün*
- 1334 *dотора Qadaan\_ taysi-da ügüle kee=n ügüle=jü ile:=rün Qamuq-un qahan*
- 1335 *ulus-un ejen bol=ju<sup>88</sup> öki-ben öesün hüde=küy-ben nama-ar*
- 1336 *kese=dkün; Tatar irgen-e bari=qda=a bi<sup>89</sup>; {<sup>90</sup>tabun quruu+d-iyän*
- 1337 *kimul tamu=tala<sup>91</sup> {harban quruu+d-iyän haud=tala {haci min-u abura=n*
- 1338 *sori=dqun<sup>92</sup> } kee=jü ile:=jüü.*
- 1343 (§54) *Tere caq-tur Yisügey\_ baatur Onan müren-e šibawula=n yabu=quy-tur*
- 1344 *Merki+d-ün Yeke\_ ciledü Olqunu+ud<sup>93</sup> irgen-ece öki ab=cu<sup>94</sup>*
- 1345 *eüs=ge=jü ayisu=qu-yi jolqa=ju öngeyi=jü üje=esü*
- 1346 *önge~ jisü buši-tay öki qatu üje=jü ger-tür-iyen qari=n~ hawul=ju*
- 1347 *Nekün\_ taysi aqa-yu-an Da:ritay\_ odcigin deü-ben udurid=cu ire=jüüy.*
- 1350 (§55) *Gür=küy-lüe Ciledü ayu=ju — qurdun qubi-tu a=juu —*
- 1351 *qubi-yu-an quya in-u deled=cü quburi nambalis<sup>95</sup> buru:d=quy-lua<sup>96</sup>*
- 1352 *qoyina-ca in-u qurbaula udaara=ldu=BA. Ciledü qošün*
- 1353 *qucilis<sup>97</sup> qari=ju tergen-dür-iyen ire=küy-lüe*
- 1354 *tende Höelün\_ üjin ügüle=rün Te+de qurban haran-i uqa=BA@u: ci.*
- 1355 *Ciray ciray-aca busu+d bu=y. Amin-tur cin-u gür=küy*
- 1356 *ciray-ta+n bu=y; amin @ele cin-u bö=esü {<sup>98</sup>öljige tutum öki+d*
- 1357 *{qarau~ tutum qatu+d }bu=y. Amin @ele cin-u bö=esü öki qatu*

---

87: YCPS ecinier emended (by Haenisch and Pelliot) to elcinier (i.e. e[l]cinier); note that this is plural in form but apparently singular in meaning.

88: YCPS boluju interpreted as bolju (i.e. bol<u>ju).

89: All western editions and translations take the bi as part of the foregoing sentence, though the Chinese punctuation clearly implies that it belongs rather with what follows.

90: Not marked as poetry by Kozin or Ligeti.

91: With the root here (and Z322) compare the verb of jaqa-ban bu tamtul-udqun 'do not tear [off] your collar' of 3506.

92: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

93: Locus of morpheme division not certain.

94: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

95: Perhaps namba-li-s? (deR4.307).

96: The d (present in PP) is missing from C, though space was left for it.

97: Perhaps quci-li-s (deR4.307).

98: Not marked as poetry by Kozin or Ligeti.

1358<sup>5</sup> *ol=uyi @je ci; busu nere-tey-i Höelün @taki nereyid=üyü~ @je; ci amin-iyān*

1359 *qoroq; hünür min-u hünüs=cü yabu kee=n camca-ban mültül=jü*

1360 *morin deere-ce naruyid=cu ab=quy-lua qurbaula qošiun*

1361 *quci=ldu=ju gür=cü aysu=qu-lua Ciledü qurdun qubi-yin*

1362 *quya in-u deled=cü juqu=s<sup>99</sup> dutaa=ju Onan müren*

1363 *öede dutaa=BA.*

1368 (§56) *Qurbaula qoyina-ca neke=jü doloan quburi daba=tala*

1369 *hülde=jü qari=ju ire=jü Höelün\_ üjin-i Yisügey\_ baatur*

1370 *delbege-dece kötöl=jü Nekün\_ taysi aqa in-u udurid=cu*

1371 *Da:ritay\_ odcigin deü in-u kiligü dergece=jü ayisu=quy-tur*

1372 *Höelün\_ üjin ügüle=rün Aqa min-u Ciledü {<sup>100</sup>key~ öede {kegül-iyen*

1373 *keyis=ümser<sup>101</sup> {keer qajar-a {keeli-ben ölös=ümser*

1374 *bü=liyi; }edöe ker~ @ele — qoyar šibülger-iyen niken-te*

1375 *aru~ deere-yen oor=cu niken-te ebür-a:n deere oor=cu*

1376 *niken-te uruqši-da niken-te qoyinaqši-da — ker~ @ele~ ki=jü*

1377 *od=umuy ke:=ed {<sup>102</sup>Onan müren-i tolkis=tala {hoy~ jubur dawuris=tala*

1378 *}yeke dawu-bar uyila=ju ayisu=quy-tur Da:ritay\_ odcigin<sup>103</sup>*

1379 *dergece=jü yabu=ju ügüle=rün {<sup>104</sup>Teberi=gü cin-u {dabaa+d olon*

1380 *daba=BA; {uyila=qda=qu<sup>105</sup> cin-u {usu+d olon ketül=BA.*

1381 *{Qayila=asu {qarayi=ju ülü üje=gü cima-yi. {Qayi=basu*

1382 *{qauluqa<sup>106</sup> in-u ülü ol=qu<sup>107</sup> ci; }sem~ bol=i<sup>108</sup> kee=jü idqa=BA.*

---

99: For a morpheme division before the s see deR4.309, and my note to line 1315 above.

100: Unlike other writers, Kozin shows only alternate k-words starting poetic lines.

101: YCPS -ümüser emended twice in this line to -ümser (Most99.250, deR4.310); this is called a privative suffix (= Eng. -less) in Mo/deR 1995.52.

102: Not marked as poetry by Ligeti or Pelliot.

103: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

104: Unlike other writers, Kozin shows only alternate alliterative words as starting poetic lines.

105: The first q (present in PP) is missing from C.

106: YCPS qauluqa (as in lines 1394, 6459), possibly to be emended to qaulqa (i.e. qaul<u>qa); see deR4.312. Other emendations were earlier suggested by H62dict.64) and deR72.294.

107: YCPS oluqu interpreted as olqu (i.e. ol<u>qu).

108: Haenisch 1937.107 apparently took this as an imperative of bol-; if so, it seems unique, perhaps a feminine form of the simple-stem imperative.

- 1383 Höelün\_ üjin-i Yisügey tedüy ger-dür-iyen abcira=BA<sup>109</sup>.
- 1384 Höelün\_ üjin-i Yisügey-in abcira=qsan<sup>110</sup> yosun teyimü.
- 1390 (§57) Ambaqay qahan-u Qadaan Qutula qoyar-i nereyid=cü ile:=gse-er
- 1391 qamuq Mo<sup>n</sup>qol<sup>111</sup> Tayiciu+d Onan-u Qorqonaq jubur qura=ju
- 1392 Qutula-yi qahan bol=qa=BA. Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-un jirqala<sup>n</sup> debse=n<sup>112</sup> qurimla=n
- 1393 jirqa=qu bü=lee. Qutula-yi qa<sup>113</sup> ergü=ed Qorqonaq-un
- 1394 saqlaqar modun horci=n<sup>114</sup> {<sup>115</sup>qabirqa-ta qauluqa {ebüdüg-te ölkeg
- 1395 bol=tala<sup>116</sup> } debse=BA.
- 1398 (§58) Qutula qahan bol=uad Qadaan\_ taysi qoyar Tatar
- 1399 irgen-tür morila=BA. Tatar-un Kötön\_ baraqa Jali\_ buqa
- 1400 qoyar-tur harban qurban-ta qadqu=ldu=ju<sup>117</sup> Ambaqay qahan-u
- 1401 {<sup>118</sup>ösöl ösö=n {kisa~ kisa=n } yada=BA.
- 1404 (§59) Tende Yisügey\_ baatur Tatar-un Temüjin\_ üge Qori\_ buqa terüi-te+n
- 1405 Tatar-i dawuli=ju ire=Esü tende Höelün\_ üjin keeli-tey
- 1406 bü=rün Onan-u Deliün\_ boldaq-a bü=küy-tür jöb tende Cırgis qahan
- 1407 töre=jüüy; töre=küy-tür baraun qar-tur-ıyan şia-yin tedüy
- 1408 nödüñ~ hadqu=n töre=jüüy. *Tatar-un Temüjin\_ üge-yi abcira=qsan-tur*<sup>119</sup>
- 1409 *töre=BA* kee=n Temüjin nere ög=küy teyimü.
- 1413 (§60) Yisügey\_ baatur-un Höelün\_ üjin-ece Temüjin Qasar Qaciun

---

109: The first b (present in PP) is missing from C.

110: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

111: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

112: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

113: For the absence of -n here, in an object form, see deR4.315.

114: Here (and even more clearly in X408) this form seems clearly a converb; elsewhere it may function simply as a postposition. The present text is inconsistent in writing the historical morpheme division in cases of this sort, where what seem historically converbs (e.g. qaqa-s [see note to 1315], yeki-n, teyin), may well have been felt as adverbs or postpositions by the 13th century.

115: Not marked as poetry by Kozin or Ligeti.

116: YCPS bolutala interpreted as boltala (i.e. bol<u>tala).

117: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

118: These poetic lines (repeated in 9124, Y204, and cf. 5196) are marked in Cleaves 1982 translation, and noted by deR4.318. Cleaves always has four lines for these words, de Rachewiltz two. The poetry is not shown by Kozin or Ligeti, except for Ligeti 223 (line Y204, with two poetic lines).

119: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

1414 Temüge e+de dörben köü+d töre=BA. Temülün nere-tey niken~ ökin  
1415 töre=bi; Temüjin-i yisün nasu-tu bü=küy-tür Joci\_ qasar  
1416 doiban nasu-tu bü=lee. Qaciun\_ elci tabun nasu-tu bü=lee;  
1417 Temüge\_ odcigin qunan bü=lee. Temülün ölege-tey bü=lee.  
1420 (§61) Yisügey\_ baatur Temüjin-i yisün nasu-tu bü=küy-tür Höelün  
1421 eke-yin törgü+d<sup>120</sup> Olqunu+ud irgen-tür Naqacu+nar-aca  
1422 in-u öki quyu=su kee=n Temüjin-i ab=uad yorci=BA.  
1423 Qd=quy-tur Cegcer Ciqurqu<sup>121</sup> qoyar-un jaura O<sup>n</sup>gira^day  
1424 Dey\_ secen-i jolqa=ba.  
1427 (§62) Dey\_ secen ügüle=rün *Yisügey quda ken-tür jori=ju ayis=ulaa*  
1428 kee=jüü. Yisügey\_ baatur ügüle=rün Ene köün-ü min-u  
1429 *naqacu+nar Olqunu+ud irgen-tür öki quyu=su' kee=n*  
1430 *ayis=ulua kee=jüü. Dey\_ secen ügüle=rün Ene köün*  
1431 *cin-u {<sup>122</sup>nidün-tür-iyen qal-tu {niur-tur-iyen gere-tü }köün bu=y.*  
1434 (§63) Yisügey quda bi ene söni jewüdün jewüdüle=BA bi; caqa:n š<sup>n</sup>qor  
1435 *naran sara qoyar-i adqu=n nis=cu<sup>123</sup> ire=jü qar deere min-u tuu=ba.<sup>124</sup>*  
1436 Ene jewüdün-iyen güün-e ügüle=rün Naran sara-yi qara=ju üje=gde=n  
1437 *bü=lee. E<sup>d</sup>öe ene š<sup>n</sup>qor adqu=ju abcira=ju*  
1438 *qar-tur min-u tuu=BA. Caqa:n bawu=BA.<sup>125</sup> Yambar @ele sayi*  
1439<sup>6</sup> *üje=ül=ümü' kee=jü — Yisügey quda ene jewüdün min-u cima-yi*  
1440 *@ele köü-been udurid=cu ire=güy-e üje=gse a=juu.*  
1441 Jewüdün sayin jewüdüle=BA. Yaun jewüdün a=qu. Ta Kiya+d  
1442 *irgen-ü sülder ire=jü jaa=qa=qsan a=juu.*  
1445 (§64) Ba O<sup>n</sup>gira+d irgen erte üdür-ecce {<sup>126</sup>jee-yin jisün {ökin-ü ö<sup>n</sup>ge-te+n  
1446 *ulus ülü temece=d.<sup>127</sup> Qacar qoa öki+d-i {qahan*

---

120: For this as plural of a hypothetical \*törkün see Cleaves in HJAS 12.509-510 (1949); in Middle Turkic (Kashgari) the form means 'family, kin', in Kalmyk 'relatives of one's wife and her father'.

121: YCPS Cihurgu emended to the Ciqurqu found in 2367 (i.e. Ci<h>[q]ur<g>[q]u).

122: Not marked as poetry by Kozin or Ligeti.

123: YCPS nisjü emended (by H62txt) to niscü (i.e. nis<j>[c]ü).

124: C tuuba[.]

125: C bawuBA[.]

126: Kozin has poetry starting two words earlier and ending in line 1456. Other writers differ somewhat in their treatments of this passage -- partly because of uncertainty as to whether occurrences of ba belong with a prior verb or the following one.

127: C temeced[.]

- 1447 *bol=uqsan-a tan-u {qasaq~ tergen-tür unu=ul=ju {qara*  
 1448 *buura köl=ge=jü {qatara=ul=ju od=cu {qatun saurin-tur*  
 1449 *{qamtu sau=:l=umu. }<sup>128</sup> Ba ulus irgen ülü temece=d.*  
 1450 Ba {ö<sup>n</sup>ge~ sayi+d öki+d-iyen ös=ge=jü {öljige-tey tergen-tür  
 1451 *unu=ul=ju {öle~ buura köl=ge=jü {eüs=ge=jü od=cu {ündür*  
 1452 *saurin-tur {öreele~ ete:d sau=:l=quy. }Ba erten-ece O<sup>n</sup>gira+d*  
 1453 *irgen {qatun qalqa-ta+n {öki+d öcil-te+n {jee-yin jisün {ökin-ü*  
 1454 *ö<sup>n</sup>ge-ber }bü=lee ba.*  
 1456 (§65) {Nuun köü+d man-u {nuntuq qara=yu. {Ökin köün man-u {ö<sup>n</sup>ge üje=gde=yü.  
 1457 }Yisügey quda ger-tür min-u od=uya. Ökin min-u ücüügen bu=yu;  
 1458 *quda üje=tügey kee=jü Dey\_ secen ger-tür-iyen udurid=cu*  
 1459 *bawu=:l=BA.*  
 1462 (§66) Öki in-u üje=besü niur-tur-iyen gere-tey nidün-tür-iyen qal-tay  
 1463 *ökin-i üje=jü oyin-tur-iyen oro=ul=BA. Temüjin-ece niken nasun*  
 1464 *yeke harban-tay a=juu. Börte nere-tey. Söni qono=ju manaqaşi*  
 1465 *öki in-u quyu=basu Dey\_ secen ügüle=rün Qlon<sup>^</sup>ta@wu.<sup>129</sup> quyu=ul=ju*  
 1466 *ög=besü deejile=gde=gü. Cöen<sup>^</sup>te@wü.<sup>130</sup> quyu=ul=ju ög=besü*  
 1467 *doromjila=qda=qu. Ökin güün-ü jayaan töre=g<sup>n</sup>sen*  
 1468<sup>7</sup> *eüten-tür ötöl=gü ügey. Ökin-iyen @be<sup>131</sup> ög=sü. Köün-iyen~ @be*  
 1469 *gürige+d-te talbi=ju od<sup>132</sup> kee=BA. Je~ bol=ulca=ju*  
 1470 *Yisügey\_ baatur ügüle=rün Köü-ben gürege+d-te<sup>133</sup> talbi=su. Köü~ min-u*  
 1471 *noqay-aca cocimtawu bü=lee. Quda köü min-u noqay-aca bu sociul<sup>134</sup>*  
 1472 *ke:=ed kötöl morin-iyen belge ög=cü Temüjin-i gürege+d-te*  
 1473 *talbi=ju od=cu*  
 1478 (§67) *Yisügey\_ baatur jaura Cegcer-ün şira keer-e Tatar irgen*

---

128: YCPS has an undeniable major space before the ba here and in the next line and 1452, but (at least) Kozin, Pelliot, and Ligeti ignore this, taking the pronoun rather as part of the prior sentence.

129: This and cöentewü; in the next line are the sole instances in the SH where the interrogative particle is written with an initial w, surely representing merely a transitional sound (Street08.77).

130: See note to olontawu in 1465.

131: Probably emend this and the following be to be[r]. (Cf. Street in Ural-Altäische Jahrbücher n.f.1, pp. 161 [1981].) So also in line 1183.

132: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

133: YCPS güregete emended to match the güregedte in 1472 (i.e. gürege[d]te).

134: YCPS sociun emended (by Haenisch and Pelliot) to sociul (i.e. sociu[l], with addition merely of the diacritic character).



- 1479 qurimla=n bü=küy-tür jolqa=ju unda:s=cu qurim-tur an-u bawu=BA<sup>135</sup>;
- 1480 te+de Tatar tani=n a=juu. *Yisügey Kiyān ire=ey ke:=ed uridan-u*
- 1481 dawuli=qda=qsan kegesü-ben durad=cu oyisulad=un qujir=ju<sup>136</sup>
- 1482 qoro qoli=ju ög=cüü. *Jaura mawuy od=cu qurban qonoq*
- 1483 yabu=ju ger-tür-iyen gür=üed mawuy bol=ju
- 1487 (§68) *Yisügey\_ baatur ügüle=rün Dotora min-u mawuy~ bu=y. Derge-de*
- 1488 *ken~ bu=y kee=jü Qo<sup>n</sup>qota<sup>^</sup>day Caraqa ebügen-ü köün Mö<sup>n</sup>lig*
- 1489 *oyira bu=y ke:=esü uri=ju ire=ül=jü ügüle=rün Caqa min-u*
- 1490 *Mö<sup>n</sup>lig köü+d ücü:ge-tü bü=lee<sup>137</sup>. Bi köü-ben Temüjin-i*
- 1491 *gürige+d-te talbi=ju ire=rün jaura Tatar irgen-e*
- 1492<sup>s</sup> *oyisula=qda=a bi; dotora min-u mawuy bu=yu. Ücü:ge+d qocor=uqsa+d*
- 1493 *deü+ner-iyen belbisün bergen-iyen asara=qu-yi ci mede.*
- 1494 *Köü min-u Temüjin-i ötürken od=cu ab=cu ire caqa min-u Mö<sup>n</sup>lig*
- 1495 ke:=ed nögcı=BA.
- 2011 (§69) *Yisügey baatur-un üge-yi buši ülü bol=qa=n Mö<sup>n</sup>lig od=cu*
- 2012 *Dey\_ secen-e ügüle=rün Yisügey aqa Temüjin-i maši möröl=jü*
- 2013 *öre-ben ebed=ümü; Temüjin-i ab=ura ire=be kee=jüü.<sup>138</sup> Dey\_ secen*
- 2014 *ügüle=rün Quda köü-ben möröl=gü bö=esü od=tuqay; üje=jü*
- 2015 *ötör ire=tügey<sup>139</sup> kee=jü Mö<sup>n</sup>lig ecige Temüjin-i ab=cu<sup>140</sup> ire=be.*
- 2017 (§70) *Tere qabur Ambaqay qahan-u qatu+d Örbey Soqatay jirin yeke+s-e qajaru*
- 2018 *inerü qar=uqsan-tur Höelün\_ üjin od=cu qojid gür=cü qojida=u:l=da=ju<sup>141</sup>*
- 2019 *Höelün\_ üjin Örbey Soqatay jirin-e ügüle=rün «<sup>142</sup>Yisügey baatur-i*

---

135: PP's reading bawuBA is preferred by all editors to C's bawulBA (i.e. bawu<ɮ>BA).

136: The suffixal shape ju here, unique in the SH after r, emended (by myself, JCS) to the expected cu (i.e. qujir<j>[c]u).

137: Pelliot 14 and Haenisch (H62txt.9) divided the sentence after the next word, bi, rather than before it (as Shiratori and Kuribayashi, who follow the spacing of characters which implies that bi is part of the second sentence). DeR4.16 translates the pronoun in both sentences.

138: C keejüü[.]

139: YCPS actually has iretuqay.

140: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

141: YCPS qojidauuldaju interpreted as qojidau:ldaju, with what seems a rare double-vowel writing for primary length (that inherited from Proto-Mongolian rather than itself the product of vowel contraction). This is found occasionally in the interrogative particle (Street08), and in the possessive reflexive -baan/-been = -ba.n/be.n. Cf. also note to line 2371.

142: For this and the parallel question in 3028-29 see Street13.6-7, fn. 24.

More generally, note that the symbol « in the present text normally marks the start of indirect (rather than direct)

- 2020 *ükü=be@»ü: kee=jü köü+d-i min-u yeke ülü bol=quy-aca<sup>143</sup> — yeke+s-ün*
- 2021 *kešig-ece bileür-ece sarqud-aca yeki=n qojida=ul=umuy ta; üje=ed*
- 2022 *ide=küy ülü sergü=ül=ün newü=kü+n bol=bAy<sup>144</sup> ta kee=jüü.*
- 2026 (§71) *Ṭere üge-tür Örbey Soqatay jirin qatu+d ügüle=rün {Ṭuri=ju ülü*
- 2027 *ög=te=küy mör-tey ci; {ucira=asu ide=gü yosu-tay ci; {güre=jü ülü ög=te=gü*
- 2028 *mör-tey ci; {gür=te=esü ide=gü yosu-tay ci. }«<sup>145</sup> Ambaqay qahan-i*
- 2029 *ükü=be»@ü: ci kee=jü Höelün-e gür=tele eyin kee=gde=küy bol=bi.*
- 2031 (§72) *Ṭarqa-ca e+den-i eke+s köü+d-i nuntuq-tur ge:=jü newü=dkün.*
- 2032 *Ṭa @ber bu ab=cu<sup>146</sup> yabu=dqun ke:=ed manaqarši üdür-ece*
- 2033 *Tayiciu+d-un Tarqutay\_ Kiriltuq Tödöen\_ girte-tE+n Tayciu+d*
- 2034 *Onan müren huruu gödöl=BA. Höelün\_ üjin-i eke+s köü+d-i*
- 2035 *ge:=jü newü=gde=rün Qo<sup>n</sup>qota^day Caraqa ebügen od=cu idqa=qu-tur*
- 2036 *Tödöen\_ girte ügüle=rün {Ceel usun nidura=lua. {Cewgen*
- 2037 *cilawun cewüre=lüE. }kee=ed newü=jee. Caraqa ebügen-i<sup>147</sup>*
- 2038 *Ṭer idqa=qu ci kee=n qoyina-ca jida-bar jo~ quduš<sup>148</sup>*
- 2039 *qadqu=juu.*
- 2043 (§73) *Caraqa ebügen yara-tu bol=ju ger-tür-iyen ire=jü*
- 2044 *berke kebde=küy-tür Temüjin üje=re od=cuu. Ṭende Qo<sup>n</sup>qota^day*
- 2045 *Caraqa ebügen ügüle=rün Ṭayin ecige-yin cin-u quri=ya=qda=qsan<sup>149</sup>*
- 2046 *ulus-i man-u büri+n-ü — ulus ab=cu<sup>150</sup> newü=gde=rün idqa=qu~ bol=un*
- 2047 *eyin ki=gde=BA ke:=jüü. Ṭeün-tür Temüjin uyila=ad qar=cu*
- 2048 *yorci=BA. Höelün\_ üjin ge:=jü newü=gde=rün tuqla=ju beye-ber*
- 2049 *morila=ju jarim+ud irgen-i icu=qa=BA. Ṭe+de @ber icu=qa=qda=qsan*
- 2050 *irgen ülü toqta=n Tayjiu+d-un qoyina-ca newü=jüü.*

---

quotation. But when (as here) it occurs immediately before an accusative element, the latter is ambiguously either a referential object followed by direct quotation, or an accusative subject of indirect quotation. See Street13.65, and for such ambiguous passages pp. 47-52.

143: YCPS boluquyaca interpreted as bolquyaca (i.e. bol<u>quyaca).

144: C boluBAy, PP bolBAy; given the frequency of such lu forms in Chapter 1 (see note to 1075), the original YCPS text probably had the former, though the latter writing might seem us us today.

145: See note to 2019.

146: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

147: This is either a referential object (note to 1126 below), or the direct object of qadqu-.

148: See Cleaves in HJAS 12:3/4.511, deR4.348. Perhaps write qudu-s.

149: YCPS guriyaqdaqsan emended (by Haenisch) to quriyaqdaqsan (i.e. <g>[q]uriyaqdaqsan).

150: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

- 2054 (§74) Tayiciu+d aqa deü Höelün\_ üjin-i belbisün-i köü+d ücü:ge+d  
 2055 eke+s köü+d-i nuntuq-tur ge:=jü newü=gde=jü {Höelün\_ üjin  
 2056 eme mergen töre=jü {ücü:ge+d köü+d-iyen tejie=rün {uki=tala  
 2057 boqtala=ju {**ho**:ji=tala büsele=jü {Onan müren öede irada  
 2058 güyi=jü {öürsün moyilsun temgü=jü {üdür~ söni qoolay  
 2059 tejie=BA. {**S**ölsü-tey töre=ggen Üjin eke {**su**-ta+n köü+d-iyen  
 2060 tejie=rün {**cig**örsün širo: bari=ju **s**üdün {cicigina uqu=ju  
 2061 tejie=bi. }<sup>151</sup> **E**ke Üjin-ü {**q**aliyarsun ma<sup>n</sup>girsun-iyar tejie=gse+d<sup>152</sup>  
 2062 köü+d {**q**a+d bol=ura gür=bi. {**J**arcim-tay Üjin eke-yin {**j**auqasu-bar  
 2063 tejie=gse+d köü+d {**j**asaq-ta+n sece+d bol=BA.  
 2066 (§75){**Q**oa\_ üjin-ü {**q**oqosun ma<sup>n</sup>girsu-ar tejie=gse+d {**q**auluqa+d<sup>153</sup>  
 2067 köü+d {**q**oyira+ud<sup>154</sup> sayi+d bol=BA. {**E**re+s sayi+d bol=un bara=ju  
 2068 {erekü+n<sup>155</sup> omoqu+n @ele bol=da=BA. {**E**ke-yü-en tejie=ye.  
 2069 kee=ldü=jü {eke Onan-u ergi deere sau=ju  
 2070 {elgüür gewgi jasa=ldu=ju {eremdeg~ jemdeg jiqasu {elgü=jü  
 2071 gewgile=jü {**j**eü-ber gewgi eke=ül=jü {**j**ebüge qadara  
 2072 gewgile=jü {cilüme~ gubciur huya=ju {**j**iramud jiqasu  
 2073 šüü=jü {**j**ici eke-yü-en haci tejie=BA.  
 2076 } (§76) **N**iken üdür Temüjin Qasar Begter Belgütey dörben qamtu sau=ju  
 2077 gewgi tata=quy dotora niken gegegen soqosun oro=juuy.  
 2078 Temüjin Qasar qoyar-aca Begter Belgütey qoyar buli=ju ab=uBA<sup>156</sup>.  
 2079 Temüjin Qasar qoyar ger-tür ire=jü Üjin eke-de  
 2080 ügüle=rün **N**iken gegegen soqosun gewgi *jau=qsan-i Begter*  
 2081 *Belgütey aqa deü qoyar-a buli=ju ab=da=BA<sup>157</sup> ba ke:=esü*

---

151: Here, because of the major space at this point, I follow Ligeti in taking these words as outside the poetic lines.

152: The **g** and **d** (present in PP) are missing from C.

153: The **q** (present in PP) is missing from C. For this hapax legomenon see deR4.358-60 and references there.

154: The stem of this hapax (perhaps rather *qoyila+ud*, as P) is unknown elsewhere; see deR4.360.

155: The morpheme divisions are tentative in this and the following word (Street90.356).

156: One might expect *ab-ba* here, without linking vowel. And in fact *ab-BA* and *ab-bAy* do occur in 5225 and Y161. Perhaps we should read *ab<u>ba* here; but I hesitate to emend all six occurrences of forms with *bub* (2078, 2490, 4106, 7434, X219, Y169).

157: For the passive here see Street13.76 fn.

- 2082 Üjin eke ügüle=rün Yegü=üjeey<sup>158</sup>. Aqa+nar deü+ner yeki=n teyin  
 2083 ki=ldü=müy ta. {<sup>159</sup>Seüder-ece busu nökor ügey {seül-ece busu  
 2084 cicua ügey~ bu=y bida. } Tayiciu+d aqa deü-ye-yen qašiu ker  
 2085 abura=qu+n bida' kee=jü bü=küy-tür erte Alan eke-yin  
 2086 tabun köü+d metü yeki=n eye ügeü+n bu=y. Ta bü=tügey kee=bi.  
 2091 (§77) Tende-ce Temüjin Qasar qoyar ülü taala=n ügüle=rün  
 2092 Öcigen niken-te biljiur<sup>160</sup> qodolid=uqsan-i teyin~ @gü buli=ju  
 2093 ab=ulaa. E döe basa teyin~ @gü buli=BA. Qamtu ker a=ldu=qu+n  
 2094 bida ke:=ed eüten oor=cu qar=cu yorci=BA.  
 2095 Begter hulqun deere širqa aqta-ta+n yisün mori qara=ju  
 2096 sau=ju<sup>161</sup> bü=küy-tür Temüjin ümere-ce daldad=cu Qasar emüne-ce  
 2097 daldad=cu sumu-ban salba=ju gür=küy-tür Begter üje=ed  
 2098 ügüle=rün Tayiciu+d aqa deü-yin qašiu dawus=un yada=n  
 2099 haci~ ken-e abura=n cida=qu+n@u:' kee=jü bü=küy-tür  
 2100 nama-yi yeki=n<sup>162</sup> nidün-ü surmusun aman-u qaqsun bol=qa=muy ta;  
 2101 {seüder-ece busu nökor ügey {seül-ece busu cicua ügey-tür  
 2102 }yeki=n teyin sedki=BA ta. Qolumta min-u bu bürel=ge=dkün;  
 2103 Belgütey-i bu tebci=dkün kee=ed jabila=n sau=ju gülice=BA;  
 2104 Temüjin Qasar qoyar emüne-ce ümere-ce ötermele=jü  
 2105 od=BA.  
 2111 (§78) Ger-tür ire=jü oro=quy-lua Üjin eke qoyar köüke+d-ü-en  
 2112 ciray~ uqa=ju ügüle=rün Bara=qsa+d {qalaun-aca min-u qalad  
 2113 qar=urun {qar-dur-ıyan qara nödü'n hadqu=n töre=ligi.  
 2114 Ene {qarbisu-ban qaja=qu qasar noqay metü {qada-tur  
 2115 dobtul=qu qablan metü {aur-ıyan darun yada=qu arslan metü  
 2116 {ami-du~ jalgisu ke:=gü<sup>163</sup> ma<sup>n</sup>gus metü {seüder-tür-ıyen

---

158: According to deR4.363 this is equivalent to yegü-üjeey, 'the dubitative form of yegü-, an obsolete and otherwise unattested verb, glossed in the interlinear version as 'cease', 'stop'...'. He further believes that the word bü-tügey 'let it be!' (found in the Altan Tobchi [Vietze92.13, line 533]) was omitted immediately after that form.

159: Poetry repeated in 2101 below.

160: Ligeti (but not Pelliot) treated this as biljiür, but de Rachewiltz (deR4.365) gives reasons for biljiur instead.

161: YCPS sau was emended by Pelliot 16 to sauju (i.e. sau<ju>). Ligeti and deR72 retained the original reading, without comment.

162: Kozin and Cleaves take the next four words as poetic lines.

163: PP keegü where C kegü (interpreted as ke:gü).

- 2117 *dobtul=qu šir̄qor metü {sem-iyer jalgi=qu curaqa metü*  
 2118 *{botoqan-iyān borbi qaja=qu buura metü {boroqan-tur*  
 2119 *šiqā=qu cino: metü {köü+d-iyen gelin yada=ju {köü+d-iyen ide=gü*  
 2120 *aḡgir metü {kebdeši-yen kōnde=esü öme:r=gü<sup>164</sup> cöeböri*  
 2121 *metü {bariju ülü saara=qu bars metü {balamud*  
 2122 *dobtul=qu baruq<sup>165</sup> metü bara=BA. {Seüder-ece busu nökör*  
 2123<sup>9</sup> *ügey-tür {seül-ece busu cicua ügey-tür }Tayiciu+d aqa*  
 2124 *deü-yin qašiuñ dawus=un yada=n bü=küy-tür `Haci ken-e abura=qu+n@u:'*  
 2125 *kee=jü bü=küy-tür `Ker a=ya' kee=n eyin ki=ldü=müy~ ta kee=n*  
 2126 *köü+d-iyen {qaucin üge+s qadal=un {ötögü+s üge+s orkid=un*  
 2127 *}maši mawula=bi.*  
 2134 (§79) *Tedüy a=tala Tayiciu+d-un Tarqutay\_ kiriltuq turqa+ud-iyān*  
 2135 *udurid=cu {<sup>166</sup>Qoluqa+d qooji=juu; {šilüge+d šiberi=jüü } kee=n ire=jüüy.*  
 2136 *Ayu=ju eke+s köü+d aqa+nar deü+ner šiqy hoy-tur*  
 2137<sup>10</sup> *qorqola=ju Belgütey mudu+d ququru tatala=ju šibee bari=ju*  
 2138 *Qasar qarbula=ldu=ju Qaciun Temüge Temülün qurban-i jaba*  
 2139 *jaura dürü=jü bulqa=ldu=n bü=küy-tür Tayiciu+d ur̄ši=ju*  
 2140 *ügüle=rün Aqa-ban Temüjin-i ile:; busu+d-i tan-u kereg<sup>167</sup> ügey kee=n*  
 2141 *ur̄ši=qda=ju<sup>168</sup> Temüjin-i morila=ul=ju buruud=qa=n hoy-tur*  
 2142<sup>11</sup> *dutaa=ju od=quy-i Tayiciu+d üje=jü hülde=jü Tergüne ündür-ün*  
 2143 *šiqy-dur širqu=ju oro=basu Tayiciu+d oro=n yada=ju*  
 2144 *šiqy-dur horci=n saki=ju*  
 2150 (§80) *Temüjin šiqy~ dotora qurban qono=ju Qar=su kee=n mori-yan*  
 2151 *kötöl=jü ayisu=quy-tur morin-aca emeel<sup>169</sup> in-u mültüre=jü*  
 2152 *qocor=cuu; qari=ju üje=esü emeel kömüldürgele=gse-er*  
 2153 *olaḡlaqsa-ar<sup>170</sup> mültüre=jü qocor=cuu.<sup>171</sup> Qlaḡ~ @ci~ bol=tuqay.*

---

164: In X271-72 we find rather öme:re- for this verb; in line X364 ömö:re-.

165: C barus emended to baruq 'a kind of dog' (i.e. baru<s>[q]), a misreading of a vertical script form. PP has balu, Altan Tobchi baruq (Vietze92.13, line 557).

166: Not marked as poetry by Kozin.

167: The g (present in PP) is missing from C.

168: The q (present in PP) is missing from C.

169: The | (present in PP) is missing from C, but extra space was left for it.

170: The q (present in PP) is missing from C, but space was left for it.

171: YCPS qocor=cuu[.]

- 2154 Kömüldürge basa ker mültüre=gü bü=lee. Te<sup>n</sup>geri idqa=n<sup>172</sup>
- 2155 a=quy@u.<sup>173</sup> kee=jü qari=ju basa qurban qono=BA. Basa qar=cu
- 2156 ayisu=quy-tur šiquy-in amasar-a qošiliq-un tedüy caqa:n gürü
- 2157 amasar-a bögle=n<sup>174</sup> una=juu. Te<sup>n</sup>geri idqa=n a=quy@u: kee=jü
- 2158 qari=ju basa qurban qono=BA. Basa yisün qonoq ideen
- 2159 ügey a=ju Nere ügey ker ükü=gde=küy<sup>175</sup>; qar=su kee=jü
- 2160 tere amasar bögle=n una=qsan qošiliq-un tedüy caqa:n gürü
- 2161 horci=n qar=basu ülü bol=qu modu+d-i sumuci kituqay-bar-ıyan<sup>176</sup>
- 2162 hoqtori=ad mori-yan qaltari=ul=uad qar=quy-lua Tayiciu+d
- 2163 saki=ju a=juu. Bari=ju ab=cu od=BA.
- 2169 (§81) Temüjin-i Tarqutay\_ kiriltuq ab=cu<sup>177</sup> od=cu — ulus
- 2170<sup>12</sup> irgen-dür-ıyen jasaqla=ju — ayıl-tur niken qono=ul=un qono=ul=un
- 2171 bitü=ül=ün yabu=quy-tur jun-u teriün sara-yin harban jirwaan-a
- 2172 hulaan tergel üdür Tayiciu+d Onan-u ergi deere
- 2173 qurimla=ldu=ju naran š<sup>n</sup>ge=esü tarqa=BA. Temüjin-i tere
- 2174 qurim-tur gelbüre köün güün abcira=ju bü=lee. Qurim-un
- 2175 haran-i tarqa=ul=un tere gelbüre köün-ece buqau tata=ju
- 2176 ab=cu heki in-u niken-te deled=üed güy=i=ju *Onan-u*
- 2177 *tün datora kebte=esü üje=gde=gü kee=jü usun-u*
- 2178<sup>13</sup> qarki-tur gedergü kebde=jü buqau-ban usun huruu urus=qa=n
- 2179 niur ile kebde=BA.
- 2184 (§82) Tere alda=qsan güün yeke dawu-bar Bariya güün alda=BA
- 2185 kee=n qayila=quy-tur tarqa=qsa+d Tayiciu+d quri=ju
- 2186 ire=jü üdür metü saraur-a Onon-u tün-i bedere=BA.<sup>178</sup>
- 2187 Qarki-tur kebte=jü bü=küy-i Suldu+s-un Sorqan\_ šıra

---

172: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

173: In cases like this where the interrogative particle follows a nomen futuri, Mostaert and de Rachewiltz placed the morpheme division before rather than after the y. The present text always marks the division after the y: see Street08.50-52.

174: YCPS has bosu, with omission of the g, and a stroke-error (H62txt.109) that accidentally changed the len-character to one representing su; hence bö[g]<len>[s]u. The word was correctly written in 2160.

175: The g (present in PP) is missing from C.

176: YCPS kituqayr-ıyan. DeR72.31 emended to kituqay-bar-ıyan (i.e. kituqay[ba]r-ıyan), Ligeti emended rather by dropping the y: to what would be kituqa-r-ıyan in the present transcription system (i.e. kituqa:<y>r-ıyan). See also note to 6341.

177: The b (present in PP) is missing from C, but a small amount of space was left for it.

178: C bedereBA[.]

2188 jöb<sup>179</sup> daari=ju üje=jü ügüle=rün Jöb @ele eyimü arqa-tu-yin  
 2189 tula {<sup>180</sup> Nidün-dür-iyen qal-tu {niur-tur-iyen gere-tü' }kee=n  
 2190 Tayiciu+d aqa deü-de-en teyin @ele nayta=qda=n a=juu.  
 2191 Ci teyin @gü kebte<sup>181</sup>. Ülü jaa=qu bi ke:=ed nögcı=BA.  
 2192 Basa qari=n bedere=ye kee=ldü=küy-tür Sorqan\_ şıra ügüle=rün  
 2193 Mün mün mör-ier-e:n ese üje=gšen qajar-ıyan üje=ed qari=n  
 2194 bedere=ye kee=BA; je~ @gü kee=ldü=BA.<sup>182</sup> Mün mün mör-ıyer qari=n  
 2195 bedere=jü basa Sorqan\_ şıra daari=ju ügüle=rün Aqa  
 2196 deü cin-u ama-an şidü-ben bileüde=n ayis=u. Teyin kebte<sup>183</sup>;  
 2197 qadauji<sup>184</sup>~ @gü ke:=ed nögcı=BA.  
 2202 (§83) Basa qari=n bedere=ye kee=ldü=küy-tür Sorqan\_ şıra basa ügüle=rün  
 2203 Tayiciu+d köü+d ta gegeen caqaan üdür gübcin<sup>185</sup>~ güü alda=BA;  
 2204 edöe qara<sup>n</sup>quy söni ker ol=qu+n. Bida basa mün mün mör-ıyer  
 2205 ese üje=gšen<sup>186</sup> qajar-ıyan üje=ed qari=n bedere=ed tarqa=ju  
 2206 manaqar üdür ciul=ju<sup>187</sup> eri=ye; qaa od=qu tere buqau-tu  
 2207 güün kee=BA.<sup>188</sup> Je kee=ldü=jü<sup>189</sup> qari=n bedere=jü  
 2208 Sorqan\_ şıra basa daari=ju ügüle=rün Edüy bedere=ed  
 2209 qari=ju manaqar eri=ye' kee=ldü=BA; edöe man-i  
 2210 tarqa=ul=un bara=ju eke-ben deü+ner-ıyen eri=n od. <sup>190</sup>Nama-yi  
 2211 üje=BA kee=n güün-e üje=gde=esü Üje=gde=be' kee=n bu kelele

---

179: b (present in PP) is missing from C here and in the same word later in this line, with unfilled space left for each.

180: Not marked as poetry by Kozin.

181: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

182: C keeldüBA[.]

183: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

184: It is not clear whether the verb is qadauji, as here and in 6064, or qadauci, as in 6050 and 7426.

185: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

186: The g (present in PP) is missing from C.

187: The ı (present in PP) is missing from C.

188: C keeba[.] The spacing seems clearly wrong in both C and PP: the je must go with the following words rather than those preceding.

189: The ı (present in PP) is missing from C.

190: For this ambiguous sentence see Street13.15.

- 2212 ke:=ed nögcı=BA.
- 2217 (§84) Ani tarqa=ul=un bara=ju dotora-ban sedki=jü Öcigen ayil
- 2218 bitü=ül=jü qono=ul=quy-tur Sorqan\_ šira-yin ger-tür qono=basu
- 2219 Cimbay Cilawun qoyar köü+d in-u örö jirüge-ben ebed=cü
- 2220 söni nama-yi üje=jü buqau min-u ab=cu<sup>191</sup> sulala=ju qono=n a=ul=ula:y<sup>192</sup>;
- 2221 edöe basa Sorqan\_ šira nama-yi üje=jü ülü jaa=n nögcı=n~ a=BA.
- 2222 Edöe mün~ @kü te+de nama-yi abura=mu~ @je kee=jü Sorqan\_ šira-yin
- 2223 ger eri=n Onan müren huruu yorci=BA.
- 2228 (§85) Ger-ün belge sün~ tösür=üed esüg-iyen söni-de üdür cayı=tala
- 2229 büle=kü bü=lee.<sup>193</sup> Tere belge sonos=cu yabu=basu büleür-ün dawu
- 2230 sonos=cu gür=cü ger-tür in-u oro=basu Sorqan\_ šira
- 2231 Eke-ben deü+ner-iyen eri=n od' ese@ü: kele=lüe bi. Yeki=n
- 2232 ire=BA~ ci kee=BA.<sup>194</sup> Cimbay Cilawun qoyar köü+d in-u ügüle=rün
- 2233 Şibawuqan-i turumtay buta-tur qorqo=basu buta abura=juuy.
- 2234 Edöe bidan-tur ire=gse*n*-i<sup>195</sup> yeki=n teyin kee=mü ci kee=n
- 2235 ecige-yü-en üge ülü taala=n buqau in-u cuca=ju
- 2236 qal-tur tüle=jü qoyitu nu<sup>r</sup>qasu-tu tergen-tür unu=ul=ju
- 2237 Qadaan nere-tey döyi-ben Ami-tu güün-e bu kelele kee=jü
- 2238 asara=ul=BA.
- 2244 (§86) Qutuar üdür Güün niu=BA~ @je kee=ldü=jü Öer jaura
- 2245 ne<sup>r</sup>jile=ldü=yE kee=ldü=jü ne<sup>r</sup>jile=ldü=BA. Sorqan\_ šira-yin
- 2246 ger-tür tergen-tür iseri-yin do:ro gür=tele ne<sup>r</sup>ji=jü
- 2247 qoyitu nu<sup>r</sup>qasu-tu tergen-tür unuju amasar-a bü=küy
- 2248 nu<sup>r</sup>qasu tata=ju köl-tür gür=küy-tür Sorqan\_ šira
- 2249 Ene basa eyimü qalaun-a nu<sup>r</sup>qasun dotora ker daus=qu
- 2250 ke:=esü ne<sup>r</sup>jülsün bawu=ju yorci=BA.
- 2254 (§87) Ne<sup>r</sup>jüül-i od=uqsan-u qoyina Sorqan\_ šira ügüle=rün

---

191: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

192: YCPS qonoaulula:y emended to qonon aulula:y (i.e. qono[n]aulula:y interpreted as two words). The emendation was apparently suggested by Ozawa (de Rachewiltz, personal communication 6 April 1997). PP correctly has a glossing division after qono, but both it and C (and hence probably the Urtext) omitted the syllable-final n. (Haenisch, Pelliot, Ligeti, and Kuribayashi all retained the unemended form. Altan Tobchi [Vietze92.14, line 614] has qonoγulum böllüge.) Similar omission of converbial -n is found in 1194 and 5457.

193: C bülee[.]

194: C keeBA[.]

195: Referential object: 'How can you speak in this way of him who...' (Street13.13).



2255 Nama-yi hünesü-er keyis=ge=n alda=BA.<sup>196</sup> Edöe eke-ben  
 2256 deü+ner-iyen erin~ od kee=jü aman caqaan eremüg  
 2257<sup>14</sup> qulaqcın-i unu=ul=ju tel~ qurıqan bol=qa=ju gör nambuqa jasa=ju  
 2258 emeel ülü ög=ün kete ülü ög=ün numu ög=cü  
 2259 qoyar sumu ög=BA. Tedüy jasa=ju ile=BA.  
 2263 (§88) Temüjin teyin od=uad şıbeele=jü qorqola=qsan  
 2264 qajar-dur-ıyan gür=cü ebesün-ü alurqay-bar Onan  
 2265 müren öede möcgi=jü — höröne-ce Kimurqa qoroqan  
 2266<sup>15</sup> oro=ju ire=n a=juu — tere öede möcgi=yed Kimurqa qoroqan-u  
 2267 Beder qoşıun-u Qorcuqay boldaq-a bü=küy-tür jolqa=ldu=BA.  
 2271 (§89) Tende neyile=ldü=jü<sup>197</sup> od=cu Burqan qaldun-u ebür-e Gürelgü  
 2272 dotora Sen<sup>n</sup>gür qoroqan-u Qara\_jirügen-ü kökö naur  
 2273 nuntuqla=ju a=quy-tur tarbaqad kücügür ala=ju  
 2274 ide=n bü=lee.  
 2277 (§90) Niken üdür şırqa aqta-ta+n nayman mori+d<sup>198</sup> ger-ün dergede  
 2278 bayı=ju bü=küy-i deerme ire=jü üje=tele deermed=cü  
 2279 yorci=BA.<sup>199</sup> Yabu=qa+d üje=jü qocor=BA. Belgütey oqodur  
 2280 dargi qo<sup>n</sup>qor-i unu=ju tarbaqacila=ra od=cu bü=lee.  
 2281 Üdeşi naran şırge=gsen-ü qoyına Belgütey dargi~ oqodur  
 2282 qo<sup>n</sup>qor-tur tarbaqad aci=ju niqsaqalja=tala yabu=qan  
 2283 kötöl=jü<sup>200</sup> ire=BA. Şırqa aqta-ta+n-ı<sup>201</sup> deerme ab=cu<sup>202</sup>  
 2284 od=BA<sup>203</sup> ke:=esü Belgütey ügüle=rün Bi neke=sü<sup>204</sup> kee=BA;  
 2285 Qasar ügüle=rün Ci ülü cida=qu; bi neke=sü<sup>205</sup> kee=BA.

---

196: C aldaBA[.]

197: For some reason C introduced an erroneous glossing division before the dü (or ldü).

198: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

199: C yorciBA[.]

200: The ı (present in PP) is missing from C.

201: The q (present in PP) is missing from C, but a small space was left for it.

202: The b (present in PP) is missing from C, but a small space was left for it.

203: BA<.> The spacing-as-punctuation of characters on this page is particularly bad.

204: sü<.>

205: sü<.>

- 2286 Temüjin ügüle=rün Ta ülü cida=qu; bi neke=sü<sup>206</sup> kee=jü dargi
- 2287 qo<sup>n</sup>qor-i Temüjin unu=ju širqa aqta-ta+n-ı<sup>207</sup> ebesün-ü
- 2288 alurqay-bar möcgi=jü qurban qono=ju manaqar erte
- 2289 mör-tür olon aduun-tur niken gürümele köün güün
- 2290 geü~ saa=n a=qu-yi jolqa=ju širqa aqta-ta+n-i sura=basu tere
- 2291 köün ügüle=rün Ene manaqar naran urqu=qu-yin urida
- 2292 širqa aqta-ta+n nayman mori+d<sup>208</sup> eü-ber hülde=jü<sup>209</sup> yorci=BA;
- 2293 mör in-u bi jaa=ju ög=sü ke:=ed oqodur qo<sup>n</sup>qor-i
- 2294 talbi=ul=ju Temüjin-e oroq~ šırqula-yi unu=ul=BA.
- 2295 Mün öesün qurdun qubi-yi unu=BA. Ger-dür-iyen @ba ülü
- 2296 od=un nambuqa saulqa-ban<sup>210</sup> keer-e buqu=ju talbi=BA.
- 2297 Nökör ci bü=rün maši mu<sup>n</sup>tani=ju ayis=un<sup>211</sup> a=juu. Ere-yin
- 2298 mu<sup>n</sup> niken bu=y~ @je. Bi cima-tur nököce=sü. Ecige min-u
- 2299 Naqu\_ bayan kee=gde=yü. Bi qaqa köün in-u; bi Boorcu
- 2300 nere-tü~ bu=y kee=ed širqa aqta-ta+n-u<sup>212</sup> mör-iyEr in-u
- 2301 möcgi=jü qurban qono=ju üdeši naran quburi taši=n bü=küy-tür
- 2302 niken gürien irgen-tür gür=BA. Širqa aqta-ta+n nayman mori+d<sup>213</sup>
- 2303 tere yeke~ gürien-ü kijaar-a ebesüle=n bayi=ju bü=küy-i
- 2304 üje=BA. Temüjin ügüle=rün Nökör ci ende bayi.
- 2305 Bi širqa aqta-ta+n — te+de~ bu=y — hülde=jü<sup>214</sup> qar=suqay kee=BA.
- 2306 Boorcu ügüle=rün Nököce=sü kee=n ire=lee. Bi ende

---

206: sü<.>

207: The q (present in PP) is missing from C, but a small space was left for it.

208: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

209: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

210: YCPS sauluqaban interpreted as saulqaban (i.e. sau<u>qaban). C has a glossing division before the qa.

211: YCPS ayisu emended to ayisun (i.e. ayisu[n]); emendation mine (JCS). See the paraphrase in 2349-50.

212: YCPS atatanu emended to aqtatanu (i.e. a[q]tatanu). In C a small space for the q was left before the second t rather than the first!

213: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

214: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

- 2307 *yeki=n bayi=qu ke:=ed qamtu dobtul=ju*<sup>215</sup> *oro=ad*<sup>216</sup>
- 2308 *širqa aqta-ta+n-i hülde=jü qar=BA.*
- 2320 (§91) *Qoyina-ca haran ubursubur neke=jü ayis=u. Niken caqaan*
- 2321 *mori-tu güün uurqa bari=ju qaqca-ar küyice=jü ayis=u.*
- 2322 *Boorcu ügüle=rün Nökör numu sumu na-da~ aca; bi qarbula=ldu=su*
- 2323 *kee=BA. Temüjin ügüle=rün Min-u tula ci erüs=te=üjey.*
- 2324 *Bi qarbula=ldu=su kee=jü esergü qari=n qarbula=ldu=BA.*
- 2325 *Tere caqaan mori-tu güün uurqa-bar-ıyan doki=ju bayi=BA.*
- 2326 *Qoyitu+s nökö+d küyice=jü ire=BA. Naran šnge=jü od=BA.*
- 2327 *Düüşin bol=ju ayis=u. Qoyitu te+de haran baruan bol=da=ju*
- 2328 *bayi=ju qocor=BA.*
- 2333 (§92) *Tere söni düli=ed qurban üdür qurban söni düli=jü gür=BA.*<sup>217</sup>
- 2334 *Temüjin ügüle=rün Nökör bi cima-daca a<sup>n</sup>gi-da e+de mori+d-ıyan*
- 2335 *ab=qu@u.*<sup>218</sup> *bü=lee. Qubiya=ldu=ya; kedüy-i ab=qu kee=mü*
- 2336 *kee=be*<sup>219</sup>. *Boorcu ügüle=rün Bi sayin nökö-r-i cima-yi mu<sup>n</sup>tani=ju*
- 2337 *ayis=u kee=n Sayin nökö-r-e tusa bol=su*<sup>220</sup> *kee=n nököce=jü ire=BA*
- 2338 *bi; olja@u.*<sup>221</sup> *kee=jü ab=qu*<sup>222</sup> *bi. Ecige min-u Naqu\_ bayan nere-tü*
- 2339 *bu=yu. Naqu\_ bayan-u qaqca köün in-u bi bu=yu; ecige-yin min-u*
- 2340 *jüe=gse*<sup>223</sup> *na-da tüge=tele bu=yu. Bi ülü ab=qu*<sup>224</sup>; *tusa bol=uqsan min-u*
- 2341 *yaun tusa bol=qu; ülü ab=qu*<sup>225</sup> *kee=BA.*
- 2346 (§93) *Naqu\_ bayan-u ger-tür gür=BA; Naqu\_ bayan köün-ben Boorcu-yi*

---

215: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

216: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

217: C gürBA[.]

218: The b (present in PP) is missing from C, twice in this line.

219: The be is written with the 7-stroke be character rather than the 15-stroke BA one.

220: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

221: YCPS ojeu, emended by all editors by addition of a syllable-final -l; first identified by Haenisch and Pelliot with CMo. öljei 'favorable omen, good luck', later (by Ligeti) with olja 'booty'. DeR72.36 originally showed front vowels, but these were altered to back vowels in a second errata sheet; Kurib1.86 has o[l]ja ü. Hence o[l]j<e>[a]u.

222: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

223: The g (present in PP) is missing from C.

224: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

225: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

- 2347 jabqa=ju<sup>226</sup> nisun nilbusu-bar a=juu. Genete<sup>227</sup> gür=te=jü köü-ben  
 2348 üje=jü niken-te uyıla=mu niken-te do<sup>n</sup>qod=umu. Köün in-u  
 2349 Boorcu ügüle=rün Yaun bol=BA. Sayin nökör mu<sup>n</sup>tani=ju  
 2350 ayis=un a=juu; nököce=jü od=ulaa bi; edöe ire=BA ke:=ed  
 2351 haul=ju od=cu keer-e buqu=qsan nambuqa saulqa-ban<sup>228</sup> abcira=BA.<sup>229</sup>  
 2352 Temüjin-e tel- qurıqan ala=ju günesü ög=üed nambuqa  
 2353 deürge jasa=ju günesüle=ül=BA. Naqu\_ bayan ügüle=rün Qoyar  
 2354 jalau+s~ bu=y; ta üje=ldü=gtü+d<sup>230</sup>; mono qoyina bu tebci=ldü=gtü+d<sup>231</sup>  
 2355 kee=BA.<sup>232</sup> Temüjin od=cu qurban söni qurban üdür yorci=ju  
 2356 Se<sup>n</sup>gür qoroqan-a ger-tür-ıyen gür=BA. Höelün eke  
 2357 Qasar @ki=ed<sup>233</sup> deü+ner in-u herü=jü a=ju üje=jü  
 2358 bayas=BA.  
 2365 (§94) Tende-ce Temüjin Belgütey<sup>234</sup> qoyar Dey\_ secen-ü Börte\_ üjin-i —  
 2366 yisün nasu-tu bü=küy-tür üje=jü ire=gse-er qaqaca=ju bü=lee —  
 2367 Kelüren müren huruu eri=n od=BA. Cegcer<sup>235</sup> Cıqurqu qoyar-un  
 2368 jaura — Dey\_ secen O<sup>n</sup>gıra+d<sup>236</sup> tende a=juu — Dey\_ secen Temüjin-i

---

226: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

227: The analysis of this form is unclear. Possibly one should emend it to gene[d]-te (as CMo.), or to the simple gened, perhaps a plural, found six times (in 6029, etc.). (Note Haenisch's emendation of böete to böed in 2443.) Note also an apparent verb gened- in Y031.

228: YCPS sauluqaban interpreted as saulqaban (i.e. sauk<u>qaban).

229: YCPS abcira=BA[.]. The first b (present in PP) is missing from C.

230: The l (present in PP) is missing from C, but space was left for it.

231: The b and g (present in PP) are missing from C.

232: C keeBA[.]

233: Here and in several other passages kiged is apparently 'and others'; see Cleaves HJAS 12:1/2.127 (fn. 223). Historically, of course, the form is a converb of ki- 'do, make'; but when this occurs with coordinate nominal elements it is difficult to know whether the form should be treated synchronically as a particle, or as a converbial idiom — i.e. a converb with a highly specialized and totally unexpected meaning. Here and in similar contexts it is tentatively marked both as a particle (°) and as a two-morpheme converb form; but it is shown simply as a converb in line 6013. Cf. the particle-like usage of bö-ed noted in line 3081.

234: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

235: The g (present in PP) is missing from C.

236: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

- 2369 üje=jü maši yeke bayas=cu ügüle=rün «<sup>237</sup>*Tayiciu+d aqa deü*
- 2370 *cin-u nayta=mu» kee=n mede=jü maši herü=jü cökö=leey; aran*
- 2371 *üje=BA @je cima-yi ke:=ed Börte\_ üjin-i neyile=ül=eed<sup>238</sup>*
- 2372 *eüs=ge=BA; eüs=ge=n ayis=urun Dey\_ secen jaura Kelüren-ü*
- 2373 *Uraq\_ cöl nu:-daca qari=BA. Gergey in-u Börte\_ üjin-ü eke*
- 2374 *Cotan nere-tey bü=liyi. Cotan öki-yen hüde=jü Gürelgü*
- 2375 *dotora Se<sup>n</sup>gür qoroqan-a bü=küy-tür gür=ge=jü ire=BA.*
- 2381 (§95) *Cotan-i qari=ul=uad Belgütey-i Boorcu-yi Nököce=ye kee=n*
- 2382 *uri=ju ile:=BA. Boorcu Belgütey-<sup>239</sup> gür=ge=ül=üed*
- 2383 *ecige-dür-iyen ülü kelele=n {<sup>240</sup>**b**ögötür qo<sup>n</sup>qor-i unu=ad {boro*
- 2384 *örmüge-ben bögtür=üed } Belgütey-lüe ire=BA. Tere*
- 2385 *nököce=gse-er nököce=küy yosun teyimü.*
- 2389 (§96) *Se<sup>n</sup>gür qoroqan-aca newü=jü Kelüren müren-ü teriün Bürgi*
- 2390 *ergi-de nuntuqla=n bawu=ju Cotan Eke-yin šidkül kee=n*
- 2391 *qara buluqan daqu abcira=ju bü=lee. Tere daqu-yi*
- 2392 *Temüjin Qasar Belgütey qurban ab=cu<sup>241</sup> od=cu — erte üdür*
- 2393 *Yisügey qan ecige-lüe Kereyi+d irgen-ü O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan anda*
- 2394 *kee=ldü=gsen a=juu — Ecige-lüe min-u anda kee=ldü=gsen*
- 2395 *ecige metü bu=y~ @je kee=n «O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-i Tuula-yin qara~ tün-e bu=yu»*
- 2396 *kee=n mede=jü od=BA. O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-tur Temüjin gür=cü ügüle=rün*
- 2397 *Eрте üdür ecige-lüe min-u anda kee=ldü=gsen*
- 2398 *a=juu. Ecige @gü metü bu=yu~ @je' kee=jü gergey bawu=:l=ju*
- 2399 *emüsgel cima-da abcira=BA<sup>242</sup> kee=n buluqan daqu ög=BA.<sup>243</sup>*
- 2400 *O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan maši bayas=cu ügüle=rün {<sup>244</sup>Qara buluqan daqu-yin qariu*
- 2401 *{**q**aqaca=qsan ulus-i cin-u **q**amtud=qa=ju ög=sü. {Buluqan daqu-yin*

---

237: For the indirect quotation see Street13.59, 62; a direct quotation would require a 3rd-person pronoun rather than cinu.

238: YCPS neyile-ül=eed, interpreted as neyile-ül-e:d, with a unique double-vowel writing of the primary long vowel of this converbial ending (cf. note to 2018). This seems preferable to Haenisch's ad hoc assumption (1962.116) that neyile-üle- was a doublet of neyile-ül- (H62dict.116).

239: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

240: Not marked as poetry by Kozin or Ligeti.

241: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

242: The first b (present in PP) is missing from C.

243: C ögBA[.]

244: Ligeti marks as poetry only the last two poetic lines below.

- 2402 qariu {**butara**=qsan ulus-i cin-u **bügüd**=ke=ldü=jü<sup>245</sup> ög=sü.
- 2403 {**Bököre**-yin **bögse**-tür {**cekere**-yin **ceji**-tür a=tuqay<sup>246</sup>
- 2404 } kee=BA.
- 2412 (§97) **Tende**-ce qari=ju Bürği ergi-de bü=küy-tür Burqan\_ qaldun-aca
- 2413 Urya<sup>n</sup>qa^day güün Jarciuday ebügen küürge-ben ür=cü
- 2414 Jelme nere-tü köün-iyen udurid=cu ire=jü Jarciuday
- 2415 ügüle=rün *Onan-u Deliün boldaq-a bü=küy-tür Temüjin-i*
- 2416 törö=küy-tür *buluqan nelkey ög=ülee. Bi ene köü-ben*
- 2417 *Jelme-yi ög=ülee~ @gü. Bi 'Ücü:gen' kee=n ab=cu od=ulaa;*
- 2418 *edöe Jelme-yi* {<sup>247</sup> *emeel-iyen toqu=ul*<sup>248</sup> {*eüde-en*
- 2419 *negü=ül*<sup>249</sup> } kee=jü ög=BA<sup>250</sup>.
- 2423 (§98) Kelüren müren-ü teriün-e Bürği ergi-de bawu=ju bü=küy-tür
- 2424 niken manaqar erde genel şiral üdür geyi=n bü=küy-tür
- 2425 Höelün eke-yin ger ditora gödöl=küy Qoaqcin<sup>251</sup> emegen
- 2426 bos=cu ügüle=rün Eke eke öter bos. Qajar
- 2427<sup>16</sup> *derbelü=müy; tübüriün sonos=ta=mu; jalqamşiq-ta+n Tayiciu+d*<sup>252</sup> *ayis=un*
- 2428 *aqu+n@u. Eke öter bos kee=bi.*
- 2431 (§99) Höelün eke ügüle=rün Köü+d-i öter seri=ül=üdkün ke=ed
- 2432 Höelün eke öter~ @gü bos=bi. Temüjin-tE+n köü+d
- 2433 öterle=n~ @gü bos=uad mori+d-iyen bari=ju Temüjin niken
- 2434 mori unu=BA. Höelün eke niken mori unu=BA. Qasar
- 2435 niken mori unu=BA; Qaciun niken mori unu=BA; Temüge odcigin
- 2436 niken mori unu=BA; Belgütey niken mori unu=BA; Boorcu
- 2437 niken mori unu=BA. Jelme niken mori unu=BA. Temülün-i
- 2438 Höelün eke ebür-tür-iyen deür=be<sup>253</sup>; niken mori kötöl

---

245: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

246: YCPS aduqay emended to atuqay (i.e. a<d>[t]uqay); emendation mine (JCS). The d-initial initial variant occurs 4 times in the SH, the t-initial one 286 times (Kurib1.904, 929).

247: Not marked as poetry by Pelliot or Ligeti.

248: Morpheme division based on CMo.

249: Apparently causative of nee-/nege- 'open'. See note to 8439.

250: The g (present in PP) is missing from C, but space was left for it.

251: The q (present in PP) is missing from C.

252: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

253: The be is written with the 7-stroke character.

- 2439 jasa=BA; Börte\_ üjin-e mori duta=BA.
- 2443 (§100) Temüjin aqa+nar deü+ner morila=ju erte bö=ed<sup>254</sup>
- 2444 Burqan jüg qar=BA.<sup>255</sup> Qoaqcin emegen *Börte\_ üjin-i niu=su* kee=n
- 2445 {<sup>256</sup>böken qarau-tay tergen-tür unu=ul=ju {böere alağ
- 2446 hüker köl=jü<sup>257</sup> } Te<sup>ngelig</sup><sup>258</sup> qoroqan öede gödöl=jü
- 2447 ayis=un bü=küy-tür herü~ baru-da üdür geyi=n bü=küy-tür
- 2448 esergün-ece cerig haran qatara=ju hergi=jü gür=cü
- 2449 ire=jü Yaun *güün ci* kee=n hasaq=BA. Qoaqcin<sup>259</sup> emegen
- 2450 ügüle=rün Bi *Temüjin-ü-ey~ bu=y; yeke ger-tür qonin kirqa=ra*
- 2451 *ire=lee; ger-tür-iyen qari=ju ayış=i* kee=bi.
- 2452 Tende-ce ügüle=rün *Temüjin ger-tür bu=yu@u.;* *ger kejie*
- 2453 *bu=yu*<sup>260</sup> kee=bi. Qoaqcin emegen ügüle=rün Ger~ @ci
- 2454 *oyira bu=yu; Temüjin-i bü=küy-i ügey ese uqa=bi; qoyina-ca*
- 2455 *bos=uad ire=bi bi* kee=bi.
- 2461 (§101) Te+de ceri+üd tedüy qatara=BA; Qoaqcin emegen böere
- 2462 alağ hüker-iyen deled=üed öterle=n neü=gü bol=un
- 2463 tergen-ü te<sup>ngeli</sup> ququ=s od=BA; te<sup>ngeli</sup>-ben ququra=qda=ju<sup>261</sup>
- 2464 Yabu=qa+d-iyar *hoy-tur güyi=jü oro=ya* kee=ldü=n bü=küy-tür
- 2465 daruca mü+d~ ceri+üd Belgütey-in eke-yi sundula=ul=ju<sup>262</sup>
- 2466 qoyar kö+d in-u cerbegelje=ül=jü qadara=ju gür=cü

---

254: YCPS böete emended (by Haenisch) to böed (i.e. böe<te>[d]). For the meanings of this form, which is sometimes particle-like (cf. the kiged of line 2357), see note to line 3081.

255: C qarBA[.]

256: Not marked as poetry by Kozin, Pelliot, or Ligeti.

257: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

258: YCPS Tengeli emended to Tengelig (i.e. Tengeli[g]); C has extra space where the g should have been.

259: The q (present in PP) is missing from C.

260: Ligeti 58 here wrote büy-yüi plus a long ü vowel (the latter omitted in Kurib1.98. deR72.39, etc.), implying an interrogative morpheme after the verb. But no third syllable is present in the YCPS text here.

261: The syllable-final q (present in PP) is missing from C.

262: The morphology of YCPS sundulaulduju (and of cerbegelje-ül-jü in the next line) is unclear. The former appears in Ligeti's edition without the du (thus matching the form in line 2473), and de Rachewiltz (1972.310) apparently accepted that change, thus sundulaul<du>ju. But the longer form is retained by Kurib1.100. Possibly the form was equivalent to the passive causative \*sundula-ul-da-ju; but the stem of cerbegelje-ül-jü (cf. CMo. cerbe- 'swing, sway') remains problematic.

- 2467 ire=ed<sup>263</sup> Ene tergen dотора yaun tee=jü a=mu kee=bAy.<sup>264</sup>  
 2468 Qoaqcin emegen ügüle=rün U<sup>n</sup>qasun tee=jü a=mu kee=bi;  
 2469 te+de ceri+üd-ün aqa+nar in-u ügüle=rün Deü+ner köü+d-iyen  
 2470 bawu=ju üje=dkün kee=BA. Deü+ner köü+d in-u bawu=ju  
 2471 qaatay<sup>265</sup> tergen-ü qaalqa ab=quy-lua dотора qatun~ @je<sup>266</sup>  
 2472 güün sau=ju ima-yi tergen-ece cir=cü bawu=:fju  
 2473 Qoaqcin jirin-i sundula=ul=fju ab=uad Temüjin-ü  
 2474<sup>17</sup> qoyina-ca ebesün-ü alurqay-bar möcǵi=jü<sup>267</sup> Burqan jüg  
 2475 qar=BA.  
 2481 (§102) Temüjin-ü qoyina-ca Burqan\_ qaldun-i qurban-ta quci=ul=fju  
 2482 erüs=ün yada=BA; eyin teyin bulji=asu — ümbü šibar berke  
 2483 hoy in-u cadqula<sup>n</sup> moqay-a širqu=asu ülü bol=fqu  
 2484 berke šiquy — qoyina-ca in-u daqa=jü erüs=ün yada=juuy.<sup>268</sup>  
 2485 Te+de qurban Merki+d a=juu; Uduyi+d Merki+d-ün Toqtoa  
 2486 Uwa+s Merki+d-ün Dayir\_ usun Qaa+d Merki+d-ün Qaatay\_ darmala  
 2487 e+de qurban Merki+d «erten-ü Höelün eke-yi Ciledü-dece<sup>269</sup>  
 2488 buli=jü ab=da=laay» kee=n edöe tere ösöl ösö=n ire=gse+d<sup>270</sup>  
 2489 a=juu. Te+de Merki+d ügüle=ldü=rün<sup>271</sup> Höelün-ü haci abura=n  
 2490 edöe eme+s-i an-u ab=uBA; haci-yan abura=BA bida  
 2491<sup>18</sup> kee=ldü=jü Burqan\_ qaldun-aca bawu=ju geyid-tür-iyen<sup>272</sup>

---

263: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

264: C keeBA[.]

265: YCPS has no gloss or bracket for this word. DeR4.404 suggests it is qaa-tay = qaa-:tay < \*qaa-a:~tay, a denominal adjective formed on a nomen imperfecti in -a of qaa- 'to close'; thus referring to a closed wagon.

266: YCPS qatuqje, a form that baffled earlier editors, was emended by deR4.404 to qatun je, (i.e. qatu<q>[n] je).

267: The c (present in PP) is missing from C.

268: C yadajuuy[.]

269: YCPS Ciledü-daca interpreted as front-harmonic (i.e. Ciledü-d<a>[e]c<a>[e]).

270: The g (present in PP) is missing from C; but both lack the d; i.e. iregse[d].

271: The syllable-final l (present in PP) is missing from C.

272: YCPS glosses this as 'house' and 'plural'; the form is known from hP'ags-pa texts in the meaning 'dwellings' (Poppe57.88, 123), but historically it was apparently not plural in form, but a borrowing of Tk. kebid 'shop'. For etymological details see de Rachewiltz's article on the Hsiao-ching in Zentralasiatisch Studien 16.78-79 (1982).



2492 ajira=BA.

2498 (§103) Temüjin Te+de qurban Merki+d maqad<sup>273</sup> geyi+d-tür-iyen ajira=bAy@u.<sup>274</sup>

2499 bügcü@ü: a=muy kee=n Belgütey Boorcu Jelme qurban-i

2500 Merki+d-ün qoyina-ca uqau-ta<sup>275</sup> qurban qonoq daqa=ul=ju

2501 Merki+d-i kü<sup>n</sup>ke=ül=jü Temüjin Burqan deere-ce bawu=ju

2502 ebceü-ben<sup>276</sup> möeled=cü ügüle=rün Qoaqcin eke-yi {<sup>277</sup>sola<sup>n</sup>qa

2503 bol=ju sonos=qu-yin tula {ünen bol=ju üje=gü-yin tula

2504 {büdün beye-en buruud=un {bugiya mori-tu {buqu-yin horum horumla=ju

2505 {burqasun ger gerle=n {Burqan deere qar=ulaa.

2506 {Burqan\_ qaldun-a {böesün-ü tedüy amin-iyen {bulji=ul=da=BA bi.

2507 {Qaqcaqan amin-iyen qayirala=n {qaqca mori-tu {qandaqay-in

2508 horum horumla=ju {qalqasun ger gerle=n {Qaldun deere

2509 qar=ulaa bi. {Qaldun\_ burqan-a {qarca-yin tedüy amin-iyen

2510 {qalqala=qda=BA~ @je bi; }maši ayu=ul=da=BA bi. Burqan\_ qaldun-i

2511 manaqar~ büri maliya=suqay; üdür~ büri öci=sügey.<sup>278</sup> Uruq-un uruq

2512 min-u uqa=tuqay kee=n naran esergü büse-ben güjüün-dür-iyen

2513 erigele=jü maqalay-ban qar-tur-iyen seejigele=jü qar-iyen

2514 ebceün-dür-iyen<sup>279</sup> möeled=cü<sup>280</sup> naran jüg yisün-te sögöd=cü<sup>281</sup> saculi öciüli ög=BA.<sup>282</sup>

3011 (§104) Tedüy kelele=jü Temüjin Qasar Belgütey qurban Kereyi+d-ün

3012 Tooril o<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-tur Tuula müren-ü qara tün-a bü=küy-tür

3013 od=cu<sup>283</sup> ügüle=rün Qurban Merki+d-te genen bü=küy-tür ire=jü

---

273: The connection between maqad 'truly' (occurring also in lines 5496 and X432) and the more frequent maqa 'who knows?; possibly' (cf. deR4.272 and cx, fn. 358) remains obscure.

274: Written with 15-stroke -BA plus yu; see note to 2155.

275: Dative of a verbal noun based on uqa- 'perceive; recognize' (see deR4.406).

276: The syllable-final b (present in PP) is missing from C.

277: I here follow DeR4.33 in making the first two lines shown here longer than other writers who indicate poetry.

278: C öcisügey[.]

279: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

280: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

281: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

282: YCPS ögBA[.] The g (present in PP) is missing from C.

283: PP odcu where C wrongly olcu.

3014 *eme köü-ben dawli=ju ab=da=BA*<sup>284</sup>. *Qan ecige min-u eme köü*  
3015 *abura=ju ög=tügey' kee=n ire=BA ba kee=BA; tere üge-yin*  
3016 *qariu Tooril o<sub>n</sub> qan ügüle=rün Bi nidöni cima-da ese@ü:*  
3017 *ügüle=lee. Buluqan daqu na-da abcira=run*<sup>285</sup> *Ecige-yin caq-un*  
3018 *anda kee=ldü=gsen ecige metü bu=yu~ @je' kee=n emüs=ge=gde=esü*  
3019 *tende bi ügüle=rün { Buluqan daqu-yin qariu {butara=qsan ulus-i cin-u*  
3020 *{bügüd=ge=ldü=jü ög=sü; {qara buluqan daqu-yin qariu {qaqaca=qsan*  
3021 *ulus-i cin-u {qamtud=qa=ldu=ju ög=sü' }kee=n { Cekere-yin*<sup>286</sup> *ceeji-tür*  
3022 *a=tuqay; {bököre-yin bögse-tür a=tuqay' }ese@ü: kee=lee bi.*<sup>287</sup>  
3023 *Edöe tere üge-dür-iyen gür=ün {buluqan daqu-yin qariu*  
3024 *{bügüde Merki+d-i bürel=tele {Börte\_üjin-i cin-u abura=ju*  
3025 *ög=sü bi; {qara buluqan daqu-yin qariu {qamuq Merki+d-i qaltaci=ju*<sup>288</sup>  
3026 *{qatun Börte-yi cin-u {qari=ul=ju abcira=ya bida*<sup>289</sup>. *{Ci Jamuqa*  
3027 *deü-de kelen~ ki=jü ile.; Jamuqa deü Qorqonaq\_jubur-a bu=y~ @je.*  
3028 *Bi ende-ce qoyar tüme+d morila=su baraun qar bol=un,*  
3029 *Jamuqa deü qoyar tüme+d bol=ju jewün qar bol=un morila=tuqay;*  
3030 *bidan-u boljaan Jamuqa-daca bol=tuqay kee=be.*  
3037 (§105) *Temüjin Qasar Belgütey qurban Tooril qan-aca qari=ju*  
3038 *ger-tür-iyen gür=cü Temüjin Jamuqa-tur Qasar Belgütey*  
3039 *qoyar-i ile:=rün Jamuqa anda-da ügüle kee=n ügüle=jü ile:=rün*  
3040 *Qurban Merki+d-te ire=jü {oro-ban hoqtorqu bol=da=qda=a*<sup>290</sup>  
3041 *bi; {önör niken-tE+n busu+t@u: bida; {ösöl-iyen ker ösö=kü+n.*  
3042 *{Ebür-iyen hemtül=de=e*<sup>291</sup> *bi; {heligen-ü uruq busu+t@u: bida.*  
3043 *{Haci-yan ker hacila=qu+n bida }kee=jü ile:=BA. Jamuqa*  
3044 *anda-da ügüle=jü ile:=gsen üge edüy; basa Kereyi+d-ün*

---

284: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

285: YCPS acirarun emended (H62txt.110, 18) to abcirarun (i.e. a[b]cirarun).

286: Poppe (review of Pelliot, in HJAS 13.266) emended k to g in this and bököre in next line.

287: C bi[.] PP may imply that the pronoun goes rather with the following sentence.

288: The texts of Ligeti 1971 and de Rachewiltz 1972 had the l of this word in square brackets; but it is present in both C and PP. So occasionally elsewhere in this chapter.

289: bida[.]

290: The q (present in PP) is missing from C.

291: Cf. the stems of hemtel-bAy in line 3230, and hemtere-BA in 3052. CMo. (Lessing) has emtele- and emtere-, transitive and intransitive respectively.

- 3045 Tooril qan-u ügüle=gšen üge+s-i Jamuqa-da ügüle=jü ile:=rün
- 3046 Erde üdür Yisügey qan ecige-de min-u tusa sayi
- 3047 ki=gde=gšen-i sedki=jü nököce=sü; bi qoyar tüme+d bol=ju
- 3048 baraun qar bol=un morila=su. Jamuqa deü-de kelele=jü ile.;
- 3049 Jamuqa deü qoyar tüme+d morila=tuqay; qamtud=qu boljaan
- 3050 Jamuqa deü-dece bol=tuqay kee=BA. E+de üge+s-i daus=qa=n
- 3051 bara=ju Jamuqa ügüle=rün Temüjin anda-yi<sup>292</sup> {<sup>293</sup>oro hoqtor=qu<sup>294</sup>
- 3052 bol=BA' kee=n mede=jü {örö min-u ebed=BA; {ebür hemtere=BA kee=n
- 3053 mede=jü {helige min-u ebed=BA. {Ösöl-iyen ösö=n {Uduyi+d
- 3054 Uwa+s~ Merki+d-i ülüd=ke=jü<sup>295</sup> {Üjin\_ borte-yen abura=ya;
- 3055 {haci-yan abura=n {qamuq Qaa+d Merki+d-i qaltaci=ju {qatun
- 3056 Borte-yü-en {qari=ul=un abura=ya. Edöe tere {gölme
- 3057 dabši=quy-tur {köürge-yin dawu~ bol=qa=ju {kökideg Toqtoa Buura
- 3058 keer-e bu=y~ @je; {dabci-tu qor darbalja=quy-tur {dayiji=qci<sup>296</sup>
- 3059 Dayir\_ usun }edöe Orqon Sele<sup>n</sup>ge qoyar-un jaura<sup>297</sup> Talqun
- 3060 aral-a bu=y~ @je; {qamqaulsun keyis=küy-tür {qara hoy temece=gci
- 3061 {Qaatay\_ darmala edöe {Qaraji keer-e bu=y~ @je. }Edöe
- 3062 bida dötele=n Kilqo müren-i kîrgü=s<sup>298</sup> — {<sup>299</sup>saqal~ bayan esen a=tuqay —<sup>300</sup>
- 3063 {sal~ huya=ju oro=ya; }tere kökideg Toqtoa-yin {erüge
- 3064 deere in-u oro=ju {erkin eede in-u {embürü
- 3065 daari=ju {eme köün in-u {ecül=tele hawul=uya; {qutuq
- 3066 eede in-u {ququru daariju {qotola ulus-i in-u
- 3067 {qoosun bol=tala hawuluya. }

---

292: Presumably a referential object (note to 1126 below) before direct quotation.

293: Kozin treats all the rest of this §106 as a sequence of poetic lines, excluding nothing.

294: The first q (present in PP) is missing from C.

295: Elsewhere in the YCPS this stem is occasionally written with second-syllable i and/or third-syllable g.

296: The q (present in PP) is missing from C.

297: YCPS qoyar-un Talqun emended (originally in H62txt.19) by addition of jaura between these words; that word is represented in the Chinese summary of this passage, and present in the Altan Tobchi (see MostSQP.43, fn. 42, deR4.413-4; cf. the jaγur-a-tu of Vietze92.19, line 826).

298: Note that this converb apparently has its own direct object, an indication that the -s was still felt as a converbial formant rather than merely a derivational suffix forming adverbs. (See note to 1315.)

299: Alliteration not marked by Pelliot.

300: C [—] (i.e. I here emend a minor space to a major one).

3075 (§106) Jamuqa basa ügüle=rün *Temüjin anda Tooril qan aqa*  
3076 *qoyar-a ügüle kee=n ügüle=rün* Bi @bü=rün<sup>301</sup> {Qaraa-tu tuk-iyar  
3077 *sacu=BA bi; {qara~ buqa-yin arasun-iyar {büri=gsen bürkire=n*  
3078 *bü=küy {dawu-tu köürge-ben deled=BA bi; {qara qurdun-iyar*  
3079 *unu=BA bi; {qata<sup>n</sup>qu~ deel-iyen emüs=BA bi; {qatan jida-ban*  
3080 *bari=BA bi; {qadqurasu-tu sumun-iyar onola=BA bi. {Qaa+d*  
3081 *Merki+d-tür qadqu=ldu=n<sup>302</sup> morila=ya @bö=ed<sup>303</sup> güle;*  
3082 {Urtu qaraa-tu tuk-iyar *sacu=BA bi; {hüker-ün arasu-bar*  
3083 *büri=gsen {ödken dawu-tu köürge-ben deled=BA bi; {oroq*  
3084<sup>19</sup> *qurdun-iyar unu=BA bi; {hüde:sü-tü quyag-iyar emüs=BA bi.*  
3085 {Qgi-tu üldü-been *bari=BA bi; {ono-tu sumun-iyar onola=BA*  
3086 *bi. {Uduyi+d Merki+d-tür ükü=ldü=yE @bö=ed' }kee=n ügüle.<sup>304</sup>*  
3087 *Tooril qan aqa morila=run Burqan\_ qaldun-u ebür-iyer*  
3088 *Temüjin anda-yi daari=ad ire=jü Onan müren-ü*  
3089 *teriün-e Botoqan\_ boorji-da bolja=ldu=ya; ende-ce*  
3090 *morila=run<sup>305</sup> Onan müren öede — anda-yin ulus ende~ bu=y. —*  
3091 *anda-yin ulus-aca niken tümen bi ende-ce niken tümen qoyar*  
3092 *tümen bol=ju — Onan müren öede od=cu Botoqan\_ boorji-da*  
3093 *bolja:l qajar-a neyile=ldü=yE kee=n ügüle=jü ile:=be.*  
3098 (§107) *Jamuqa-yin e+de üge+s in-u Qasar Belgütey qoyar*  
3099 *ire=jü Temüjin-e ügüle=jü Tooril qan-a kelen*  
3100 *gür=ge=BA; Tooril qan Jamuqa-yin e+de üge+s gür=ge=ül=üed*  
3101 *qoyar tüme+d morila=BA. Tooril qan morila=run*

---

301: The converb bürün is marked as a particle here (but not elsewhere) simply so that anyone searching for particles in the SH will be reminded that this word (like böed) seems sometimes to function as a particle; the matter needs further investigation. (See note to line 3429.)

302: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

303: Like the ki-ed in 2357, the form bö-ed here, and in some but not all other instances, seems to be either a particle or a converbial idiom. It is marked (°) in such cases: here, after the hortative -ya/-ye, in 3086, 3317, and 7169, and also after the bare-stem imperative in 4111. De Rachewiltz (deR4.423) has the following remark about bö-ed, with references to the works of Ozawa and Pagba. “Bö'et (= mo. bÜged) has the meanings of: 1) ‘having been’ = ‘while being’, ‘while’, ‘during’; 2) ‘and, then’ — an extension of (1); and 3) ‘precisely, that very (same)’, also an extension of (1)”. For such usages cf. also Cleaves' translations in lines 7 and 27 of the Sino-Mongolian inscription of 1362 HJAS 12:62, 65, 84, 88 (1949).

The Altan Tobchi has for the present passage Merged-tür qadquldun morilay-a edüge böged kemen ögüle (Vietze92.19, line 838); hence in some circumstances this word seems to mean ‘right now’; Haenisch translated ‘und sogleich’ in the present passage, and de Rachewiltz translates ‘at once’ in 7153 and Y359.

304: C ügüle[.]

305: For lines 3090-3119, edition C reproduces leaves from the block-print edition dating from the early 15th century (“F”).

3102 *Burqan\_ qaldun-u ebür Kelüren-ü Bürği ergi jori=n*  
 3103 *ayıš=i kee=n Temüjin Bürği ergi-de bü=rün Mör-tür bu=y*  
 3104 *kee=n jayıla=n Tüngelig öede newü=jü Tana qorqon-a*  
 3105 *Burqan\_ qaldun-u ebür bawu=ju Temüjin tende-ce cerig*  
 3106 *eüs=ge=jü Tooril qan niken tümen Tooril qan-u*  
 3107 *deü Jaqa\_ gambu niken tümen qoyar tüme+d-iyer<sup>306</sup> Kimurqa*  
 3108 *qorqon-u Ayıl\_ qaraqana-da bawu=ju bü=küy-tür neyile=n*  
 3109 *bawu=bAy.*  
 3115 (§108) *Temüjin Tooril qan Jaqa\_ gambu qurban qamtud=cu tende-ce*  
 3116 *gödöl=jü Onan-u teriün Botoqan\_ boorji-da gür=besü*  
 3117 *Jamuqa bolja:l qajar-a qurban üdür urida gür=cüüy;*  
 3118 *Jamuqa e+de Temüjin Tooril Jaqa\_ gambu-ta+n-u*  
 3119 *ceri+üd-i üje=ed Jamuqa qoyar tüme+d ceri+üd-iyen*  
 3120 *jasa=ju bayi=juuy. E+de @ber Temüjin Tooril qan*  
 3121 *Jaqa\_ gambu-ta+n ceri+üd-iyen jasa=ad~ @gü gür=ülce=jü jici*  
 3122 *tani=ldu=ju Jamuqa ügüle=rün { Boroan @ber bol=uasu*  
 3123 *{bolja:l-tur {qura @ber bol=uasu {qural-tur bu qojida=ya'*  
 3124 *}ese@ü: kee=ldü=leey bida; Mo<sup>n</sup>qol je andaqar-ta+n*  
 3125 *busu+t@u.; {<sup>307</sup> Je-dece qojida=qsan-i {jerge-dece qar=qa=ya'*  
 3126 *{kee=ldü=leey kee=BA.<sup>308</sup> Jamuqa-yin üge-tür Tooril qan*  
 3127 *ügüle=rün 'Bolja:l qajar-a qurban üdür qojid bayi=BA' kee=n*  
 3128 *qodula=qu-yi cimarla=qu-yi Jamuqa deü mede=tügey*  
 3129 *kee=BA.<sup>309</sup> Bolja:l-un cimar edüy ügüle=ldü=jü*  
 3135 (§109) *Botoqan<sup>310</sup>\_ boorjin-aca gödöl=jü Kilqo müren-e gür=cü*  
 3136 *sal~ huya=ju ketül=üed Buura keer-e Toqtoa\_ beki-yin*  
 3137 *{erüge deere-ce {erkin eede {embürü daari=n*  
 3138 *oro=ju {eme köü in-u ecül=tele dawlı=BA. {Quduq<sup>311</sup>*  
 3139 *eede in-u {ququru daari=ju {qotola ulus in-u*

---

306: YCPS tümendiye interpreted by all editors as tümediye (i.e. tüme<n>diye).

307: Alliteration not marked by Pelliot.

308: BA[.]

309: BA[.] as Kozin 224.

310: For lines 3130-3169, edition C reproduces leaves from the block-print edition dating from the early 15th century ("F").

311: The q (present in PP) is missing from C.

- 3140 {qokira=tala dawli=BA.<sup>312</sup> } Toqtoa\_ beki-yi kebte=e böe=tele  
 3141 gür=gü-yi — Kilqo müren-e bü=kü+n jiqaci+n buluqaci+n göröülücü+n  
 3142 Talbi=qsa+d dayin ayış=i kee=n söni düli=n kelen gür=ge=n od=cuuy;  
 3143 tere kelen gür=ge=ül=üed Toqtoa Uwa+s Merki+d-ün  
 3144 Dayir\_ usun qoyar qamtud=cu Sele<sup>n</sup>ge huruu Barqujin  
 3145 oron cöen beye+s-iyen dutaa=n buruud=cuuy.  
 3150 (§110) Merki+d-ün ulus Sele<sup>n</sup>ge huruu söni-de dürbe=jü  
 3151 yabu=quy-tur bidan-u ceri+üd dürbe=jü yabu=qu+n  
 3152 Merki+d-i söni-de @gü daruca=ju dawuli=n~ tala=n  
 3153 yabu=quy-tur Temüjin dürbe=jü ayisu=qu+n  
 3154<sup>20</sup> irgen-tür *Börte Börte* kee=n ur<sup>n</sup>ši=ju yabu=quy-tur ucira=ju  
 3155 Börte\_ üjin te+de dürbe=kü+n irgen-tür bü=jüüy.  
 3156 Temüjin-ü dawu sonos=cu tani=ju tergen-ece bawu=ad  
 3157 güyi=jü ire=jü Börte\_ üjin Qoaqcin jirin Temüjin-ü  
 3158 jilua cilbur:<sup>313</sup> söni tani=ju bari=juuy; saraur bü=lee;  
 3159 üje=esü Börte\_ üjin-i tani=ju teberi=ldü=n tus=ulca=BA.  
 3160 Tende-ce Temüjin Tooril qan Jamuqa anda qoyar-a  
 3161 mün söni bö=ed ügüle=jü ile:=rün Eri=gü *kereg-iyen*  
 3162 *ol=BA bi; söni bu düli=ye; ende bawu=ya bida kee=jü*  
 3163 ile:=BA. Merki+d-ün ulus dürbe=jü ayisu=quy-i söni-de  
 3164 sandur=cu ayisu=quy jaura mün tende bawu=ju qono=bAy<sup>314</sup>.  
 3165 Börte\_ üjin-i teyin jolqa=ldu=ju Merki+d irgen-ece  
 3166 abura=qsan yosun eyimü.  
 3173 (§111) Türn urida Uduyi+d Merki+d-ün Toqtoa\_ beki Uwa+s  
 3174 Merki+d-ün Dayir\_ usun Qaatay\_ darmala e+de qurban  
 3175 Merki+d qurban jau+d haran Üdür-ün erte Toqtoa\_  
 3176<sup>21</sup> *beki-yin deü Yeke\_ ciledü-dece Yisügey\_ baatur-a Höelün*  
 3177 *eke-yi buli=ju ab=ta=la:y kee=n teün-i ösö=n hacira=n*<sup>315</sup>  
 3178 od=cuuy. Temüjin-i Burqan\_ qaldun-i qurban-ta  
 3179<sup>22</sup> quci=ul=quy-tur Börte\_ üjin-i tende erüs=cü Ciledü-yin deü

---

312: C dawliBA[.]

313: Vowel length added in the second syllable, as noted in a 1997 "Additions and Corrections" sheet to deR72, and proved by Doerfer's *Türkische und mongolische Elemente im Neupersischen* 1.309 for both Mongolian and for Turkic borrowings from Mongolian. Cf. the CMo. cilbuyur in the dictionaries of Kowelewski (1849.2166) and Lessing (1973.182).

314: C qonobAy[.]

315: Cf. the verb hacila- of 3043; should the present word be emended?

- 3180 Cilger\_ bökö-de asara=ul=uqsan a=juu; tere asara=qsa-ar<sup>316</sup>
- 3181 a=ju Cilger\_ bökö dayji=ju qar=urun ügüle=rün {Qara keree
- 3182 {qalisu~ körisü ide=gü jayaa-tu böe=tele {Qalawun
- 3183<sup>23</sup> toquraun-i ide=sü' kee=n ješi=n a=juu<sup>317</sup>. {Qatar mawuy Cilger bi
- 3184 {qatun Üjin-tür qal=qu<sup>318</sup>~ bol=un {qamuq Merki+d-te huntawu.
- 3185 {Qaracu mawu Cilger {qara teriün-dür-iyen gür=te=gü bol=BA;
- 3186 {qaqcaqan amin-iyen qoroq=un {qara<sup>n</sup>qu qabcal širqu=su;
- 3187 {qalqa ken-e bol=da=quy@u: bi<sup>319</sup>. {Quladu mawu šibawun
- 3188 {quluqana kücügene ide=gü jaya:-tu böe=tele {Qun
- 3189 toquraun-i ide=sü' kee=n ješi=n a=juu. {Qunar mawu
- 3190 Cilger bi {qutuq-tay su-tay Üjin-i {quri=ya=ju ire=gü bol=un
- 3191 {qotola Merki+d-e huntawu bol=BA. {Qokir mawu Cilger
- 3192 {qokimay teriün-dür-iyen gür=te=gü bol=BA bi; {qorqosun-u
- 3193 tedüy amin-iyen {qoroq=un qara-tu qara<sup>n</sup>qu qabcal-a
- 3194 širqu=su; {qorqosun-u tedüy amin-a min-u {qoriyaan
- 3195 ken-e bol=da=quy@u: bi } kee=ed dayji=n dutaa=juu.
- 3202 (§112) Qaatay\_ darmala-yi erüs=BA; abcira=ju {<sup>320</sup>qabtasun<sup>321</sup> buqau
- 3203 emüs=ge=jü {Qaldun\_ burqan-a jori=ul=BA. } Belgütey-in
- 3204 eke tere ayil-tur bu=yu kee=n jaa=qda=ju
- 3205 Belgütey eke-yü-en ab=ura od=cu ger-tür in-u
- 3206 Belgütey baraun eüte-ber<sup>322</sup> oro=qu-lua eke in-u
- 3207 nabtarqay nekey~ deel-tey jewün eüte-ber qar=uad
- 3208 qadana busu güün-e ügüle=rün «<sup>323</sup>Köü+d min-u qa+d bol=juu»
- 3209 kee=gde=müy bi; ende mawuy güün-tür tübe=jü edöe
- 3210 köü+d-iyen niur ker üje=küy bi ke:=ed güyi=jü

---

316: YCPS asaradsanar emended (by Haenisch, Pelliot et al.) to asaraqsaar (i.e. asara<d>[q]sa<n>ar).

317: C ajuu[.]

318: The verb is 'approach; bother', but here translated 'lay hands on' (MostSQP.51-52, deR4.41).

319: C bj[.] Note that Kozin here marks (with extra space and asterisks) a major break between what he presumably thought were two separate poetic sections.

320: Ligeti, with Pelliot, includes the prior words as part of the poetry. Not so CL82.47, deR4.42, or Kozin 226.

321: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

322: YCPS eütenber interpreted (as Ligeti) here and in the next line as eüteber (i.e. eüte<n>ber).

323: For discussion of the minu here see Street13.59-60, 62

- 3211 šiquy hoy-tur širqu=juu; tedüy eri=jü ese ol=da=la.y.
- 3212 Belgütey noyan Merki^dey @ele yasu-tu güün-i
- 3213 Eke-yi min-u abcira kee=jü qodolid=qu bü=lee.
- 3214 Burqan-i quci=ldu=qsa+d qurban jau+d Merki+d-i
- 3215 {<sup>324</sup>uruq-un uruq-a gür=tele {hünesü-er keyis=tele
- 3216 {ülid=ge=BA; {hüle=gse+d eme köün an-u {ebürid=kü+n<sup>325</sup>
- 3217 metü+s-i<sup>326</sup> {ebürid=BA; {eüten-tür oro=ul=da=qu+n
- 3218 metü+s-i {eüten-dür-iyen oro=ul=BA. }
- 3225 (§113) Tooril qan Jamuqa qoyar-i Temüjin büšire=n ügüle=rün
- 3226 Qan ecige min-u Jamuqa anda qoyar-a nököce=gde=jü
- 3227 te<sup>n</sup>giri qajar-a gücü neme=gde=jü {<sup>327</sup>erke-tü te<sup>n</sup>giri-de
- 3228 nereyid=cü {eke etügen-e gür=ge=jü {ere haci-tu
- 3229 Merki+d irgen-i {ebür @ba an-u hoqtorquy bol=qa=bAy.
- 3230 {Helige~ @ba an-u hemtel=bAy bida; {oro~ @ba an-u hoqtorquy
- 3231 bol=qa=bAy; {uruq-un @ba güün-i ülüd=ge=bAy bida; {hüle=gse+d-i @ba
- 3232 an-u arbila=bAy @je bida<sup>328</sup>. }Merki+d irgen-i tedüy busa<sup>n</sup>=qa=ju<sup>329</sup>
- 3233 icu=ya kee=ldü=bAy.
- 3237 (§114) Uduyi+d Merki+d dürbe=rün buluqan maqalay-tu maral-un
- 3238 qodun qudusu-tu ilkin~ jarqaq usun-u buluqan jalqa=qsan
- 3239 deel-tü tabun nasu-tu Kücü nere-tü nidün-dür-iyen qal-tu
- 3240 köüken-i bidan-u ceri+üd nuntuq-tur qocor=uqsan-i
- 3241 ol=ju abcira=ju Höelün eke-de sawqa ab=cu od=cu
- 3242 ög=bAy.
- 3246 (§115) Temüjin Tooril qan Jamuqa qurban qamtud=cu Merki+d-ün
- 3247 {<sup>330</sup>corqan ger coqoli=ul=ju {coq-tay eme-yi arbila=ju
- 3248 }Orqan Sele<sup>n</sup>ge qoyar-un Talqun\_ aral-aca icu=run

---

324: Marked as poetry by deR4.42-43, following Kozin, who starts the poetry only six words later. Not shown as poetry by other writers.

325: The d (present in PP) is missing from C, but a very small space was left for it.

326: YCPS medüsi emended to metüsi (as lines 5264, 8092, X367; i.e. me<d>[t]üsü) here and in the next line; emendation mine (JCS).

327: Kozin starts the poetry ten words earlier despite the lack of initial alliteration: his lines start with Qan and Teñ.

328: C bida[.]

329: YCPS busanqaju interpreted (with Haenisch and Pelliot) as busanqaju (as in lines 8449 and 8450; i.e. busa<n>[ñ]qaju).

330: Alliteration not marked by Pelliot.



3249 Temüjin Jamuqa qoyar qamtud=cu<sup>331</sup> Qorqonaq\_ jubur jori=n  
 3250 icu=bAy.<sup>332</sup> Tooril qan icu=run Burqan\_ qaldun-u gerü-ber  
 3251 Hökörtü\_ jubur daari=n Qacauratu\_ subcid<sup>333</sup>  
 3252<sup>24</sup> Huliyatu\_ subcid daari=n görüen in-u abala=ad Tuula-yin  
 3253 qara tün-i jori=n icu=bAy.  
 3258 (§116) Temüjin Jamuqa qoyar Qorqonaq\_ jubur-a neyile=n bawu=ju  
 3259 erten-ü anda bo=ulca=qsan-ıyan durad=ulca=n Anda  
 3260 *tu<sup>n</sup>qu=ldu=ju amara=ldu=ya kee=ldü=bAy. A<sup>n</sup>qa urida*  
 3261 anda bo=ulca=run Temüjin harban niken nasu-tu bü=küy-tür  
 3262 Jamuqa quraltuq šia Temüjin-e ög=cü Temüjin-ü  
 3263 c<sup>n</sup>gültüg-tü šia-ar<sup>334</sup> anda bo=ulca=ju anda kee=ldü=gšen  
 3264 Onan-u mölsün-tür šialja=quy-tur tende anda kee=ldü=leey;  
 3265 teün-ü qoyına qabur ala<sup>n</sup>gir numu-ta+n qarbiya=ldu=n<sup>335</sup>  
 3266 bü=küy-tür Jamuqa burau-yin qoyar eber nia=ju  
 3267 nükele=jü dawu-tu yor-ıyan Temüjin-e ög=cü<sup>336</sup> Temüjin-ü  
 3268 arca ma<sup>n</sup>lay-tu qodoli aralji=ju anda cila=ldu=bAy.<sup>337</sup>  
 3269 Nökö.te anda kee=ldü=gšen<sup>338</sup> yosun teyimü.  
 3275 (§117) Uridu+s ötögü+s-ün üge sonos=cu <sup>339</sup>Anda güün {amin niken; ülü  
 3276 *tebci=ldü=n {amin-u arici bol=uyu' }kee=n amara=ldu=quy yosun*  
 3277 *teyimü. Edöe basa anda tu<sup>n</sup>qu=ldu=ju amara=ya*  
 3278 kee=ldü=jü Temüjin Merki+d-ün Toqtoa-yi  
 3279 arbila=ju ab=uqsan altan büse Jamuqa anda-da

---

331: YCPS qamtucu emended (by Haenisch and Pelliot) to qamtudcu (i.e. qamtu[d]cu). C has a small space where the d should have been written.

332: C icubAy[.]

333: I have not marked the component parts of the names in this and the next line; there are three occurrences of possessive -tu, two of the d plural. See deR4.435 for details.

334: YCPS šia emended to šiaar (i.e. šia[ar]). See Poppe75.156; Altan Tobchi has the equivalent šayai-bar here (Vietze92.22, line 945). (Pelliot and Ligeti left the form unemended; Haenisch (62txt.138) suggested emendation rather by adding abcu, i.e. šia [abcu] anda. Kurib1.130 has his equivalent of šia [aralji=jü] anda.)

335: Haenisch (H62dict.61) suggested the verb was equivalent to qarbuladu-; Lessing's dictionary lists a qarbu- 'shoot (an arrow or firearms)'. But Altan Tobchi has qarbayaldun (Vietze92.22, line 947).

336: The g (present in PP) is missing from C.

337: C cilaldubAy[.]

338: The g (present in PP) is missing from C.

339: Only deR4.44 shows the alliterative lines here as poetry.

- 3280 büsele=ül=bAy. Toqtoa-yin esgel qaliun-i
- 3281 Jamuqa anda-da unu=ul=bAy. Jamuqa Uwa+s Merki+d-ün
- 3282 Dayir\_ usun-i arbila=ju ab=uqsan altan büse
- 3283 Temüjin anda-da büsele=ül=bAy. Dayir\_ usun-u @gü
- 3284 eber-tü ünügün caqaan-i Temüjin-e unu=ul=bAy.
- 3285 Qorqonaq\_ jubur-un Quldaqar qun-u ebür-e saqlaqar
- 3286 mudun-a anda kee=ldü=jü amara=ldu=ju qurimla=n
- 3287 toyila=n jirqa=ldu=ju söni könjile-de-en qaqca qono=ldu=qu+n
- 3288 bü=lee.
- 3294 (§118) Temüjin Jamuqa qoyar amara=ldu=run niken~ hon
- 3295 nököe hon-u jarim amara=ldu=ju tere a=qsan nuntuq-aca
- 3296 niken üdür Newü=ye kee=ldü=jü newü=rün jun-u teriün
- 3297 sara-yin harban jirqoan-a hulaan tergel üdür
- 3298 newü=bAy. Temüjin Jamuqa qoyar qamtu terge+d-ün
- 3299 urida yabu=ju ayis=urun Jamuqa ügüle=rün
- 3300 *Temüjin anda anda {aula šiqan bawu=ya; {aduuci+n bidan-u*
- 3301 *{alacuq-a gür=tügey; {qol-tur šiqan bawu=ya; {qonici+d<sup>340</sup>*
- 3302 *quriquaci+d bidan-u {qoolay-a gür=tügey } kee=be.*
- 3303 Temüjin Jamuqa-yin ene üge-yi uqa=n yada=ju sem-iyer
- 3304 bayi=ju qocor=cu neür<sup>341</sup> dumda terge+d güllice=jü
- 3305 neüri bö=ed Temüjin Höelün eke-de *Jamuqa anda*
- 3306 *ügüle=mü. {Aula-tur šiqan bawu=ya. Aduuci+n bidan-u*
- 3307 *{alacuq-a gür=tügey; {qol-tur šiqan bawu=ya; {qonici+d<sup>342</sup>*
- 3308 *quriquaci+d bidan-u {qoolay-a gür=tügey' } kee=n*
- 3309 *ügüle=mü.<sup>343</sup> Bi ene üge in-u uqa=n yada=ju qariu in-u*
- 3310 *yau @ba ese ügüle=be bi; Eke-dece asaq=su' kee=n*
- 3311 *ire=be bi kee=be. Höelün eke-yi do<sup>n</sup>qod=ua*
- 3312 *üdüyü-e Börte\_ üjin ügüle=rün *Jamuqa anda**
- 3313 *uyida<sup>n</sup>qa kee=gde=n bü=lee. Edöe bidan-aca*
- 3314 *uyid=qu caq bol=BA. Tuqar-un *Jamuqa anda-yin**

---

340: YCPS qonincid interpreted (by Ligeti) as qonacid (i.e. qoni<n>cid).

341: YCPS üri in C but neüli in PP: emended by Haenisch (H62txt.23, 132) to neüri as in the next line (i.e. neü<|>[r]i).

342: YCPS qonincid interpreted (by Ligeti) as qonacid (i.e. qoni<n>cid).

343: C ügülemü[.] The actual writing indicates that the pronoun belongs with the prior sentence, a blatant error.

- 3315 *kelele=gseu kelen bida-tur bö=ed ješi=gü üge bu=yu.*<sup>344</sup>
- 3316 Bida bu bawu=ya; ene gödöl=ügse-er šiliuy-a
- 3317 *qaqacan söni düli=n gödöl=üyE @bö=ed*<sup>345</sup> kee=be.
- 3324 (§119) Börte\_ üjin-ü üge-ber jöbšiyе=jü ülü bawu=n
- 3325 söni düli=n gödöl=jü ayisu=quy-tur jaura mör-tür
- 3326 Tayiciu+d-i daari=BA. Tayiciu+d @ber köki=jü
- 3327 mün söni bö=ed jörice=n Jamuqa jüg gödöl=bAy @gü.
- 3328 Tayiciu+d-un Besü+d-ün nuntuq-tur niken üçü:gen Kökücü
- 3329 nere-tü köün-i nuntuq-tur qocor=uqsan-i bidan-u-ay
- 3330 ab=uad ire=jü Höelün eke-de ög=be.
- 3331 Höelün eke tejiye=be.
- 3335 (§120) Tere söni düli=jü üdür geyi=esü üje=esü
- 3336 Jalayir-un Qaciun\_ toquraun Qarqay<sup>346</sup>\_ toquraun
- 3337<sup>25</sup> Qaralday\_ toquraun e+de qurban Toquraun aqa+nar deü+ner
- 3338 söni düli=ldü=jü ayis=un a=juu; basa Tarqu+d-un
- 3339 Qadaan Daldurqan aqa+nar deü+ner tabun Tarqu+d
- 3340 ayis=un~ @gü a=juu; basa Möngetü Kiyan-u köün Öngür-tE+n
- 3341 Cañši+ud<sup>347</sup> Bayau+d-iyar-a.n<sup>348</sup> ayis=un~ @gü a=juu.<sup>349</sup> Barula+s-aca
- 3342 Qubilay Qudus aqa+nar deü+ner ire=bAy.
- 3343 Mañqu+d-aca Jetey Doqolqu\_ cerbi aqa deü qoyar
- 3344 ire=bAy. Boorcu-yin deü Ögölen\_ cerbi
- 3345 Arula+d-aca qaqaca=ju aqa-dur-iyar Boorcu-tur
- 3346 neyile=n ire=bAy~ @gü. Jelme-yin deü Caurqan
- 3347 Sübeetey baatur Uryañqa+n-aca qaqaca=ju
- 3348<sup>26</sup> Jelme-tür neyile=n ire=bAy. Besü+d-ece Degey Kücügür
- 3349 aqa deü qoyar ire=bAy~ @gü. Suldu+s-aca
- 3350 Cilgütey Taki Tayiciuday<sup>350</sup> aqa+nar deü+ner
- 3351 ire=bAy~ @gü. Jalayir-un Sece\_ domoq Arqay\_ qasar\_ bala

---

344: C buyu[.]

345: See note to 3081.

346: YCPS Qaraqay was emended by Ligeti to Qarqay (as in line 3465; i.e. Qar<a>qay); Altan Tobchi has Qarqai in both passages (Vietze92.22, lines 985, 1065).

347: Locus of morpheme division not clear.

348: Locus of first morpheme division not clear.

349: C ajuu[.]

350: Here and in 3470, this is apparently a person's name, not 'of the Tayiciud'.

- 3352 qoyar köü+d-iyer-e:n ire=bAy~ @gü. Qo<sup>n</sup>qota+n-aca  
 3353 Söyiketü cerbi ire=bAy~ @gü. Sükeke+n-ü Jegey  
 3354 Qo<sup>n</sup>daqor-un köün Sükegey jeün<sup>351</sup> ire=bAy~ @gü. Neü<sup>^</sup>dey  
 3355 Caqaan\_ uwa ire=bAy~ @gü. Olqunu+ud-un K<sup>r</sup>ngiyaday  
 3356 Qorola+s-aca Seciür Dörben-ece Moci\_ bedüün  
 3357 ire=bAy~ @gü. Ikire+s-ün Butu ende gürege+d-te<sup>352</sup>  
 3358 yabu=qsa-ar ire=be~ @gü. Noyaki+n-aca Ju<sup>n</sup>so  
 3359 ire=bAy~ @gü. Oronar-aca Jirqoan ire=bAy~ @gü.  
 3360 Barula+s-aca Suqu\_ secen Qaracar köün-lüe-ben  
 3361 ire=bAy~ @gü. Basa Baari+n-u Qorci Üsün<sup>353</sup> ebügen  
 3362 Kökö\_ cos Menen\_ baari+n-iyer-e:n<sup>354</sup> niken güreen  
 3363 ire=bAy~ @gü.  
 3376 (§121) Qorci ire=jü ügüle=rün *Bodoncar boqdo-yin bari=ju*  
 3377 *ab=uqsan eme-dece töre=gsen ba Jamuqa-lua* {<sup>355</sup>keeli  
 3378 *nike-te+n {keke qaqca-ta+n }bü=leey ba; Jamuqa-daca*  
 3379 *ülü qaqaca=qu+n bü=lee ba; jaarin ire=jü na-dur*  
 3380 *nidiün-dür-iyen üje=ül=bAy. Qoaqcin ünien ire=jü*  
 3381 *Jamuqa-yi horci=ju yabu=ju ger tergen in-u*  
 3382 *mürgüle=ed Jamuqa-yi mürgü=jü öreele*  
 3383 *eber-iyen ququra=ju soljir<sup>356</sup> eber-tü bol=ju*  
 3384 Eber min-u aca' kee=n kee=n Jamuqa-yin jüg<sup>357</sup> mööre=n  
 3385 *mööre=n široay sacu=n sacu=n bayi=mu; muqular*  
 3386 *qoa hüker yeke gerlüge deere ergü=jü*  
 3387 *köl=jü jidkü=jü Temüjin-ü qoyina-ca yeke*

---

351: YCPS erroneously shows two names instead of one here.

352: YCPS güregete emended to güregedte, as in 1470 (i.e. gürege[d]te).

353: YCPS Qorciüsün ebügen tacitly emended by all writers (e.g. Ligeti 1971.77) to Qorci Üsün ebügen since two men are involved.

354: Ligeti 1971.77 left Menen-Ba'arin-iyeren (in his transcription) unemended; Kuribayashi likewise has Menen\_Ba'arin-iyer-ēn (Kurib1.140), and deR72.50 menen-ba'arin-iyer-ēn, which is translated (2004.147) 'with their Menen Ba'arin [followers]'. The sequence is odd — if not utterly unique in this text — in both breaking vowel harmony and having a minor space (as defined by Street 1986) before the case ending. One wonders whether some word was omitted. PP has the same characters as C, and also a space; Altan Tobchi has Maqa\_Bayarın-iyar irebei (Vietze92.23, line 1004).

355: Poetry not indicated by Pelliot or Ligeti.

356: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

357: The g (present in PP) is missing from C, but extra space was left for it.

- 3388<sup>27</sup> *tergeür-iyer mööre=n mööre=n ayis=urun*
- 3389 `«Te<sup>n</sup>giri qajar eyetü=ldü=jü<sup>358</sup> Temüjin-i ulus-un
- 3390 *ejen bol=tuqay»<sup>359</sup>kee=n ulus tee=jü ab=cu<sup>360</sup>*
- 3391 *ayis=u'~ kee=n jaari+d nidün-tür üje=ül=jü<sup>361</sup>*
- 3392 *na-dur jia=muy. Temüjin ci ulus-un~ ejen*
- 3393 *bol=uasu nama-yi jia=qsan-u<sup>362</sup>~ tula ker*
- 3394 *jirqa=ul=qu<sup>363</sup> ci kee=be<sup>364</sup>. Temüjin ügüle=rün*
- 3395 *Ünen teyin~ ulus mede=ül=üesü tümen-ü noyan*
- 3396 *bol=qa=su kee=be. Ele~ edü törö-yi jia=qsan*
- 3397 *güün-i nama-yi tümen-ü~ noyan bol=uasu yaun*
- 3398 *jirqala<sup>n</sup>~ bu=y; tümen-ü~ noyan bol=qa=ad<sup>365</sup> ulus-un*
- 3399 *qoa+s~ sayi+d öki+d darqala=n ab=qa=ul=ju*
- 3400 *qucin~ @ba eme+s-tü bol=qa; basa yau~ @ba*
- 3401<sup>28</sup> *kelele=gšen-i min-u esergü sonos kee=be.*
- 3410 (§122) *Qunan terü-te+n Genige+s niken~ güreen ire=bAy<sup>366</sup>~ @gü.*
- 3411 *Basa Darıtay\_ odcigin niken~ güreen ire=bAy~ @gü.*
- 3412 *Jadaran-aca Mułqalqu ire=bAy~ @gü. Basa Ünji+n*
- 3413 *Saqayi+d niken~ güreen ire=be~ @gü. Jamuqa-daca tedüy*
- 3414 *qaqaca=n gödöl=üyed Kimurqa qoroqan-u Ayıl*
- 3415 *Qaraqana bawu=ju bü=küy-tür basa Jamuqa-daca qaqaca=ju*
- 3416 *Jürki+n-ü Sorqatu\_ jürki-yin köün Saca\_ beki Taycu*
- 3417 *qoyar niken~ güreen basa Nekün\_ taysi-yin~ köün Qucar\_ beki*

---

358: The l (present in PP) is missing from C, but space was left for it.

359: For another interpretation, with assumption of an an additional instance of kee- (in kee-müy or kee-jü) before kee-n) see Street13.56.

360: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

361: The l (present in PP) is missing from C, but space was left for it both before and after the second ü!

362: The q (present in PP) is missing from C, but space was left for it.

363: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

364: PP has a note different from that of C, stating that the earlier writing was keebAy here; but PP agrees with C in showing the earlier reading keebe at the end of the next sentence.

365: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

366: PP has a note different from that in C, stating that the earlier writing was keebe here; but PP agrees with C in showing the earlier reading keebAy at the end of the next sentence.

- 3418 niken~ güreen basa Qutula qan-u köün Altan<sup>367</sup> \_ odcigin
- 3419 niken~ güreen — e+de basa Jamuqa-daca qaqaca=n gödöl=jü —
- 3420 Temüjin-i Kimurqa qoroqan-u Ayıl Qaraqana-da
- 3421 bawu=ju bü=küy-tür neyile=n bawu=bAy. Tende-ce newü=jü
- 3422 Gürelgü datora Se<sup>n</sup>gür qoroqan-u Qara\_ jürügen-ü
- 3423 Kökö\_ naur bawu=bAy.
- 3429 (§123) Altan Qucar Saca\_ beki bü=rün<sup>368</sup> eyetü=ldü=jü
- 3430 Temüjin-e ügüle=rün Cima-yi qan bol=qa=ya; Temüjin-i
- 3431 qan bol=uasu ba {<sup>369</sup>olon dayin-tur alginci haul=ju
- 3432 {ö<sup>n</sup>ge sayin ökin qatun {ordo ger<sup>370</sup> qari irgen-ü
- 3433 {qacar~ qoa qatun öki {qarqam sayin aqta
- 3434 {qatara=ul=ju abcira=ju<sup>371</sup> ög=sü<sup>372</sup> ba; {oroa göröesün
- 3435 abala=asu {utura=ju ög=sü ba.<sup>373</sup> {Keer-ün göröesün-ü
- 3436 {keeli in-u nike=tele šiqā=ju ög=sü; {qun-u
- 3437 göröesün-ü {quya~ in-u nike=tele šiqā=ju ög=sü
- 3438 ba.<sup>374</sup> {Qadqu=ldu=quy üdür {qala~ cin-u buši bol=qa=asu
- 3439 {qari~ širi-dece {qatun~ eme-dece man-u {qaqaca=ul=ju
- 3440 {qara~ teriü man-u {qajar kösör-tür ge:=jü od;
- 3441 {e<sup>n</sup>ke üdür {eye cin-u ebde=esü<sup>375</sup> {ere+s hara+d-aca
- 3442 {eme köü+d-ece man-u {hirice=ül=jü {eje ügey qajar-a

---

367: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

368: YCPS bürün should perhaps be emended to either bolun 'together' or bürin (= bürin) 'all'; see deR4.453, and cf. note to 3076 above.

369: Poetry marked by all five sources; Kozin breaks these lines up into four stanzas with 7, 6, 7, and 6 lines.

370: Poppe75.155 added several words at this point which, he said, came from "other [SH] text versions". But according to deR4.454 there is "no textual justification" for this insertion, which would alter the text to read ordo ger[-tür-iyen oro-ju ol-ju abcira-ju ög-sü ba.] Qari irgen-ü.

371: YCPS aciraju emended to abciraju (i.e. a[b]ciraju).

372: The g (present in PP) is missing from C.

373: C ba[.]

374: C ba[.]

375: YCPS edeesü emended to ebdeesü (i.e. e[b]deesü).

3443 *ge:=jü od.*<sup>376</sup> } Edüy üge bara=ldu=ju<sup>377</sup> eyin aman~ alda=ju  
 3444 Temüjin-i C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan kee=n nereyid=cü<sup>378</sup> qan bol=qa=ba<sup>379</sup>.  
 3449 (§124) C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan bol=uad Boorcu-yin deü Ögöley\_ cerbi  
 3450 qor aqsa=BA<sup>380</sup>. Qaciun\_ toquraun qor aqsa=BA<sup>381</sup>. Jetey  
 3451 Doqolqu\_ cerbi aqa deü qoyar qor aqsa=BA. Öngür  
 3452 Söyiketü\_ cerbi Qadaan\_ daldurqan qurban ügüle=rün  
 3453 {Manaqar-un unda:n bu *megüde=ül=sügey*; {*üde-yin unda:n bu*  
 3454 *oso=lda=suqay* } kee=n bawurci+n bol=BA. Degey ügüle=rün  
 3455 {Silegü~ irge {*sülen bol=qa=ju* {*manaqar bu megüde=sü*;  
 3456 {*qonoq-tur bu qojida=su.*<sup>382</sup> {Alaqci+ud<sup>383</sup> qoni+d-i<sup>384</sup> aduula=ju  
 3457 {*alam düür=ge=sü.* {Qo<sup>n</sup>qoqci+ud qoni+d-i aduula=ju  
 3458 {*qoton düür=ge=sü* {*qoolancar mawuy bü=lee bi*; {*qoni+d*  
 3459 *aduula=ju* {*qonjiyasun ide=sü bi.*<sup>385</sup> } Degey qoni+d  
 3460 *aduula=BA*<sup>386</sup>. Deü in-u Gücügür ügüle=rün  
 3461 {Coorqa-tay<sup>387</sup> tergen-i {*ciü~ in-u bu~ ciüde=ül=sü*;  
 3462 {*te<sup>n</sup>gisge-tey tergen-i* {*tergeür deere bu*  
 3463<sup>29</sup> *teüre=ül=sü* } kee=jü Ger tergen doya=su kee=be.<sup>388</sup>  
 3464 Dödey cerbi Ger dотора gerge+n~ tudqar-i basaala=suqay

---

376: C od[.]

377: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

378: YCPS nereyicü emended to nereyidcü (i.e. nerey[d]cü).

379: The ending is written with the 4-stroke ba character.

380: The q (present in PP) is missing from C.

381: The q (present in PP) is missing from C.

382: C qojidasu[.]

383: This is the plural of an alaqcin; cf. Qonqoqci+ud in the next line. See Street90.368, 372, and sources cited there. But the derivational element -qcin needs further investigation.

384: YCPS qonindi interpreted (by Ligeti) as qonidi (i.e. qoni<n>di). So in three similar forms in the next three lines.

385: C bi[.]

386: For lines 3460-3489, edition C reproduces leaves from the block-print edition dating from the early 15th century ("F").

387: YCPS wrongly has the glossing division before rather than after the qa.

388: C keebe[.]

- 3465 kee=be. *Qubilay Cilgütey Qarqay\_ toquraun qurban-i*  
 3466 *Qasar-lua bol=un üldü+s aqsa=ju {gücürge=gü+n-i*  
 3467 *güjüü+d an-u ki<sup>n</sup>güri=dkün. {Qmorqa=qu+n-i omoriu+d*  
 3468 *o<sup>n</sup>laji=dqun } kee=be. Belgütey Qaralday\_ toquraun*  
 3469 *qoyar-i<sup>389</sup> {aqta bari=tuqay; {aqtaci+n bol=tuqay } kee=be.<sup>390</sup>*  
 3470 *Tayiciuday Qutu Morici Mulqalqu qurban-i*  
 3471 *aduu adu:la=tuqay kee=be. Arqay\_ qasar*  
 3472 *Taqay Sükegey Caurqan dörben-i {qola-yin qoocaq*  
 3473 *{oyira-yin odora bol=tuqay } kee=be. Sübeetey*  
 3474 *baadur ügüle=rün {Quluqana bol=ju {quri=ya=ldu=su;*  
 3475 *{qara kerie bol=ju {qadaun bü=gü+n-i {qarma=ldu=su.*  
 3476 *{Nembee isgey bol=ju {nemürle=ldü=n sori=su.*  
 3477 *{Gerisge isgey bol=ju {ger~ jüg gerisgele=ldü=n*  
 3478 *sori=su } kee=be.*  
 3485 (§125) *Tende Cırgis qahan qan bol=ju Boorcu Jelme qoyar-a*  
 3486 *ügüle=rün Ta qoyar nama-yi {<sup>391</sup>seüder-ece busu*  
 3487 *nökör ügey-tür {seüder bol=ju {sedkil min-u*  
 3488 *amu=ul=BA @je ta; {sedkil-tür a=tuqay<sup>392</sup> kee=be.<sup>393</sup>*  
 3489 *{Seül-ece busu cicua ügey-tür {seül bol=ju {jirüge*  
 3490 *min-u amu=ul=BA @je ta; {ceeji dоторa min-u a=tuqay<sup>394</sup>*  
 3491 *} kee=be. Ta qoyar urida bayi=qsa-ar e+de*  
 3492 *bü=gü+n-i aqala=ju ülü@ü: aqu+n~ ta kee=be. Basa*  
 3493 *Cırgis qahan ügüle=rün Te<sup>n</sup>giri qajar-a gücü neme=jü*  
 3494 *ihee=gde=esü ta Jamuqa anda-aca nama-yi kee=n*  
 3495 *sedki=jü Nököce=sü' kee=n ire=gse+d<sup>395</sup> ötögü+s*  
 3496<sup>30</sup> *ölje-te+n nökö+d min-u ülü@ü: bol=uujay ta kee=be.*  
 3497 *Jüg~ jüg tüši=bAy tan-i.*

---

389: Referential object.

390: C keebe[.]

391: Alliteration not marked by Pelliot. The first keebe is excluded from the poetry by CL82.58 and deR4.52, but not Kozin and Ligeti.

392: YCPS aduqay emended to atuqay (i.e. a<d>[t]uqay); see note to 2403. Emendation mine.

393: C keebe[;]

394: YCPS aduqay emended to atuqay (i.e. a<d>[t]uqay); see note to 2403. Emendation mine.

395: The g (present in PP) is missing from C.



3501 (§126) C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan-i qan bol=qa=bAy kee=n Kereyi+d-ün Tooril  
3502 qan-tur Daqay Sügegey qoyar-i elci ile:=bAy.  
3503 Tooril qan *Temüjin köün-i min-u qan bol=qa=qu nay*  
3504 *jöb; Mo<sup>n</sup>qol qa ügeü+n ker a=qu+n ta. {<sup>396</sup>Éne eye-ben*  
3505 *bu ebde=dkün; {eye ja<sup>n</sup>gi-ban<sup>397</sup> bu tal=udqun; {jaqa-ban bu*  
3506 *tamtul=udqun<sup>398</sup> kee=jü ile:=jü.<sup>399</sup>*  
4011 (§127) Arqay\_ qasar Caurqan qoyar-i Jamuqa-tur elci~ ile:=esü  
4012 Jamuqa ügüle=rün *Altan Qucar qoyar-a ügüle~ kee=n*  
4013 ügüle=jü ile:=rün *Altan Qucar ta qoyar Temüjin anda ba*  
4014 *qoyar jaura anda-yin {sübee~ seci=jü {qabirqa qadqu=ju }yeki=n*  
4015 *qaqaca=ul=bAy ta; anda ba qoyar-i ülü qaqaca=ul=un qamtu*  
4016<sup>31</sup> *bü=küy-tür Temüjin anda-yi qan yeki=n ese bol=qa=bAy ta; edöe~ yambar*  
4017 *@ele sedkil~ sedki=jü qan bol=qa=bAy ta.<sup>400</sup> Altan Qucar ta qoyar*  
4018 *ügüle=gšen üge+s-tür-iyen gür=ün anda-yin sedkil amu=ul=ju anda-da min-u*  
4019 *sayıqa-tur @gü nököce=jü ög=üdkün kee=jü ile:=jü*  
4024 (§128) teün-ü qoyina Jamuqa-yin deü Taycar Jalama-yin  
4025 ebür-e Ölegey\_ bulaq-a bü=rün bidan-u Saari\_ keer-e  
4026 bü=gü Joci\_ darmala-yin aduun deermed=üre  
4027 od=cuuy<sup>401</sup>. Taycar Joci\_ darmala-yin aduun  
4028 deermed=cü ab=cu od=cuuy; Joci\_ darmala aduu-ban  
4029 deermed=cü od=ta=ju<sup>402</sup> nökö+d-iyen jürüğe yada=qda=ju  
4030 mün Joci\_ darmala neke=jü od=cu söni aduun-u-an  
4031 kijjar-a gür=cü morin-u-an del~ deere hilige-ber-iyen  
4032 kebte=jü gür=cü Taycar-un niruu in-u ququru  
4033 qarbu=ju ala=ad aduu-ban ab=uad ire=jüü.  
4037 (§129) Deü-ben Taycar-i ala=qda=ba<sup>403</sup> kee=n Jamuqa teriü-te+n

---

396: Poetry indicated only by deR4.52; exactly how de Rachewiltz intended the Mongolian text to be broken up into poetic lines remains less than clear.

397: YCPS jan-gi-ben interpreted as back-harmonic (i.e. jan-gi-b<e>[a]n).

398: Assuming a consonant-final stem tamtul- here, as in CMo.

399: For the long vowels cf. Altan Tobchi ilegejükiü, and discussion in deR4.469.

400: C ta[.]

401: C ocuuy[.], without the d found in PP, and less than a major space after the word.

402: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

403: C and PP both have alaqda**ba**Ay (though the q is missing in C), but with different notes; C says the original text had the 4-stroke ba character here, PP the 7-stroke bay. C is probably correct.

4038 Jadara+n harban qurban qari+n nököce=jü qurban  
 4039 tüme+d boļ=ju Ala+uud<sup>404</sup> \_ turqa+ud-iyar daba=ju  
 4040 Cırgis qahan-tur morila=ju Ayis=ay kee=n Ikire+s-ece  
 4041 Mülke\_ totaq Borolday qoyar Cırgis<sup>405</sup> qahan-i  
 4042 Gürelgü-de bü=küy-tür kelen gür=ge=n ire=jüüy; ene  
 4043 kelen mede=ed — Cırgis qahan harban qurban güree+d  
 4044 bü=leey — qurban~ @gü tüme+d boļ=ju Jamuqa-yin esergü  
 4045 in-u morila=ju Dalan\_ balju+d<sup>406</sup> bayi=ldu=ju  
 4046 Cırgis qahan Jamuqa-da tende gödöl=ge=gde=jü Onon-u  
 4047 Jerene qabciqay-a qor=bAy. Jamuqa ügüle=rün  
 4048 *Onon-u Jerene-de qor=qa=bAy bida kee=jü*  
 4049 qari=run Cino:+s-un<sup>407</sup> köü+d-i dalan toqoo+d  
 4050 bucal=qa=ju Neü^dey\_ caqaan\_ ua-yin teriü in-u hoqtoļ=ju  
 4051 morin-u seül-tür cir=cü od=cuuy.  
 4057 (§130) Tende Jamuqa-yi tende-ce qari=ul=uad Uruu+d-un  
 4058 Jürcedey Uruu+d-ıyan udurid=uad Ma<sup>n</sup>qu+d-un  
 4059 Quyuldar Ma<sup>n</sup>qu+d-ıyan udurid=uad Jamuqa-daca  
 4060 qaqa=ju Cırgis qahan-tur ire=bAy; Qo<sup>n</sup>qota^day  
 4061 Mönlig ecige tende Jamuqa-tur a=ju Mönlig ecige  
 4062 doiban köü+d-lüe-ben Jamuqa-daca qaqa=ju  
 4063 tende Cırgis qahan-tur neyile=n ire=bAy. *Jamuqa-daca*  
 4064 *edü+n irgen ire=bAy kee=n Cırgis qahan*  
 4065<sup>32</sup> ör-tür-ıyen Ulus ire=bAy kee=n bayas=cu Cırgis qahan  
 4066 Höelün\_ üjin Qasar Jürki+n-ü Saca\_ beki Taycu-ta+n  
 4067 boļ=un *Onan-u tün-tür qurimla=ya kee=ldü=jü qurimla=run*  
 4068 Cırgis qahan-a Höelün\_ üjin-e Qasar-a Saca\_ beki-de  
 4069 @ki=ed<sup>408</sup> teriüle=n niken tüsürge tüsür=cüüy.  
 4070 Basa Saca\_ beki-yin ücüügen eke Ebegey-i teriüle=n

---

404: Pelliot emended YCPS Alauud, plural of alaq, to Alaud (i.e. Alau<u>d). Such emendation (not carried over into Liget's text) is unnecessary, since the double-vowel writing here simply represents the vowel length of the plural shape -üd. The placename is literally 'the Mottled Sentinels' (deR4.473).

405: 4041 PP has ciŋgi at the bottom of one column and ŋ at the top of next!

406: Plural translated as such ('Seventy Marshes') in deR4.54, fn.2, and 475.

407: In both C and PP cinusun is bracketed (like an ordinary word) but glossed as a place name. For discussion of this name, the present episode, and the history of the word cino: 'wolf' itself (Script cinua), see deR4.476-79 and sources there cited.

408: See note to line 2357.

4071 niken tūsürge tūsür=küy-in~ tula Qorijin qatun Quurcin  
 4072 qatun jirin Nama<sup>409</sup> ülü teriüle=n Ebegey-i teriüle=n ker  
 4073 tūsür=üyü kee=n bawurci Šikiür-i ašgi=juuy;  
 4074<sup>33</sup> ašgi=gda=ju bawurci Šikiür ügüle=rün Yisügey\_ baadur  
 4075 Nekün\_ taysi qoyar-i ükü=küy-in tula eyin ašgi=gda=quy  
 4076 min-u yaun kee=ed yeke~ dawu-bar uyila=juuy.  
 4083 (§131) Tere qurim bidan-aca Belgütey jasa=ad C'ngis qahan-u  
 4084 aqta bari=ju bayi=n bü=lee; Jürki+n-ece Büri\_ bökö  
 4085 tere qurim jasa=n~ bü=lee. Bidan-u kirüese-ece  
 4086 Qadagi^day güün cilbur qulaq=uqsan-i qulaqay bari=juuy.<sup>410</sup>  
 4087 Büri\_ bökö tere güü-ben hoyimas=cu Belgütey nasu-da  
 4088 abaldu=run baraun qancu-ban mültül=jü nicügün yabu=qu  
 4089 bü=lee. Teyin mültül=ügsen nicügün mürü in-u Büri\_ bökö  
 4090 üldü-er qa<sup>n</sup>qa=s cabci=juu; Belgütey teyin cabci=qda=ju  
 4091 bö=ed yaun-a~ @ba ülü~ bol=qa=n ülü se<sup>n</sup>gere=n cisun  
 4092 cuburi=ul=ju yabu=quy-i C'ngis qahan seüder-tür  
 4093 sau=ju qurim dотора-ca~ üje=jü qar=cu ire=jü ügüle=rün  
 4094 Ker eyin ki=gde=n bü=leey bida ke:=küy-tür Belgütey  
 4095 ügüle=rün Mer üdüüy bü=lee.<sup>411</sup> Min-u~ tula aqa deü-tür  
 4096 mawu~ qari=n<sup>412</sup> bol=ulca=ujay. Bi ülü alja=qu; bi ilaari~ bu=yu;  
 4097 aqa deü-tür sayi ijilid=ülce=n<sup>413</sup> bü=küy-tür aqa bü=tügey;  
 4098 qorum+ud bayi kee=be.  
 4103 (§132) C'ngis qahan Belgütey tedüy idqa=asu ülü~ bol=un modun-u  
 4104 gešii+d ququru tatala=ju itüge+s-ün büleü+d suquci=ju

---

409: This is, of course, the unmarked objective form of bi; the marked form namayi is more common. Bare nama recurs in SH 6213, 6353, 6401, 6418, 8412; for inconclusive discussion of the possible history and morphological structure of the form see pp. 77-80 of my On the Mongolian alternation bi/min-/nama-'I, Mongolian Studies 8.65-81 (1983-87).

410: C barijuuy[.]

411: C bülee[.]

412: YCPS mawuqalın emended to mawuqarin (i.e. mawuqa<▷[r]in, with word division); see Poppe75.155. According to Poppe, qarin is 'on the contrary'. Here and below I tentatively mark it, even in this meaning, as a converb. Note that Pelliot, Ligeti, and Kuribayashi (Kurib1.164) write this — with the consonant altered — as a single word.

413: DeR72.56 had ijilidülcen, which was changed to the back-harmonic form (without comment, but following Pelliot) in de Rachewiltz's Additions and Corrections sheet of 1997. But Lessing's CMO. dictionary has front vowels, following the spelling used in Cyrillic Khalkha. And Haenisch, Ligeti, and Kuribayash all write front vowels, as does the present text. My placement of the first morpheme division follows CMO.

4105 ab=cu<sup>414</sup> ašgila=ldu=ju Jürki+n-i ilaq=cu Qorijin qadun  
 4106 Quurcin qadun jirin-i buli=ju ab=ubAy. Jici mü+d Joki=ldu=ya  
 4107 kee=gde=jü Qorijin qadun Quurcin qadun jirin-i icu=a=ju  
 4108 Joki=ldu=ya~ kee=n elcile=ldü=n bü=küy-tür Kita+d<sup>415</sup> irgen-ü  
 4109 altan qan Tatar-un Megüjin\_ seültü-te+n eye-dür-iyen  
 4110 ülü oro=qda=run Oᅅgᅅn cᅅsaᅅ-a<sup>416</sup> Cceri+üd jasa=ju  
 4111 bu~ saara @bö=ed<sup>417</sup> kee=jü ile:=jüüy. Oᅅgᅅn cᅅsaᅅ<sup>418</sup>  
 4112 Megüjin\_ seültü teriü-te+n Tatar-i Ulja öede aduu  
 4113 ideen sElte<sup>419</sup> türi=jü ayiᅅ=i~ kee=n kelen mede=bAy<sup>420</sup>.  
 4114 Tere kelen mede=ed  
 4119 (§133) Cᅅgis qahan ügüle=rün Erte üdür-ecce Tatar irgen  
 4120 ebüge+s ecige+s-i bara=qsa+d öᅅ-te+n irgen bü=lee;  
 4121 edöe ene qanalqa-tur qamsa=ya bida kee=ed  
 4122 Tooril qan-tur Altan qan-u Oᅅgᅅn cᅅsaᅅ Tatar-un  
 4123 Megüjin\_ seültü teriü-te+n Tatar-i Ulja öede türi=jü  
 4124 ayiᅅ=i' kee=müy. Ebüge+s ecige+s-i bidan-u bara=qsa+d  
 4125 Tatar-i qamsa=ya bida; Tooril qan ecige öter ire=tügey  
 4126 kee=n ene kelen gür=ge=n elci+n ile=bAy. Ene kelen  
 4127 gür=ge=ül=üed Tooril qan ügüle=rün Köün min-u jöb  
 4128 kelele=jü ile:=jüü; qamsa=ya bida kee=ed qutuar  
 4129 üdür cerig-iyen ciul=qa=ju cerig eüs=ge=jü  
 4130 Tooril qan öterle=n igtüne=jü Cᅅgis qahan  
 4131 Tooril qan qoyar Jürki+n-ü Saca\_ beki Taycu teriü-te+n  
 4132 Jürki+n-e kelele=jü ile:=rün Erte üdür-ecce ebüge+s  
 4133 ecige+s-i bidan-u bara=qsa+d Tatar-i edöe ene  
 4134 qanalqa-tur qamsa=ya; qamtu morila=ya kee=jü

---

414: YCPS acu emended to a[b]cu (i.e. a[b]cu).

415: Kitat has a bracket in C and PP, unusual for a name and surely an error.

416: YCPS cing-seng-a One wonders how the Mongols actually pronounced this apparent instance of the dorsovelar nasal between vowels within a word. Other instances are found in lines 4155, 7102, 7441, 8188, Y061, and Y221. Note also 5287.

417: See note to 3081.

418: cingsang here and in the prior line has no gloss or connector.

419: PP salte, but C sate with a space where the l should have been written.

420: C medebAy[.] Note that Cleaves (CL82.62) takes the words Kitad irgenü...ayiᅅi as a pair of quoted sentences, with Ceriüd jäsaju bu saara böed a quoted sentence within the first of these. At any rate, one must apparently assume that the implied subject of medebAy is Chinggis Qan (or 'we?').

4135 ile:=bAy. Jürki+n-e ire=gde=küy-ece jirqoan üdü+d  
 4136 gülice=jü yada=ju C'ngis qahan Tooril qan qoyar  
 4137 qamtu cerig eüs=cü Ulja huruu O'ngi'ñ c'nsa'n-lua  
 4138 qamsa=n ayisu=quy-tur Ulja-yin Qusu-tu\_ šitüen Nara-tu  
 4139 šitüen-e<sup>421</sup> Tatar-un Megüjin teriü-te+n Tatar tende  
 4140 qorqa bari=juuy<sup>422</sup>. C'ngis qahan Tooril qan qoyar  
 4141 teyin qorqala=qsa+d-i Megüjin\_ seültü-yi qorqan-aca  
 4142 in-u bari=ju Megüjin\_ seültü-yi tende ala=ju  
 4143 mö'ngün ölegey tana-tu köñjile in-u C'ngis qahan tende  
 4144 ab=ulaay.  
 4151 (§134) *Megüjin\_ seültü-yi ala=BA* kee=n C'ngis qahan Tooril qan  
 4152 qoyar<sup>423</sup> O'ngi'ñ<sup>424</sup> c'nsa'n-un<sup>425</sup> esergü<sup>426</sup> od=bá<sup>427</sup>. O'ngi'ñ c'nsa'n *Megüjin\_ seültü-yi ala=juuy* kee=n  
 4153 mede=ed maši bayas=cu C'ngis qahan-a<sup>428</sup> jaud quri<sup>429</sup> nere  
 4154 ög=be; Gereyi+d-ün Tooril-a o'n~ nere tende ög=be;  
 4155 O'n\_ qan nere O'ngi'ñ\_ c'nsa'n-un<sup>430</sup> nereyid=ügse-er<sup>431</sup> tende-ce bol=BA<sup>432</sup>.  
 4156 O'ngi'ñ c'nsa'n ügüle=rün *Megüjin\_ seültü-yi qamsa=ju*

---

421: YCPS Naratu | šitüene. One may guess that some text prior to the Urtext had Naratu šitüene within one column, as in 4169; the Urtext (and following it, C) split the name across successive lines (4138-9), leaving the name-gloss next to Naratu. PP or its immediate ancestor misunderstood this division, and wrote both parts of the name in a single line, with a supranormal space between.

422: C barijuuy[.]

423: YCPS qoyar O'ngi'ñ c'nsa'n Megüjin emended to qoyar O'ngi'ñ c'nsa'nun esergü odbá O'ngi'ñ c'nsa'n Megüjin (i.e. qoyar [O'ngi'ñ c'nsa'nun esergü odbá] O'ngi'ñ c'nsa'n Megüjin). These words were added from the Altan Tobchi by de Rachewiltz (deR4.492) — because "Without these words the two subjects of the sentence are left without the essential predicate". (I here use the symbol á in the verb ending so that computer searching will not confuse this ending with any of those written with Chinese characters.) Cf. Vietze92.28, lines 1209-10.

424: [...O'ngi'ñ...]; see first note to line 4152.

425: YCPS [...c'nsa'n-un...]; see first note to line 4152, and note to 4110.

426: YCPS [...esergü...] see first note to line 4152.

427: YCPS [...odbá]; see first note to line 4152.

428: PP nu rather than na here; so qoyinu in 4192.

429: For this title see deR4.492-94.

430: See note to line 4110.

431: The g (present in PP) is missing from C.

432: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

4157 *ala=qsan tan-u altan\_ qan-a maši~ yeke tusa ki=bAy ta.*  
 4158 Ene tusa-yi tan-u altan<sup>433</sup> \_ qan-a öci=sü bi.  
 4159 C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan-a eün-ece yeke nere neme=küy-i  
 4160~ jew~ taw~ nere ög=gü-yi altan\_ qan mede=tügey kee=be.<sup>434</sup>  
 4161 O<sup>n</sup>gi<sup>n</sup> c<sup>n</sup>sa<sup>n</sup> tende-ce tedüy bayas=cu icu=bAy.  
 4162 C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan O<sup>n</sup> \_ qan qoyar tende Tatar-i dauli=ju  
 4163 qubiya=ldu=ju ab=ulca=ju geyi+d-tür-iyen<sup>435</sup> qari=ju  
 4164 bawu=bAy.  
 4169 (§135) Tatar-un qorqala=qsan Nara-tu\_ šitüen-e bawu=qsan  
 4170 nuntuq-tur tala=quy-tur niken ücügen köüken-i ge:=gsen-ï<sup>436</sup>  
 4171 bidan-u ceri+üd nuntuq-aca ol=juuy. Altan eemeg  
 4172 dörebci-tü dasi torqan buluqa-ar dotorla=qsan  
 4173 heligebci-tü<sup>437</sup> ücüügen köüken-i abcira=ju<sup>438</sup> C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan  
 4174 Höelün eke-de *Sawqa*~ kee=n ög=bAy. Höelün eke  
 4175 ügüle=rün Sayin güün-ü köün a=juu~ @je. Hujaur sayi-tu  
 4176 güün-ü uruq~ bu=yu~ @je.<sup>439</sup> Tabun köü+d-iyen deü jirqoduar  
 4177 köün bol=qa=n Šikiken\_ quduqu kee=n nereyid=cü  
 4178 eke asara=BA.  
 4181 (§136) C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan-u auruq Haril-tu naur-a bü=leey.  
 4182 Auru+ud-tur qocor=uqsan-i Jürki+n tabin  
 4183 haran-u qubcan<sup>440</sup> tonu=juuy. Harban haran-i  
 4184 ala=juuy. *Jürki+n-e teyin ki=gde=be kee=n*  
 4185 bidan-u auru+ud-tur qocor=uqsa+d C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan-a  
 4186 jaa=basu ene kelen sonos=uad C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan  
 4187 maši kil<sup>n</sup>la=ju ügüle=rün *Jürki+n-e ker eyin*

---

433: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

434: C keebe[.]

435: YCPS geyi-tür-iyen emended to geyid-tür-iyen (i.e. geyi[d]-tür-iyen). The emendation was made tacitly by Pelliot (without the usual footnote), overtly by Ligeti. (Haenisch earlier suggested emending rather to gertür.)

436: The g (present in PP) is missing from C.

437: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

438: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

439: C je[.]

440: YCPS qucan emended (by Haenisch and Pelliot) to qubcan (i.e. qu[b]can).

4188 *ki=gde=n bü=leey*<sup>441</sup>. Bida *Onan-u tün-tür*  
 4189<sup>34</sup> *qurimla=quy-tur bawurci Šikiür-i mü+d~ @gü ašgi=bAy.*  
 4190 *Belgütey-in mürü mü+d~ @gü cabci=bAy*<sup>442</sup>. Joki=*ldu=ya'*  
 4191 *kee=gde=jü Qorijin qadun Quurcin jirin-i icu=a=ju*  
 4192 *ög=bAy bida; teün-ü qoyina*<sup>443</sup> Erten-*ü öš-te+n*  
 4193 *kiš-te+n*<sup>444</sup> *ebüge+s ecige+s-i bidan-u bara=qsa+d*  
 4194 *Tatar-i qamsa=n morila=ya' kee=n Jürki+n-i jirqoan*  
 4195 *üdü+d gülice=jü ese~ @gü ire=gde=BA; edöe basa*  
 4196 *dayisun-tur šiqan=n dayisun mü+d~ @gü bol=uyi kee=ed*  
 4197 *Cirgis qahan Jürki+n-tür morila=bAy. Jürki+n-i*  
 4198 *Kelüren-ü Ködöe\_ aral-un Doloan\_ bolda+ud-ta*  
 4199 *bü=küy-tür irgen in-u dawuli=bAy. Saca\_ beki*  
 4200 *Taycu qoyar cöen be:+s-iyen*<sup>445</sup> *dutaa=bAy.*  
 4201 Qoyina-*ca an-u neke=jü Tele:-tü amasar-a güyice=jü*  
 4202 *Saca\_ beki Taycu qoyar-i bari=bAy. Bari=ju*  
 4203 *Cirgis qahan Saca Taycu qoyar-a ügüle=rün Erte*  
 4204 *üdüür bida yau kee=ldü=leey kee=gde=jü*  
 4205 *Saca Taycu qoyar ügüle=rün Ügüle=gseu üge-dür-iyen*  
 4206 *ba ese güre=bAy; üge+s-tür man-u güre=ge*  
 4207 *kee=ed üge+s-iyen medere=jü tüši=jü*<sup>446</sup> *ög=bAy;*  
 4208 *üge+s-i an-u medere=ül=jü üge+s-tür an-u güre=ge=n*  
 4209 *bütee=jü*<sup>447</sup> *mün tende~ ge=bAy.*  
 4216 (§137) *Saca Taycu qoyar-i büte=ed qari=ju ire=jü*  
 4217 *Jürki+n-ü irge gödöl=ge=küy-tür Jalayir-un Telege-tü*

---

441: The spacing here and in 4192 implies that one should take the next word, bida, as starting a new sentence rather than as subject of the verb which precedes it. (Pelliot punctuates after bida rather than before, which may be preferable here.)

442: C has cacibAy, PP cagcibAy; emended to ca[b]cibAy (H62txt.29, 133; tacitly corrected by Pelliot 37).

443: PP qoyinu for qoyina.

444: YCPS kigten emended (by Pelliot) to kišten (i.e. ki<g>[š]ten).

445: YCPS besiyen, interpreted (by Ligeti) as be:siyen; Pelliot had suggested emending to the near-equivalent beyesiyen (i.e. be[ye]siyen).

446: According to the YCPS gloss this verb means 'to stretch out one's neck'.

447: This verb, historically at least, is a causative of a bütü- 'be fulfilled' which occurs in hPagspa, CMo., and the modern language. Cf. bütü- in 8455 below.

4218 bayan-u<sup>448</sup> köün Güün\_ ua Cilaun\_ qayici Jebke<sup>449</sup>  
 4219 qurban te+de Jürki+n-tür a=juuy; Güün\_ ua Muqali  
 4220 Buqa qoyar köü+d-iyer-iyen aulja=ju ügüle=rün  
 4221 {Bosoqa-yin~ cin-u {**bool** bol=tuqay; {**bosoqa-daca** cin-u  
 4222 **bulji**=asu {**borbi** in-u hoqtol.<sup>450</sup> {Eüten-ü cin-u  
 4223 {emcü bool bol=tuqay; {**eüten-ecce** cin-u **heyil**=üesü<sup>451</sup>  
 4224 {elige+d an-u edke=jü ge:=dkün } kee=jü~ ög=bAy.<sup>452</sup>  
 4225 Cilaun\_ qayici Tü<sup>re</sup>ge Qaşı qoyar köü+d-iyen basa  
 4226 Cır<sup>gis</sup> qahan-tur aulja=ju ügüle=rün {<sup>453</sup> Altan  
 4227 bosoqa cin-u saki=ju {**a**=tuqay'~ kee=n ög=be<sup>454</sup>  
 4228 bi,<sup>455</sup> {**altan bosoqa-daca** cin-u {**a**<sup>n</sup>gi-da od=uasu  
 4229 {ami in-u tasul=ju ge:=dkün.<sup>456</sup> {Örgen eüten  
 4230 ergü=jü {**ög**=tügey' kee=n ög=be bi<sup>457</sup>; {**örgen**  
 4231<sup>35</sup> eüten-ecce cin-u {**öere** od=uasu {**öre** in-u mideri=jü  
 4232 ge:=dkün } kee=be. Jebke-yi Qasar-a ög=be.  
 4233 Jebke Jürki+n-ü nuntuq-aca Boroul nere-tü ücü:gen  
 4234 köüken-i abcira=ju Höelün eke-de aulja=n<sup>458</sup>  
 4235 ög=be.  
 4241 (§138) Höelün eke Merki+d-ün<sup>459</sup> nuntuq-aca ol=da=qsan Gücü  
 4242 nere-tü köüken-i Tayiciu+d-un dотора Besü+d-ün  
 4243 nuntuq-aca ol=da=qsan Kökücü nere-tü köüken-i

---

448: YCPS glosses bayan as a usual word, 'wealthy', not as (part of) a name.

449: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

450: C hoqtol[.]

451: Morpheme division based on CMo.

452: C ögby[.]

453: Kozin separates these lines into two 5-line stanzas; CL82.66 apparently excludes keen ögbe bi from the poetry, yielding a similar result.

454: C ögbe<.>

455: C bi[:]

456: C gedkün[.]

457: C bi[.]

458: YCPS aulcan emended to auljan (i.e. aul<c>[j]an); emendation implied in H62dict.10.

459: YCPS Merd-ün in C, but Merkid-ün in P (H62txt.132).



4244 Tatar-un nuntuq-aca ol=da=qsan Şigiken\_ qutuqu nere-tü  
 4245 köüken-i Jürki+n-ü nuntuq-aca ol=da=qsan Boroul  
 4246 nere-tü köüken-i e+de dörben-i ger dotora  
 4247 teje=rün Höelün eke köü+d-te-en {Üdür üje=gü-yin  
 4248 *nidün {söni sonos=qu-yin cikin }ken-e bol=qa=quy@u: kee=n*  
 4249 ger~ dotora teje=bAy.  
 4252 (§139) E+de Jürki+n irgen-ü yosun Jürki+n bol=urun Qabul  
 4253 qan-u doloan köü+d-ün a<sup>n</sup>qa~ aqa Ökin\_ barqaq<sup>460</sup>  
 4254 bü=lee; köün~ in-u Sorqatu\_ jürki bü=lee. Jürki+n  
 4255 bol=urun<sup>461</sup> *Qabul qan-u köü+d-ün aqa~ kee=jü irgen-ü-en*  
 4256 dotora-ca ilqa=ju {<sup>462</sup>helige-tür sölsü-tü {heregey-tür  
 4257 honci-ta+n {auşgi düüre<sup>n</sup> jirüge-tü {aman~ düüre<sup>n</sup>  
 4258 aur-ta+n {ere tutum erdem+üd-te+n {bökö+s gücü-te+n-i  
 4259 } ilqa=ju ög=cü<sup>463</sup> aur-ta+n sölsü-tE+n omoq-ta+n  
 4260 jörkimes<sup>464</sup> tula Jürki+n kee=gde=gü yosun teyimü.  
 4261 Teyimü+n omoq-ta+n irgen-i C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan dorayita=ul=ju  
 4262 Jürki+n oboq-tu-yi ülid=ke=bAy; irgen-i ulus-i  
 4263 in-u C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan öer-ün emcü irgen bol=qa=bAy.  
 4268 (§140) C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan niken üdür Büri\_ bökö Belgütey qoyar-i  
 4269 abaldu=ul=uya kee=be. Büri\_ bökö Jürki+n-tür  
 4270 bü=lee. Urida<sup>465</sup> Büri\_ bökö Belgütey-i öröele qar-iyar  
 4271 bari=ju öröele köl-iyer töyid=cü una=qa=ju ülü  
 4272 gödöl=ge=n daru=qu~ bü=lee; Büri\_ bökö ulus-un~ bökö. Tende  
 4273 Belgütey Büri\_ bökö qoyar-i abaldu=ul=bAy; Büri\_ bökö  
 4274 ülü ilaq=da=qu güün una=ju ög=be. Belgütey  
 4275 daru=n yada=n mürüde=jü saari deere qar=cu Belgütey

---

460: YCPS baraqaq emended to barqaq (i.e. bar<a>qaq), which occurs elsewhere.

461: De Rachewiltz (2004.509) thinks the words Jürkin bolurun (absent from this point in the Altan Tobchi) "are almost certainly a duplication, due to a copyist's error, of the same words...appearing earlier in the passage".

462: Is it not clear how the bökös phrase is to be handled in the poetry; I tentatively follow Kozin here..

463: Ligeti includes ilqaju ögcü as part of the last poetic line.

464: This word (quite possibly a plural) is unglossed here and unknown elsewhere in Mongolian; see deR4.510-11 for the possibilities. Altan Tobchi has yorgimay here (Vietze.1992.29, line 1270).

465: The word urida here is my own addition (i.e. [urida]); it isn't present in the YCPS but does occur in the Altan Tobchi (Vietze92.29 line 1275) and Altan Tobchi Nova (Harvard-Yenching Institute 1952, p. 86), in place of the second occurrence of Büri\_ bökö here. Some temporal word seems necessary for the sense of this passage: deR4.61 supplies "[Formerly]" here.

4276 gincas<sup>466</sup>~ ki=jü C'ngis qahan-i üje=gü-lüe qahan  
 4277 ilügey-iyen jau=BA; Belgütey uqa=n<sup>467</sup> od=cu deere  
 4278 in-u aqdala=ju qoyar jaqa+s~ in-u solbi=n megejile=n  
 4279 tata=ju niruu in-u ebüdügle=jü ququl=ju ile:=be<sup>468</sup>.  
 4280 Büri\_ bökö niruu-ban ququra=ju ügüle=rün *Belgütey-e*  
 4281 *ülü ilaq=da=qu bü=lee bi. Qahan-aca ayu=ju*  
 4282 *arqada=n una=qu ariya=qu bol=un amin-dur-iyen*  
 4283 *gür=te=bAy bi kee=ed ükü=jü ile:=be.*  
 4284 Belgütey niruu in-u ququru tata=ad cir=cü  
 4285 oorki=jü yorci=BA. Qabul qan-u doloan köü+d-ün  
 4286 aqa Ökin\_ barqaq bü=lee; udaadu Bartan\_ baatur  
 4287 bü=lee; köün in-u Yisügey\_ baatur bü=lee; teün-ü  
 4288 udaadu Qutuqtu\_ mö<sup>n</sup>ler bü=lee; köün~ in-u Büri  
 4289 bü=lee. Bari=ldu=a<sup>469</sup> Bartan\_ baatur-un köün-ece  
 4290 alus Barqaq-un omoq-ta+n köü+d-tür nököce=kü+n  
 4291 bo=un Büri\_ bökö ulus-un~ bökö; Belgütey-e niruu-ban  
 4292 ququl=da=ju ükü=be.  
 4300 (§141)<sup>470</sup> Teün-ü qoyina takiya jil Qadagi+n Salji+ud  
 4301 qamtud=cu Qadagin-u Baqu\_ corogi teriü-te+n Qadagi+n  
 4302 Salji+ud-un Cirgiday\_ baatur teriü-te+n Dörben  
 4303<sup>36</sup> Tatar-tur joki=ldu=ju Dörben-ü Qajium\_ beki teriü-te+n  
 4304 Tatar-un Alci Tatar-un Jalin\_ buqa teriü-te+n Ikire+s-ün  
 4305 Tüge\_ maqa teriü-te+n O<sup>n</sup>gira+d-un Terge Emel<sup>471</sup>

---

466: Just what this odd YCPS form is remains a puzzle; it looks like an -s converb of some otherwise unknown verb. Cleaves (C182.67) translates gincas ki=jü 'looked back'; deR4.62 'glanced backwards'.

467: YCPS uqa emended to uqan (i.e. uqa[n]). Haenisch (H62txt.31, 133) emended uqa odcu to uqa olcu (i.e. uqa o<d>[l]cu), and this seems to be what Cleaves translated as 'getting understanding'. The emendation rather to uqan was made in de Rachewiltz's Addenda et Corrigenda I. Presumably in uqa[n] odcu the second verb is to taken as an auxiliary, and the sequence means something like 'understanding at once'. (The Altan Tobchi is no help; it has changed to unan odqui deere [Vietze92.29, line 1280), 'as he fell[?]'.)

468: C ilebe[.]

469: See deR4.514 for two competing interpretations of this form, which de Rachewiltz calls nomen imperfecti of barildu- 'wrestle'. H62txt.138 emended the form to barildua[d].

470: With line 4300, PP starts Chapter 5 of the 15-chüan version of the YCPS.

471: Emended from Dergeg Emel (i.e. <D>[T]erge<g> Emel), which must be taken as a single name, not two (deR4.517 and sources there).

- 4306 Alquy-ta+n Qorola+s-un Coyoq\_ caqaan<sup>472</sup> teriü-te+n  
 4307 Nayman-aca Gücüü+d Nayman-u Buyıruq\_ qan Merki+d-ün  
 4308 Toqtoa\_ beki-yin köün Qutu Oyira+d-un Quduqa\_ beki  
 4309 Tayiciu+d-un Tarqutay\_ kiriltuq Qodun\_ örcen  
 4310 Aucu\_ baatur-ta+n Tayiciu+d edü+n qari+n Alquy\_  
 4311 bula-a<sup>473</sup> ciul=ju *Jajira^day Jamuqa-yi qa ergü=ye*  
 4312 kee=n ajırqa geün keü=s<sup>474</sup> cabcila=ldu=ju  
 4313 andaqa=ldu=ju tende-ce Ergüne müren huruu newü=jü  
 4314 Kan müren Ergüne-de cidqu=qu šinaa-yin au nuu-da<sup>475</sup>  
 4315 Jamuqa-yi tende gür~ qa ergü=bAy; gür~ qa  
 4316<sup>37</sup> ergü=ed *Cıngis qahan On\_ qan qoyar-tur morila=ya*  
 4317 kee=ldü=bAy; *Morila=ya* kee=ldü=gšen-i Qorola+s-un  
 4318 Qoriday Cıngis qahan-i Gürelgü-de bü=küy-tür  
 4319 ene kele gür=ge=jü ile:=jüü. *Ene~ kele*  
 4320 ire=ül=üed Cıngis qahan On\_ qan-tur ene~ kele  
 4321 gür=ge=jü ile:=esü On qan kele gür=ge=ül=üed cerig  
 4322 eüs=cü ötürle=n Cıngis qahan-tur On\_ qan gür=cü  
 4323 ire=bAy.  
 4328 (§142) On\_ qan-i ire=ül=üed Cıngis qahan On\_ qan qoyar  
 4329 qamtud=cu *Jamuqa-yin esergü in-u morila=ya*  
 4330 kee=ldü=jü Kelüren müren huruu morila=run  
 4331 Cıngis qahan Altan Qucar Darıtay qurban-i ma<sup>n</sup>lay  
 4332 yabu=ul=BA; On\_ qan Sen<sup>n</sup>güm Jaqa\_ gambu Bilge\_ beki qurban-i  
 4333 ma<sup>n</sup>lay yabu=ul=bAy. *E+de ma<sup>n</sup>la+n-aca uruqşı basa*  
 4334 qaraul ile:=rün Enegen<sup>476</sup> Güyle-tü-de niken saurin

---

472: C has two separate name glosses for Coyoq Caqaan; PP (correctly) a single gloss and sideline. See deR4.517.

473: Both C and PP have alqui glossed as a placename and bulaa bracketed and glossed as an ending. In C there's a column break between the two forms; PP has them in a single column with a major space between. If Alquy bulaq is 'Sarsparilla Spring' (deR4.62) then the bulaa here must be a dative-locative, equivalent to the bulaq-a of 4025.

474: Morpheme division hypothetical; cf. keürü in 4499, and CMo. keüre- 'be torn', presumably a middle verb (PoppeGWM 64) derived from \*keü-.

475: DeR4.520-21 takes this to be 'large promontory', from au + nuu, with two words (as Pelliot p. 39 and CL82.68) rather than one.

476: Capitalization added. The next word, Güiletü, is properly marked as a name in C and PP (with the proper gloss in both, and a heavy sideline in PP), but enegen is unglossed in both, has no connector in PP and a bracket in C. Probably the two units form a single place name; this is glossed by de Rachewiltz (deR4.523, with a query) as 'having a Single Apricot [Tree]!'

- 4335 qaraul talbi=bAy; teün-ü cinana Cegcer-e niken  
 4336 saurin qaraul talbi=ul=bAy. Teuin-ü cinana  
 4337 Ciqurqu-da niken saurin qaraul talbi=ul=bAy.  
 4338 Bidan-u ma<sup>n</sup>la+n Altan Qucar Se<sup>n</sup>güm-tE+n Udkiya  
 4339 gür=cü Bawu=ya kee=ldü=n bü=küy-tür Ciqurqu-da  
 4340 talbi=qsan qaraul-aca güün haul=ju ire=jü Dayin ayış=i  
 4341 kee=n kele gür=ge=n ire=be. Tere kele ire=ed  
 4342 ülü~ bawu=n dayin-u esergü Kele ab=uya kee=n yabu=ju  
 4343 gür=ülce=jü kele ab=cu<sup>477</sup> Ke+d<sup>478</sup>~ bu=y~ kee=n asaq=uasu  
 4344 Jamuqa-yin ma<sup>n</sup>la+n — Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-aca Aucu\_ baatur Nayman-u  
 4345 Buyuruq<sup>479</sup>\_ qan Merki+d-ün Toqtoa\_ beki-yin köün Qutu  
 4346 Oyira+d-un Quduqa\_ beki e+de dörben — Jamuqa-yin  
 4347 ma<sup>n</sup>la+n yabu=juuy.<sup>480</sup> Bidan-u ma<sup>n</sup>la+n te+den-tür u<sup>n</sup>šila=ldu=ju<sup>481</sup>  
 4348 u<sup>n</sup>ši=ju Jilda bol=da=ju manaqar qadqu=ldu=ya  
 4349 kee=jü icu=ju qol-tur neyile=n qono=BA.  
 4354 (§143) Manaqarši yabu=ul=ju gür=ülce=jü Köyiten bayi=ldu=ju<sup>482</sup>  
 4355 dorogši deegši iquri=qa=ldu=n jibšier=ülce=n bü=küy-tür  
 4356 mü+d Buyuruq qan Quduqa qoyar — jada mede=kü+n a=juuy —  
 4357 jadala=qu+n bof=un jada hurba=ju mü+d~ an-u deere  
 4358 jada bof=juuy; mü+d~ yabu=n yada=ju nura+s-tur  
 4359<sup>38</sup> qulad=uad<sup>483</sup> Te<sup>n</sup>geri-de ese taala=qda=BA bida kee=ldü=ed  
 4360 butara=juuy.  
 4364 (§144) Nayman-u Buyuruq\_ qan Altay-in ebür Uluq\_ taq jori=n  
 4365 qaqaqa=n ködöl=jüüy; Merki+d-ün Toqtoa-yin köün Qutu  
 4366 Sele<sup>n</sup>ge jori=n ködöl=jüüy; Oyira+d-un Quduqa\_ beki  
 4367 hoy temece=n<sup>484</sup> Šisgis jori=n ködöl=jüüy; Tayiciu+d-un

---

477: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

478: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

479: The q (present in PP) is missing from C.

480: yabujuuy[.]

481: YCPS uñšila=du=ju emended (H62txt.32 vs. 112, Kurib1.188, and tacitly by Pelliot and Ligeti) to uñšila=ldu=ju (i.e. uñšila=[l]du=ju). One wonders whether the -la- morpheme in such forms is a derivational or an inflectional suffix.

482: The l (present in PP) is missing from C.

483: A qulad-cu in 7431 shows that this is a consonant-stem verb.

484: YCPS demecen; emendation mine (JCS); this is the sole occurrence of the d-initial form.

4368 Aucu baatur Onan jori=n ködöl=jüüy. Jamuqa  
 4369 öer-iyen qa ergü=gse+d irgen-i dawulı=ad  
 4370 Ergüne huruu Jamuqa qari=n ködöl=jüüy; an-i  
 4371 teyin butara=qda=ju On\_ qan Ergüne huruu Jamuqa-yi  
 4372 neke=BA. Cıngis qahan Onan jüg Tayiciu+d-un  
 4373 Aucu baatur-i neke=BA; Aucu baatur ulus-tur-ıyan  
 4374 gür=üed ulus-ıyan dürbe=ül=ün ködöl=ge=ed  
 4375 Aucu baatur Qodun\_ örcen Tayiciu+d Onan-u<sup>485</sup>  
 4376 cinaji eteed Hüleüd tura+s-tur<sup>486</sup> ceri+üd-ıyen  
 4377 jasa=ju Qadqu=ldu=ya kee=n jasa=ju bayı=juuy<sup>487</sup>.  
 4378 Cıngis qahan gür=üed Tayijiu+d-lua<sup>488</sup> qadqu=ldu=BA.<sup>489</sup>  
 4379 Maši eke=rün~ eke=rün qadqu=ldu=ju jilda bol=da=ju<sup>490</sup> mün  
 4380 qadqu=ldu=qsan qajar-a šitü=ldü=jü qono=BA. Ulus @ba  
 4381 dürbe=jü ayis=urun mün~ @gü tende ceri+üd-lüe-ben qamtu  
 4382 güreele=jü qono=ldu=BA.  
 4387 (§145) Cıngis qahan tere qadqulduan-tur sujiyasu-ban  
 4388<sup>39</sup> šilür=te=jü cisun törıd=ge=esü ülü~ bol=un amduri=qda=run  
 4389 naran šıngge=ül=ün mün tende šitü=ldü=jü bawu=ju bögle=gse  
 4390 cisun-i Jelme šimin~ šimin ama-an cısu=da=ju Jelme  
 4391 busu güün ülü itege=n saki=ldu=ju sau=ju söni düli  
 4392 bol=tala bögle=gse cisun-i ama-ar düüre<sup>n</sup> jalkı=ad  
 4393 asqa=ad söni~ düli nögcı=esü Cıngis qahan dotora-an  
 4394 sergü=jü ügüle=rün Cisun haq=cu bara=BA. Undaas=umu

---

485: Capitalization added: PP and C have a bracket for onanu, and 'river' (rather than 'river name') as a gloss.

486: For the severe textual and semantic problems here see deR4.527-28. The first two words, separately bracketed in the text, (PP hüleüd turastan where C has hüleüd tulastan), were apparently intended as what de Rachewiltz (following Pelliot) writes as "Ülengüt Turas-tur 'at Ülengüt Turas'". But the actual spelling of the first word here might have represented a Uighur script form with intervocalic gamma (and no nasal); hence a simpler emendation Hüleüd turast<an>[ur]. (Cleaves translated the unemended form literally as 'their remaining soldiers having square shields'.)

487: YCPS bayjuuy emended to bayjiuuy (i.e. bay[i]juuy; emendation mine (JCS). This is the only case in the SH where we have this shortened form of the root, written here with the 18-stroke bai-character. Cf. the sole instance of daysun in X307, vs. 17 SH instances of the full form dayisun; and note to line 1010 above.

488: PP Tayjidlua, C Tayjilua (with blank space for the missing d), emended (as H62txt.113, et al.) to Tayjiudlua (i.e. Tayji[u]dlua).

489: C qadqulduBA[.]

490: The ı (present in PP) is missing from C.

4395 *bi kee=be. Tende-ce Jelme maqalay qudusun*  
 4396 *deel~ qubcasun-ıyan bügüde-yi ta=ju qaqa*  
 4397<sup>40</sup> *dotoaji-tu curama~ nicügün ſitü=ldü=jü bayı=qu+n dayin dotora-un*  
 4398 *güyi=jü cinana güre:le=gsen irgen-ü tergen-tür*  
 4399 *an-u unu=ju esü+üd erijü yada=ju — dürbe=rün*  
 4400 *geü+d-ıyen ülü saa=n talbi=qsa+d a=juu — esüg~ ol=un*  
 4401 *yada=ju niken yeke bürıe-tey taraq tergen-ece*  
 4402 *in-u ab=uad ergü=jü ire=be. Jaura od=urun*  
 4403 *@ba ire=rün @ba güün-e ese üje=gde=BA; te<sup>n</sup>geri @gü*  
 4404 *ihee=BA @je<sup>491</sup>. Taraq bürıe-tü-yi abcıra=:d<sup>492</sup> mün Jelme*  
 4405 *öesün @gü usun eri=jü abcıra=ju taraq jüre=jü*  
 4406 *qaan-a u:=u=BA. Qurban-ta amu=ju u:=ju qahan*  
 4407<sup>41</sup> *ügüle=rün Dotorıa nidün min-u geyi=be kee=ed*  
 4408 *ö<sup>n</sup>deyi=jü sau=tala üdür geyi=jü gege:n bol=ju*  
 4409 *üje=esü tere sau=qsan horcin Jelme-yin ſimi=n*  
 4410 *ſimi=n bögle=gsen cisun asqa=qsan horcin namurqan*  
 4411 *bol=juu. Cırgis qahan üje=jü ügüle=rün Ene yaun*  
 4412 *bol=umu; qolo<sup>493</sup> asqa=asu yambar a=juu kee=be.*  
 4413 *Tende-ce Jelme ügüle=rün Cima-yi amduri=qda=run qolo*  
 4414 *od=uası cıma-daca aljiya=qıy-aca ayu=ju yaara=ju*  
 4415 *jalki=qu-yi jalki=ad asqa=qu-yi asqa=ad<sup>494</sup> amduri=ju*  
 4416 *keeli-tür min-u @teki kedüy oro=BA kee=be.<sup>495</sup>*  
 4417 *Cırgis qahan basa ügüle=rün Nama-yi eyimü bol=ju*  
 4418 *gebte=n<sup>496</sup> böe=tele nicügün yeki=n güyi=jü oro=BA ci;*  
 4419 *barı=qda=asu nama-yi eyimü-yi<sup>497</sup> ülü@ü: jia=qu bü=lee*  
 4420 *ci kee=be. Jelme ügüle=rün Min-u sedkil*

---

491: C je[.]

492: DeR72.64 writes simply abcirat here, and translates as a perfective converb, 'having brought' (deR4.60). Hence it seems to me (JCS) that the last vowel must have been a long one; i.e., abcıra[:]d (But in 6173 and 7099 the final vowel in abrırad is short before a different ending; see note to 1133 above).

493: PP has qobÄ (with the 25-stroke character) where C has qolo.

494: The d (present in PP) is missing in C.

495: C keebe[.]

496: Equivalent to kebte-; this g-initial writing for the root occurs six times in the SH.

497: The accusative ending here is puzzling. A still more baffling sequence with ülü-ü is found in Y060.

4421 *nicügün od=urun ker~ @ber bari=qda=asu `Bi dan-tur<sup>498</sup>*  
 4422 *oro=qu dura-tu bü=lee; uqa=ju bari=ju "Ala=ya"~ kee=n*  
 4423 *qubcasun<sup>499</sup> min-u bügüde-yi tal=ju qaqca emüdü*  
 4424 *tal=ua üdüüy-e mültü=s alda=ul=ju dan-tur<sup>500</sup> edüy*  
 4425 *idüre=jü ire=be bi' kee=gü bü=lee<sup>501</sup>. Nama-yi*  
 4426 *ünen bol=qd=ju qubcasun na-da ög=cü<sup>502</sup> asara=qu bü=lee;*  
 4427 *bi morin unu=ad üje=tele edüy jaura ülü@ü: ire=gü*  
 4428 *bü=lee<sup>503</sup>; bi teyin sedki=jü `Qaan-u ha<sup>n</sup>qa=qsan sedkil*  
 4429 *erüs=sügey' kee=n nidün qara eyin sedki=jü*  
 4430 *od=ulua bi kee=be. C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan ügüle=rün*  
 4431 *Edöe yaun kee=gü; erte üdür qurban Merki+d*  
 4432 *ire=jü Burqan-i qurban-da quci=ul=quy-tur amin min-u*  
 4433 *niken-te ab=cu<sup>504</sup> qar=ulua ci<sup>505</sup>; edöe basa haq=cu*  
 4434 *büküy cisun-i ama-ar šimi=jü<sup>506</sup> amin min-u se<sup>n</sup>tel=be*  
 4435 *ci. Basa ha<sup>n</sup>qa=ju amduri=n<sup>507</sup> bü=küy-tür amin-ıyan*  
 4436 *öre=jü dayisun güün-tür nidün qara oro=ju*  
 4437 *unda:n qa<sup>n</sup>qa=ju amin min-u oro=ul=BA ci; e+de qurban*  
 4438 *tusa+s-i cin-u sedkil datora min-u a=tuqay kee=n*  
 4439 *jarliq bol=BA.*  
 4450 (§146) *Üdür<sup>508</sup>~ geyi=n bara=asu šitü=ldü=jü qono=qsa+d ceri+üd*

---

498: This form, here and in 4424, should presumably be emended to tan-tur – a form not otherwise occurring in the YCPS.

499: The b (present in PP) is missing from C, but space was left for it.

500: See note to 4421.

501: Or possibly interpret as irebe' bi keegü bülee, as seeming implied by the spacing between words.

502: YCPS ögjü; emendation mine (JCS).

503: H62txt.33 for some reason punctuated after the bi rather than before, but changed this on p. 138.

504: The b (present in PP) is missing from C.

505: In punctuating after the ci here I follow H62txt.33, though the spacing of characters in C and PP very strongly implies that the pronoun goes with what follows. Pelliot's edition has no punctuation either before or after this ci; KuribI.198 punctuates after the pronoun (as in the following sentence).

506: YCPS šiminjü interpreted (by Ligeti) as šimijü (i.e. šimi<n>jü; cf. Most99.251, fn.61).

507: The first character in YCPS amturin was read as yan by H62txt.33 and dict.169. Pelliot (p. 41) and others took the verb to be amturi-, though that verb three times appears in the SH with d rather than t.

508: For lines 4450-4499, edition C reproduces leaves from the block-print edition dating from the early 15th century ("F").

4451 söni bö=ed budara=juuy; güreele=gse+d irgen Kü<sup>n</sup>ke=n  
 4452 ülü cida=qu+n kee=n güreele=gse+d qajar-aca ese  
 4453 gödöl=jüüy. Dürbe=gse+d ulus-i icu=qa=ya kee=n  
 4454 C'ngis qahan qono=qsan qajar-aca morila=ju dürbe=kü+n  
 4455 irgen-i icu=a=n<sup>509</sup> yabu=quy-tur dabaan deere niken  
 4456 hulaan deel-tü eme~ güün Temüjin @je kee=n yeke  
 4457 dawu-ar qayila=n uyila=n bayi=qu-yi C'ngis qahan  
 4458 öesün sonos=cu Yaun güün-ü eme teyin qayila=n  
 4459 bu=yu kee=n asa=ura güün ile:=be; tere~ güün od=cu  
 4460 asaq=basu tere eme güün ügüle=rün Sorqan\_šira-yin  
 4461 ökin bi; Qadaan nere-tey. Ere-yi min-u ende  
 4462<sup>42</sup> ceri+üd bari=ju ala=n~ bu=yu. Ere-yü-en ala=qda=run  
 4463 «Temüjin-i<sup>510</sup> ere-yi min-u abura=tuqay» kee=n u<sup>n</sup>ši=ju  
 4464 qayila=ju uyila=BA bi kee=be.<sup>511</sup> Tere~ güün ire=jü  
 4465 C'ngis qaana ene üge ügüle=esü C'ngis qahan  
 4466 ene~ üge sonos=uad qatara=ju gür=cü C'ngis qahan  
 4467 Qadaan-tur bawu=ju teberi=ldü=bAy. Ere-yi in-u  
 4468 bidan-u ceri+üd urida ala=juuy.<sup>512</sup> Te+de irge  
 4469 icu=qa=ad C'ngis qahan yeke cerig mün tende bawu=ju  
 4470 qono=bAy; Qadaan-i uri=ju ire=ül=jü dergece=n  
 4471 sau=:f=bAy. Manaqarši üdür Sorqan\_šira Jebe  
 4472 qoyar Tayiciu+d-un Tödöge-yin haran a=qsa+d te+de qoyar  
 4473 @ber ire=bAy @gü<sup>513</sup>. C'ngis qahan Sorqan\_šira-yi  
 4474 ügüle=rün <sup>514</sup>Güjühün-de-ki {kü<sup>n</sup>dü~ mudun-i {köser-e oor=uqsan  
 4475 {jaqa-da-ki {jarbiyal mudun-i {jayila=ul=uqsan ta }ecige+s  
 4476 köü+d-ün tusa~ a=juuy~ @je; ta yeki=n uda=bAy ta kee=bAy.<sup>515</sup>  
 4477 Sorqan\_šira ügüle=rün Bi dotora-an bölen idkel

---

509: Apparently = icuqan (as H62dict.80).

510: Referential accusative (followed by an accusative direct object).

511: C keebe[.]

512: C alajuuy[.]

513: PP has a different note showing the earlier reading was irebe.

514: Kozin 240 extends the poetry up to the end of the quotation, with lines starting eith E, A, and Y.

515: C keebAy[.]



4478 *sedki=jü bü=leey. `Yeki=n yaara=qu bi; yaara=ju urid<sup>516</sup>*  
 4479 *ire=esü Tayiciu+d noya+d min-u qocor=uqsan eme köün*  
 4480 *aduun ideen-i min-u hünesü-er geyis=ge=kü+n te+de'*  
 4481 *kee=jü ülü~ yaara=n edöe qahan-dur-ıyan neyile=n*  
 4482 *idüre=jü ire=bAy ba kee=bAy; kelele=n~ bara=asu*  
 4483 *Jöb kee=be.*  
 4491 (§147) *Basa Cırgis qahan ügüle=rün Köyiten bayi=ldu=ju*  
 4492<sup>43</sup> *iquri=qa=ldu=n jibşiyer=ülce=n bü=küy-tür te+de niruun deere-ce*  
 4493 *sumun ire=jü min-u jebele=gü aman~ caqa:n qula-yin aman~ niriu*  
 4494 *in-u ququ ken qarbu=laa — aıla<sup>517</sup> deere-ce kee=be<sup>518</sup>.*  
 4495 *Tere üge-tür Jebe ügüle=rün Aıla deere-ce bi*  
 4496 *qarbu=laa. Edöe qaan-a ükü=ül=de=esü halaqan-u tedüy*  
 4497 *qajar höe=jü qocor=su; soyurqa=qda=asu qaan-u*  
 4498 *emüne {ceel usun-i hoqtoru {cewgen~ cilawun {cewrü~ dobtul=ju*  
 4499 *ög=sü<sup>19</sup>; {gür kee=gšen qajar-a {kökö~ gürü keü=rü<sup>520</sup>~ {qal*  
 4500 *kee=gšen-tür {qara~ gürü {qamqaru dobtul=ju*  
 4501 *ög=sü } kee=be. Cırgis qahan ügüle=rün Dayisun*  
 4502 *yabu=qsan güün ala=qsan-ıyan dayisurqa=qsan-ıyan beye-en*  
 4503 *niu=ju kele-ben buca=ju ayu=yu<sup>521</sup>; ene~ bü=rün ke:=esü munda<sup>522</sup>*  
 4504 *ala=qsan-ıyan dayisurqa=qsan-ıyan ülü buca=n<sup>523</sup> munda jia=n*  
 4505 *bu=yu; nököcel-tü güün \_ bu=yu. Jirqoaday nere-tü a=juu<sup>524</sup>.*

---

516: Is this elision: urid'ireesü ?

517: Note the `after-thought' position of ıla deere-ce, after what may well have been intended as a major space.

518: C keebel[.]

519: The g (present in PP) is missing in C, but a tiny amount of extra space was left for it.

520: See note to 4312.

521: YCPS ayu emended (by H62txt.35) to ayuyu (i.e. ayu[yu]). So other editions.

522: Usually translated by `however', `on the contrary', etc.. But I wonder whether this historically may be the dative of mun (= mön), meaning literally `in fact' or the like.

523: YCPS buca emended to bucan (i.e. buca[n]), as in the Altan Tobchi (Vietze92.32, line 1415) and Altan Tobchi Nova; the emendation is mine (JCS). De Rachewiltz wrote "buca(?)" (deR4.66); Haenisch emended the form to bucaju.

524: C ajuu[.] Please note that this present note is the last one of its sort in my edition of the SH (except for egregious cases in 5446 and 6171). In chapters 5-12 my punctuation of the Mongolian text has been added ad sensum (i.e. in accordance with the meaning – and my understanding of Mongolian syntax) with little consideration given to the spacing between Chinese characters which represented punctuation of the

4506 Mün jebele=gu aman~ caqa:n qula-yi min-u aman~ niruu  
 4507 qarbu=qsan-u tula Jebe nereyid=cü<sup>525</sup> jebele=ye ima-yi  
 4508 kee=n Jebe nereyid=cü Derge-de min-u yabu kee=n  
 4509 jarliq bol=BA. Jebe Tayiciu+d-aca ire=jü  
 4510 nököce=gseñ yosun teyimü.  
 5011 (§148) C'ngis qahan tende Tayiciu+d-i dawuli=ju Tayiciutay  
 5012 yasu-tu güün-i Aucu\_ baatur Qoton\_ örcen Quduudar-ta+n  
 5013 Tayiciu+d-i uruq-un uruq-a gü=tele hünesü-er  
 5014 keyis=ge=n kidu=bAy. Ulus irgen-i an-u gödöl=ge=jü  
 5015 ire=jü C'ngis qahan Quba\_ qaya übülje=bAy.  
 5017 (§149) Nicüğü+d Baari+n-u Širgüetü ebügen Alağ Nayaa  
 5018 köü+d-lüe-ben Tayiciu+d-un noyan Tarqutay\_ kiriltuq  
 5019 hoyla=ju bü=küy-ir<sup>526</sup> Qš-tü~ güün bü=lee kee=n morila=n ülü  
 5020 cida=qu Tarqutay-i bari=ju tergen-tür unu=ul=ju  
 5021 Širgüetü ebügen Alağ Nayaa köü+d-lüe-ben  
 5022 Tarqutay\_ kiriltuq-i bari=ju ayisu=quy-tur Tarqutay\_ kiriltuq-un  
 5023 köü+d deü+ner in-u Buli=ju ab=uya kee=n güyice=jü  
 5024 ire=jüü. Köü+d deü+ner-i in-u güyice=jü ire=küy-lüe  
 5025 Širgüetü ebügen bos=un~ yada=qu Tarqutay-i tergen  
 5026 deere unu=ju gedergü deere in-u aqtala=n sau=ju  
 5027 kituqay qar=qa=ju ügüle=rün Köün deü+ner cin-u  
 5028 cima-yi buli=ju ab=ura ire=bAy. Cima-yi Qan-ıyan  
 5029 qarda=BA' kee=n ese @teki ala=asu Qan-ıyan qarda=BA'  
 5030 kee=n ala=qu @gü. Ala=asu @teki mün~ @gü ala=qda=qu~ @gü bi.  
 5031 Mün @ele ükü=küy-dür-ıyen dere ab=un~ ükü=sü kee=ed  
 5032 aqtala=ju yeke~ kituqay-ıyar-a:n qoolay in-u ququ=ura  
 5033 gü=küy-tür Tarqutay\_ kiriltuq yeke dawu-ar deü+ner  
 5034 köü+d-ıyen qayla=ju kelele=rün Širgüetü nama-yi ala=n

---

Mongolian text in the Urtext of the YCPS. Copyists who produced the manuscript of edition C of the YCPS reproduced that spacing with great care only in Chapter 1 and a majority of Chapter 2. Chapters 3 and 4 show poor reproduction of such spacing, but I have attempted to use what distinctions remain as a basis for punctuation in my own romanized text. Lack of time has thus far prevented my systematic utilization of what spacing distinctions are occasionally found in later chapters. (It is unlikely that examination of such distinctions would greatly advance our understanding of the text.)

525: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

526: Either this must be taken as a referential object of kee- or one must assume a break in the syntax (as Cleaves' translation in CL82.76), reading kee=n — morila=n ülü cida=qu Tarqutay-i — bari=ju or the like.

5035 bu=yu. Ala=n bara=asu ükü=gse n amin~ ügey beye min-u  
 5036 ab=cu od=cu yeki=üjey~ ta. Nama-yi ala=ay üdüüy-e  
 5037 öter qari=dqun. Temüjin nama-yi ülü ala=qu. Temüjin-i  
 5038 ücü:gen caq-tur {<sup>527</sup> Nidün-dür-iyen qal-tu {niur-dur-iyen  
 5039 gere-tü }bü=lee' kee=n Ejen ügey nuntuq-tur qocor=cu  
 5040 a=muy' kee=n ab=ura od=cu abcira=ju {<sup>528</sup> Sur=qa=asu {sur=qu  
 5041 metü bu=yu' kee=n {sonin ürle daaqan {sur=qa=qu metü  
 5042 {sur=qan~ söyin yabu=laa. {Ükü=ül=sü' ke:=esü {ükü=ül=ün  
 5043 yada=quy@u: bü=lee bi. Edöe {oyi~ in-u oro=ju a=mu;  
 5044 {sedkil in-u {se<sup>n</sup>tere=jü a=mu' }kee=gde=müy. Temüjin nama-yi  
 5045 ülü ükü=ül=gü. Ta köü+d deü+ner min-u öter qari=dqun.  
 5046 Şirgüetü nama-yi ala=ju ile:=üjey kee=n yeke~ dawu-ar  
 5047 qayla=BA. Köü+d deü+ner in-u ügüle=ldü=rün Ecige-yin  
 5048 amin in-u abura=ya' kee=n ire=bAy bida. Şirgüetü  
 5049 amin~ in-u ükü=ül=ün bara=asu qoosun amin~ ügey  
 5050 beye in-u yeki=kü+n bida. Munda ala=ay üdüüy-e öter  
 5051 qari=ya kee=ldü=jü qari=bAy. Te+den-i ire=küy-tür  
 5052 Alaq Nayaa-ta+n Şirgüetü ebügen-ü köü+d in-u  
 5053 heyil=ügse+d<sup>529</sup> ire=bAy. Te+den-i ire=ül=üed gödöl=jü  
 5054 ayis=urun jaura Qutuql nuu-da gür=üesü tende  
 5055 Nayaa ügüle=rün Bida ene Tarqutay-i bari=ju  
 5056 gür=üesü Cirgis qahan —<sup>530</sup> «Bidan-i tus qan-iyen qarda=ju  
 5057 ire=jüüy»~ kee=n — Cirgis qahan bidan-i<sup>531</sup> Tus-iyen qarda=ju  
 5058 ire=gse+d yaun itegel-te+n haran e+de. Bidan-tur  
 5059 basa ker nököce=kü+n. Nököcel ügeü+n haran. Tus  
 5060 qan-iyen qarda=qsa+d haran-i mököri=ül=de=kü+n<sup>532</sup> kee=jü  
 5061 mököri=ül=de=gü+n@üü bida. Munda Tarqutay-i ende-ce talbi=ju

---

527: Kozin and Cleaves exclude the final bülee from the poetry; Ligeti and perhaps de Rachewiltz (2004.71) include it.

528: Cleaves excludes from the poetry the two lines beginning with ü here; others include them. Only Ligeti and perhaps de Rachewiltz include the terminal keegdemüy in the final poetic line.

529: Morpheme division based on CMo.

530: The interpolated sentence seems marked as such in the Chinese manuscripts by the spacing between characters used as punctuation: manuscript C has a major space both before and after the first Chingis qan and before the second; manuscript PP does not contradict that.

531: Referential object' see note to 2019.

532: First morpheme division based on CMo.

5062 *ile:=jü bida`Beye+s-iyen Cıngis qahan-a gücü ög=üre*  
 5063 *ire=BA ba' kee=jü od=uya. `Tarqutay-i bari=ju ayis=ulaay.*  
 5064 *Tus qan-ıyan tebci=n yada=ju "Üje=ed ker ükü=ül=kü+n"*  
 5065 *kee=jü talbi=ju ile:=jü ba büşire=n "Gücü ög=sü"~ kee=n*  
 5066 *ire=bAy ba' kee=ye kee=be. Nayaa-yin ene*  
 5067 *üge ecige+s köü+d jöbşıye=ldü=jü Tarqutay\_ kiriltug-i*  
 5068 *Quduqul\_ nuu-daca talbi=ju ile:=jü mü+d Şirgüetü*  
 5069 *ebügen Alaq Nayaa köü+d-lüe-ben ire=esü yeki=n*  
 5070 *ire=jü kee=be. Şirgüetü ebügen Cıngis qahan-a*  
 5071 *ügüle=rün Tarqutay\_ kiriltug-i bari=ju ayis=urun jici*  
 5072 *Tus qan-ıyan üje=ed ker ükü=ül=küy' kee=jü tebci=n*  
 5073 *yada=ju talbi=ju ile:=jü Cıngis qahan-a Gücü ög=sü' kee=n*  
 5074 *ire=be kee=be. Teün-tür Cıngis qahan ügüle=rün*  
 5075 *Qan-ıyan Tarqutay-i qarda=ju ire=gse+d bö=esü tus*  
 5076 *qan-ıyan qarda=qsa+d haran-i tan-i urug-ıyar*  
 5077<sup>44</sup> *mököri=ül=de=kü+n bü=lee ta. Tus qan-ıyan tebci=n yada=qsan sedkil*  
 5078 *tan-u jöb~ bu=y kee=n Nayaa-yi soyurqa=BA.*  
 5089 (§150) *Teün-ü qoyına Cıngis qahan-tur Kereyi+d-ün Jaqa\_ gambu*  
 5090 *Tersü+d-te<sup>533</sup> bü=küy-tür nököce=re ire=be. Tere ire=gse-tür*  
 5091 *Merki+d qadqu=ldu=ra ire=esü Cıngis qahan Jaqa\_ gambu*  
 5092 *@ki=ed<sup>534</sup> qadqu=ldu=ju icu=a=bAy. Tende tümen Tübege+n olon*  
 5093 *Doñqayı+d butara=qsan Kereyi+d irgen @ber Cıngis qahan-tur*  
 5094 *oro=ju ire=ül=üleey<sup>535</sup>. Kereyi+d-ün On\_ qahan bü=rün urida*  
 5095 *Yisügey qaan-u caq-tur sayı-bar el a=ldu=qsan-tur*  
 5096 *Yisügey qan-lua anda kee=ldü=gse a=juu. Anda kee=ldü=küy*  
 5097 *yosun in-u On\_ qan ecige-yü-en Qurcaqus\_ buyıruq qan-u*  
 5098 *deü+ner-ıyen ala=qu-yin tula Gür qan abaqa-lua-ban*  
 5099 *bulqa bol=ulca=ju Qaraun qabcal şırqu=ul=da=ju*  
 5100 *jaun~ güün qar=cu Yisügey qan-tur ire=esü Yisügey*  
 5101 *qan ima-yi öer-dür-ıyen ire=gde=jü öesün cerig*

---

533: What place this refers to is unclear; see discussion in deR4.547-48.

534: See note to line 2357.

535: YCPS *ireüleey* emended to *ireülüleey* (i.e. *ireül[ül]eey*); emendation mine (JCS). De Rachewiltz, following Haensch (deR4.550), takes the verb here as factitive; that a connective vowel is required (rather than an *ll* cluster) is shown by the *ayu-ul-ulaa* of 8222 and presumably by the emended *a-ul-ula:y* of 2220

5102 morila=ju Gür qan-i Qaşı+n<sup>536</sup> jüg hülde=jü irge orqa  
 5103 in-u O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-a ab=cu ög=ügsen-ü~ tula anda bol=ulca=qu  
 5104 tere.  
 5110 (§151) Teün-ü qoyina O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-u deü Erke\_ qara O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan aqa-da-an  
 5111 ala=qda=run buruud=cu od=cu Nayman-u Inanca qan-tur  
 5112 oro=juuy. Inanca qan ceri+üd ile:=ju jici O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan qurban  
 5113 balaqa+d bitü=n yorci=ju Qara\_ kida+d-un Gür qan-tur  
 5114 od=uqsan a=juu. Tende-ce bulqa bol=un Uyiqu+d-un<sup>537</sup> Ta<sup>n</sup>qud-un<sup>538</sup>  
 5115 balaqa+d daari=ad tabun imaa+d širgüele=jü  
 5116<sup>45</sup> saa=ldu=ju temeen-ü cisun qana=ju ide=ed yada=ju  
 5117 Güseür naur-a ire=esü Cırgis qahan uridu Yisügey  
 5118<sup>46</sup> qan-lua anda kee=ldü=gsen yosu-ar Taqay\_ baatur  
 5119 Sükegey\_ jeün qoyar-i elci ile:=ed Kelüren-ü teriün-ece  
 5120 Cırgis qahan öesün esergü od=cu Ölös=cü  
 5121 *туру=ju ire=be kee=n O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-a qubcirı<sup>539</sup> qubci=ju*  
 5122 ög=cü güreen dотора oro=ul=ju tejie=be. Tere  
 5123 übül jerge-er newü=jü Cırgis qahan Quba\_ qaya-yi  
 5124 übülje=BA.  
 5129 (§152) Tende O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-u deü+ner noya+d @ki=ed<sup>540</sup> ügüle=ldü=rün  
 5130 Ene qan aqa bidan-u {<sup>541</sup>ügeü aburi-tu {hümegey helige  
 5131 }ebürid=cü yabu=yu. Aqa~ deü-yi bara=BA. Qara\_ kida+d-tur  
 5132 ba oro=BA @gü. Ulus @ba joba=a=mu. Edüe eün-i  
 5133 ker ki=kü+n bida. Erde üdür ke:=esü doloan nasu-tu-yi  
 5134 Merki+d irgen dawuli=ju od=cu qara alaq ešige  
 5135 daqu emüs=ge=jü Sele<sup>n</sup>ge-yin Buura\_ keer-e Merki+d-ün  
 5136 aur nödü=be~ @gü. Qurcaqus Buyiruc qan ecige~ in-u  
 5137 jici Merki+d irge haul=ju köü-ben tende abura=ju  
 5138 ire=esü basa Tatar-un Ajay qan harban qurban

---

536: Here and in 6252 glossed as place-name; but as an ethnonym three times in chapter Y.

537: Equivalent to Uyud-un (which appears four times), plural of Uyur 'Uighur'.

538: For Tañud-un, the stem of which occur 19 times in the SH.

539: This form occurs three times in the SH, but only before qubci-; it might be either the zero accusative of a result-noun qubcirin (assuming that this is a variable n-stem noun) which occurs in the Hua-i i-yü (Mo.deR77.91), or the marked accusative of a qubcir (as H62dict.69).

540: See note to line 2357.

541: Poetic lines indicated only by Kozin 243 and deR4.74, the latter translating this entire sentence as three poetic lines.

5139 *nasu-tu-yi eke selte basa dawuli=ju od=cu*  
 5140 *temee+d-iyen adu:la=ul=un yabu=quy-tur Ajay qan-u*  
 5141 *qonici ab=uad horqu=ju ire=be @je. Basa teün-ü*  
 5142 *qoyina Nayman-aca ayu=ju buruud=cu Sartaul-un<sup>542</sup> qajar-a*  
 5143 *Cuy müren-e Qara\_ kida+d-un Gür qan-tur od=BA @je. Tende*  
 5144 *niken hon ülü daus=un jici dayiji=n gödöl=jü Uyu+d-un*  
 5145 *Ta<sup>n</sup>ud-un qajar-iyar bitü=jü yabu=run yada=ju tabun*  
 5146 *imaa+d širgüele=jü saa=ju temeen-ü cisun qana=ju*  
 5147 *ide=jü qaqa soqor qaliun mori-tu yada=ju*  
 5148 *Temüjin köün-tür ire=esü qubciri qubci=ju tejie=be*  
 5149 *@je. Edöe Temüjin köün-tür teyin yabu=qsan-iyar*  
 5150 *umarta=ju hümegey helige ebürid=cü yabu=mu. Ker*  
 5151 *ki=kü+n bida kee=ldü=bAy. Eyin ügüle=ldü=gse üge+s-i*  
 5152 *Altun\_ ašuq O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-a ayilad=qa=juu<sup>543</sup>. Altun\_ ašuq*  
 5153<sup>47</sup> *ügüle=rün Bi @ber ene eye-tür oro=ldu=laa @gü.*  
 5154 *Jici qan-iyar cima-yi tebci=n yada=BA kee=jü tende*  
 5155 *O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan eyin ügüle=ldü=gse+d El\_ qutur Qalbari*  
 5156 *Alin\_ taysi-ta+n deü+ner-iyen noya+d-iyar bari=ul=juu.*  
 5157<sup>48</sup> *Deü+ner-ece Jaqa\_ gambu buruud=cu Nayman-tur oro=juu. Te+den-i*  
 5158 *baria+s<sup>544</sup> selte ger-tür oro=ul=ju O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan ügüle=rün*  
 5159 *Bida Uyu+d-un Ta<sup>n</sup>ud-un qajar-iyar ayisu=quy-tur yau*  
 5160 *kee=ldü=leey. Tan-u metü yau sedki=gü bi ke:=ed*  
 5161 *niur-tur an-u nilbu=ju baria+s an-u talbi=ul=BA.*  
 5162 *Qan-a @ele nilbu=qda=ju ger-tür bü=kü+n haran bügüde-er*  
 5163 *bos=cu nilbu=juu.*  
 5171 (§153) *Tere übül übülje=jü noqay~ jil namur in-u Cırğis qahan*  
 5172 *Caaan\_ tatar Alci\_ tatar Dutau+d<sup>545</sup>\_ tatar<sup>546</sup> Aluqay\_ tatar*  
 5173 *te+de Tatar-tur Dalan\_ nemürge+s bayi=ldu=ju*

---

542: Cleaves in HJAS 12.101 (fn. 33) cites Pelliot, who says the root here is sartaq (also in sartaq^cin [6419], Sartaq^tay [6441, Y511]).

543: First morpheme division based on CMo. PP has ayiqaqajuu here, an unexpected sort of error.

544: The singular doesn't occur in SH; but see Lessing's CMo. bariya `fettters,...'!

545: Locus of morpheme division unclear.

546: YCPS lacks this word, i.e. Dutaud is emended as Dutaud[ \_tatar]; the addition was made by de Rachewiltz (1972.71, 2004.566), following the Altan Tobchi Nova.

5174<sup>49</sup> qadqu=ldu=quy-in urida Cıngis qahan jasaq ügüle=ldü=run<sup>547</sup> Dayisun~ güü  
 5175 daru=asu olja-tur bu bayi=ya. Daru=n~ bara=asu tere  
 5176 olja bidan-u-ay bu=y~ @je. Qubiya=ldu=d @je bida. Nökör~ güün-e  
 5177 icu=a=qda=asu türü:n-ü dobtul=uqsan qajar-tur-ıyan  
 5178 ekeer=üyE. Türü:n-ü dobtulqan-tur ese ekeer=ügsen  
 5179 güün-i mökörü=ül=üyE kee=n jasaqla=ldu=bAy. Dalan\_ nemürge+s  
 5180 qadqu=ldu=ju<sup>548</sup> Tatar-i gödöl=ge=bAy. Daru=ju  
 5181<sup>50</sup> Ulquy\_ şilügelji+d-te<sup>549</sup> ulus-tur an-u neyile=ül=jü dawuli=bAy.  
 5182 Caqa:n\_ tatar Alci\_ tatar Dutau+d\_ tatar Aluqay\_ tatar  
 5183 erki+d irge tende muqudqqa=ju<sup>550</sup> jasaq ügüle=ldü=ggen  
 5184 üge+s-tür Altan Qucar Darıritay qurban üge+s-tür  
 5185 ülü gür=ün olja-tur bayi=juuy. Üge+s-tür ese gür=BA  
 5186 kee=n Jebe Qubilay qoyar-i ile=:jü oljala=qsa+d aduun  
 5187 yau ke ab=uqsa+d-i bügüde-yi ab=qa=ul=BA.  
 5192 (§154) Tatar-i muqudqqa=ju dawli=n~ bara=ju Ulus irgen an-u  
 5193 ker ki=kü+n kee=n Cıngis qahan yeke eye uruk-ıyar-ıyan  
 5194 qaqa ger-tür oro=ju eyetü=ldü=BA. Eyetü=ldü=rün {<sup>551</sup>Erde~ üdür-ece  
 5195 Tatar irgen {ebüge+s ecige+s-i bara=qsan bü=lee. {Ebüge+s  
 5196 ecige+s-ün {<sup>552</sup>ösöl~ ösö=jü {kisal~ kisa=ju {ciün-tür üli=jü  
 5197 {kidu=ju ala=ju ög=üyE. {Ülid=tele kidu=ya. {Hüle=gse+d-i  
 5198 boolid=uya<sup>553</sup>. {Jüg~ jüg qubiya=ldu=ya } kee=n eye~ bara=ldu=ju  
 5199<sup>51</sup> ger-tece qar=uasu Tatar-un Yeke\_ ceren Belgütey-ece Yambar  
 5200 eye eyetü=ldü=bAy kee=n asaqa=juu. Belgütey ügüle=rün  
 5201 Tan-i bügüde-yi ciün-tür üli=jü kidu=ya kee=ldü=bAy  
 5202 kee=jüü. Belgütey-in ene üge-tür Yeke\_ ceren Tatar-dur-ıyan  
 5203 turqaq talbi=ju qorqaqla=juu. Qorqa=qsa+d Tatar-tur

---

547: Chinese interlinear gloss includes here "the word kung 'together', which is regularly used for the cooperative [verb form]" (deR4.567-68).

548: The syllable-final d (present in PP) is missing in C, but space was left for it.

549: Perhaps a plural, şilügelji+d-te; but this river as not been firmly identified (deR4.579).

550: Quite possibly this is a causative formation, but I have never seen the putative root verb. A YCPS spelling moqudqaju occurs in 6286.

551: Poetic lines indicated by deR4.77, 571 (following Kozin); Ligeti shows no poetry, Cleaves only the third and fourth line here indicated.

552: See note to 1401.

553: Locus of morpheme division is merely my guess.

5204 *bidan-u ceri+üd eere=kü+n bol=un maši samši=juu.*

5205<sup>52</sup> *Qorqala=qsa+d Tatar-i jobo=ju<sup>54</sup> oro=ul=ju ülid=ke=n ciün-tür üli=jü*

5206 *kiduqay-tur Tatar ügüle=ldü=rün Güün tutum qancun-dur-iyar*

5207 *kituqay qancula=ju dere ab=un ükü=ye kee=ldü=jü basa*

5208 *maši~ @gü samši=juu. Tedüy Tatar-i ciün-tür üli=jü kidu=n*

5209 *bara=ju tende Cırgis qahan jarliq bol=urun Bida uruk-iyar-iyar*

5210 *yeke eye bara=ldu=qsan-i Belgütey-in jaa=qu-yin~ tula bidan-u*

5211 *ceri+üd maši samši=ya=bAy. Eün-ü qoyina yeke eye-tür*

5212 *Belgütey bu oro=tuqay. Eye bara=tala qadana bü=gü+n-i*

5213 *jasa=tuqay jasa=ad kereür-i qulaqay qudal üyile-te+n-i*

5214 *jarqula=tuqay eye~ bara=asu ötög u:=qsan-u qoyina Belgütey*

5215 *Daaritay qoyar tende oro=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*

5224 (§155) *Tende Tatar-un Yeke \_ ceren-ü ökin Yisügen qatun-i Cırgis qahan*

5225 *tende ab=BA. Taala=qda=run Yisügen qadun ügüle=rün Qahan*

5226 *soyurqa=asu nama-yi güün-e bodo-da bol=qa=ju asara=mu.*

5227 *Na-daca egeci Yisüy nere-tey na-daca deere qan güün-e joki=quy*

5228 *a=jiay @je. Sayi güregen güregele=n bü=ligi. Edöe maqa ene*

5229 *bodulqan-tur qaaqşi yorci=bi kee=bi. Ene üge-tür*

5230 *Cırgis qahan ügüle=rün Egeci cin-u cima-daca sayin bü=gsen*

5231 *bö=esü eri=ül=üye. Egeci-yen ire=esü jayila=ju*

5232 *ög=güy@ü: ci kee=be. Yisügen qadun ügüle=rün Qahan*

5233<sup>53</sup> *soyurqa=asu egeci-yen @ele~ üje=esü egeci-de-en jayila=su*

5234 *kee=be. Ene üge-tür Cırgis qahan jarliq turqa=a=ju<sup>55</sup>*

5235 *eri=ül=üesü ög=te=gsen güregen-lüe~ qamtu hoyla=ju*

5236 *yabu=qu-yi bidan-u ceri+üd jolqa=juuy. Ere~ in-u tutaa=juu.*

5237 *Yisüy qatun-i tende abcira=BA. Yisügen qadun egeci-yen*

5238<sup>54</sup> *üje=ed urida ügüle=gsen üge-tür gür=ün bos=cu sau=qsan*

5239<sup>55</sup> *saurin-dur-iyar sau=:f=ju mün öesün do:ro~ sau=bi. Yisügen qatun-u*

5240 *üge-tür adali bol=da=ju Cırgis qahan oyin-dur-iyar*

5241 *oro=ul=ju Yisüy qatun-i<sup>56</sup> ab=cu jerge-tür sau=:f=BA.*

5247 (§156) *Tatar irgen-i dawli=n~ bara=ju niken~ üdür Cırgis qahan*

5248 *qada: sau=ju unda:la=ldu=run Yisüy qadun Yisügen qadun jirin-ü*

5249 *dumda sau=ju unda:la=ldu=n bü=küy-tür Yisüy qadun yeke-de*

5250 *sewürel=bi. Tende Cırgis qahan dotora-an sedki=jü Boorcu*

---

554: We also find the somewhat more frequent spelling joba- in the YCPS.

555: Here apparently a causative, lit. 'cause to proclaim' (deR4.577 and references there).

556: The ni (present in PP) is missing in C, but there is extra space where it should have been written.



- 5251 Muqali-ta+n noya+d-i uri=ju ire=ül=jü ügüle=rün Ta e+de
- 5252 @ele ciul=uqsa+d haran bügüde-er ayımaq ayımaq
- 5253 bayi=dqun. Qer-ece busu ayımaq-un güün-i öere
- 5254 böldeyid=ke=dkü+n kee=n jarlıq bol=BA. Tedüy ayımaq
- 5255 ayımak-iyar-ıyan bayi=asu niken jalauy sayın gürümele
- 5256 güün ayıma+ud-aca öere bayi=BA. Ci yaun~ güün bu=y
- 5257 ke:=esü tere~ güün ügüle=rün Tatar-un Yeke \_ ceren-ü
- 5258 Yisüy nere-tey ökin ög=de=gsen güregen~ güün bü=lee bi.
- 5259 Dayisun-a dawuli=qda=run ayu=ju buruud=cu yabu=ju Edöe
- 5260 amurli=BA~ @je' kee=n ire=jü Qlon~ haran dotora yau
- 5261<sup>56</sup> tani=qda=qu' kee=jü yabu=laa kee=BA. Ene üge-yi
- 5262 Cıngis qaan-a öci=esü jarlıq bol=urun Mün @gü dayisu~ sedki=jü
- 5263 oorcaq bol=ju yabu=juu. Edöe yau görü=re<sup>57</sup>~ ire=jüü.
- 5264 In-u metü+s-i ciün-tür üli=bAy. Yau saara=muy. Nidiün-ü
- 5265 ecine ge:=dkün kee=be. Tedüy~ @gü mökörü=ül=bAy.
- 5271 (§157) Mün noqay~ jil Cıngis qahan-i Tatar irgen-tür morila=qsan-tur
- 5272 On\_ qan Merki+d irgen-tür morila=ju Toqtoa\_ beki-yi
- 5273 Barqujin\_ töküm jüg hülde=jü Toqtoa-yin yeke~ köün
- 5274<sup>57</sup> Tögüs\_ beki-yi alaju Toqtoa-yin Qutuqtay Caalun jirin öki+d in-u
- 5275 qatu+d in-u ab=cu Qutu Cilaun qoyar köü+d-i in-u irge
- 5276 selte dawuli=ju Cıngis qaan-a yau @ber ese~ ög=be.
- 5280 (§158) Teün-ü qoyına Cıngis qahan On\_ qan qoyar Nayman-u Gücügü+d-ün~ Buyıruq
- 5281 qan-tur morila=ju Uluq\_ taq-un Soqoq usun-a bü=küy-tür
- 5282 gür=cü Buyıruq qan bayi=ldu=n yada=ju Altay daban
- 5283<sup>58</sup> gödöl=be. Soqoq usun-aca Buyıruq qan-i neke=jü Altay
- 5284<sup>59</sup> daba=ul=un Qum\_ şıngir-un Ürüngü huruu hülde=jü yabu=quy-tur
- 5285 Yedi\_ tubluq nere-tü noyan in-u qaraul~ yabu=ju bidan-u
- 5286 qaraul-a hülde=gde=jü aula öede tutaa=qu bol=un
- 5287 ola<sup>n</sup>-niyan<sup>58</sup> tasura=qda=ju tende bari=qda=lua. Ürüngü huruu
- 5288 hülde=ed Kişil\_ baş naur-a güyice=jü Buyıruq qan-i tende
- 5289 muqudqa=BA.
- 5294 (§159) Tende-ce Cıngis qahan On\_ qan qoyar qari=ju ayisu=quy-tur
- 5295 Nayman-u qadqu=ldu=qci Kögseü\_ sabraq Bayidaraq\_ belcir-e

---

557: Locus of morpheme division unclear.

558: This seems the only SH instance of the possessive-reflexive after a stem in  $\eta$ . Pelliot (1949.49) tacitly emends to ola $\eta$ -ıyan; Haenisch (H62txt.113) says "beachte hier den n-Anlaut des Suffixes nach -ng (wie im Mandschu beim Genitiv)".

5296 cerig jasa=ju qadqu=ldu=qu bol=un~ a=juu. C'ngis qahan O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan  
 5297 qoyar Qadqu=ldu=ya kee=n cerig jasa=ju gür=cü jilda  
 5298 bo=da=ju Manaqaru qadqu=ldu=ya kee=n jerge-er qono=bAy.  
 5299 Tende O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan bayidal-dur-ıyan qal+nuud<sup>559</sup> tüle=ül=jü söni~ bö=ed  
 5300 Qara\_ seül öede gödöl=jüüy.  
 5304 (§160) Tende Jamuqa O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-lua qamtu gödöl=ülce=jü yabu=run O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-a  
 5305 Jamuqa ügüle=rün *Temüjin anda min-u urida-ca Nayman-tur*  
 5306 *elci-tü bü=lee. Edöe ese ire=bAy. Qan qan*  
 5307 <sup>560</sup> *{A=qu qayıruqana bi bu=yu~ @je. {Ajira=qu bilduur anda*  
 5308 *min-u bu=yu. }Nayman-tur od=cuuy @je. Qro=qu bol=un*  
 5309<sup>60</sup> *qocor=BA kee=jüüy. Jamuqa-yin tere üge-tür Ubciq^tay<sup>561</sup> Gürin*  
 5310 baatur ügüle=rün Jusurid=cu yeki=n teyin šiliu+n<sup>562</sup> aqa  
 5311 *deü-yü-en ulki=n<sup>563</sup> j'rkü=n ügüle=yü kee=BA.*  
 5315 (§161) C'ngis qahan söni mün tende qono=ju Qadqu=ldu=ya kee=n manaqar  
 5316 erde üdür geyi=ül=ün O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-u bayidal-tur üje=esü  
 5317 ügey bo=da=ju E+de~ @ci bidan-i tülešile=n~ a=juu ke:=ed tende-ce  
 5318 C'ngis qahan gödöl=jü Eder\_ altay-in belcir-ıyer  
 5319 ketül=jü tere gödöl=ügse-yer gödöl=jü<sup>564</sup> Saari\_ keer  
 5320 bawu=bAy. Tende-ce C'ngis qahan Qasar qoyar Nayman-u  
 5321 tübü+üd-ı<sup>565</sup> uqa=ju haran-a ese toa=la.y.  
 5325 (§162) Kögseü\_ Sabraq O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-u qoyina-ca neke=jü Se<sup>n</sup>güm-ün eme~ köü  
 5326 irge orqa selte dawuli=ju ab=cu O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-u Telegetü  
 5327 amasar-a bü=kü+n jarim+ud irge aduun idee dawuli=ju  
 5328 ab=uad qari=juuy. Tere soor-tur Merki+d-ün Toqtoa-yin  
 5329 Qutu Cilaun qoyar~ köü+d tende bü=rün irge-ben ab=uad  
 5330 qaqa=ju ecige-dür-ıyen neyile=n Sele<sup>n</sup>ge huruu

---

559: How much does the plural morpheme consist of? Is nuG a derivational suffix? (NB: the regular plural of qal would be qa+d, homonymous with plural of qan.) See my remarks in Street90.369, 372, 376.

560: Only Kozin and de Rachewiltz indicate poetic lines here. See deR4.80-81, and 585-86 for the two problematic nouns.

561: Perhaps an error for Übchiritey or Obciytai (deR4.586).

562: Singular occurs in šiliuy-a (line 3316).

563: Probably read ulgin jingün; cf. MostSQP.169, fn. 155.

564: YCPS göljü emended (originally by Pelliot) to gödöljü (i.e. gö[dö]ljü).

565: This word is the plural of some singular (possibly CMo. tübeg 'difficulty, trouble') that apparently does not otherwise occur in Middle Mongolian; see de Rachewiltz 2004.587-89 for speculations in the literature.

5331 gödöl=jüüy.

5335 (§163) Kögsegü\_ sabraq-a dawuli=qda=ju O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan-tur elci

5336 ile:=jüüy. Elci ile:=rün *Nayman-a irge orqo-ban eme~ köü-ben*

5337 dawuli=qda=BA bi. Köün-ece-en dörben~ külü+üd-i cin-u quyü=ju

5338 ile:=be bi. Irge orqo min-u abura=ju ög=tügey

5339 kee=jü ile:=jüüy. Cgis qahan tende Boorcu Muqali

5340 Boroqul Cilaun baatur e+de dörben külü+üd-iyen cerig

5341 jasa=ju ile:=be. E+de dörben külü+üd-i gür=küy-in urida

5342 Hulaan\_ qu+d-da<sup>566</sup> Se<sup>n</sup>güm bayi=ldu=qu bol=un morin-u-an quya qa=qda=ju<sup>567</sup>

5343 ab=da=qu<sup>568</sup> bol=ju bü=küy-tür e+de dörben külü+üd gür=cü

5344 abura=ad irge orqa eme~ köü bügüde-yi abura=ju

5345 ög=bAy. Tende O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan ügüle=rün Erde sayin ecige-de

5346 in-u ene~ metü od=un~ bara=qsan ulus-iyen abura=ju

5347 ög=te=lee. Edöe basa köün-ü-en<sup>569</sup> od=un~ bara=qsan ulus-i

5348 min-u dörben külü+üd-iyen ile:=jü<sup>570</sup> abura=ju ög=te=be.

5349 Haci qari=ul=qu-yi te<sup>n</sup>geri qajar-un iheel mede=tügey

5350 kee=be.

5356 (§164) Basa O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan ügüle=rün *Yisügey\_ baatur anda min-u od=un~ bara=qsan*

5357 ulus min-u niken-te abura=ju ög=be. *Temüjin köün*

5358 basa od=uqsan ulus min-u abura=ju<sup>571</sup>. Ög=be.

5359 E+de ecige köün qoyar od=un~ bara=qsan ulus~ na-da

5360 quri=ya=ju ög=ürün ken-ü emüne quri=ya=ju ög=ün jobo=muy.

---

566: The placename Hulaan\_ qu+d 'Red Cliffs' is called Hulaan+uud Bolda+ud in 6022 (deR4.592, 638).

567: Passive of qa- 'shoot (an arrow)' (deR4.592).

568: The syllable-final b (present in PP) is missing in C.

569: Mostaert (see CL82.87, fn. 43) would emend to köün inu; but the occurrence of a parallel passage in 6313 argues strongly against this: köün-ü-en Temüjin-e 'by my son T.' These forms are not genitives but datives (as Street 1957.9).

570: Apparently emended (by Ligeti, it seems) from the text's irejü (i.e. kr>[l]ejü), with length implied); see note to CL82.87, end of fn. 43.

571: Cleaves 1982.88 took this word as past tense, and the following word as a separate sentence. Kuribayashi 240, apparently following a tentative suggestion in H62txt.113, took the final -u as the interrogative particle. De Rachewiltz (deR4-82) translates as though emending the text to -ju<u> (as in the prior line), which seems preferable: Altan Tobchi has the converb here in lines 1814 and 1816 [Vietze92.41-42]).

5361 Bi @ber edöe {<sup>572</sup>ötöl=BA. Nama-yi ötöl=jü {ündü+d-te  
 5362 qar=uasu qaucid=BA bi. {Qaucid=cu {qaldu+d-ta qar=uasu  
 5363 {qamuq ulus ken mede=gü. }Deü+ner min-u aburi ügeü+n<sup>573</sup>~ bu=y.  
 5364 Qaqca köün min-u ügey~ šitü; Se<sup>n</sup>güm qaqca~ bu=yu. Temüjin  
 5365 köün-i Se<sup>n</sup>güm-ün aqa~ bol=qa=ju qoyar~ köü-tü bol=ju  
 5366<sup>61</sup> amu=suqay kee=jü C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan-lua O<sup>n</sup> \_ qan Tuula-yin  
 5367 qara~ tün-e<sup>574</sup> quri=ju ecige köü kee=ldü=bAy. Ecige~ köün  
 5368 kee=ldü=küy yosun — urida erte üdür Yisügey qan  
 5369<sup>62</sup> ecige-lüe O<sup>n</sup> \_ qan anda kee=ldü=gsen yosu-ar Ecige~ metü  
 5370 kee=jü Ecige köün kee=ldü=küy yosu teyimü. Üge  
 5371 ügüle=ldü=rün {<sup>575</sup>Qlon dayisun-tur haul=urun {qamtu niken-e  
 5372 haul=uya. {Qroa görögesün-tür abala=run {niken-e @gü qamtu  
 5373 abala=ya } kee=ldü=bAy. Basa C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan O<sup>n</sup> \_ qan qoyar  
 5374 ügüle=ldü=rün Bida qoyar-i nayida=ju {südü-tü moqay-a  
 5375 {södür=te=esü {södürgen-tür bu oro=ya. {Südü-er  
 5376 ama-ar ügüle=ldü=jü büšire=yE. {Araa-tu moqay-a  
 5377 {adar=da=asu {adarqan-i in-u bu ab=ulca=ya. {Ama-ar  
 5378 kele-er ol=ulca=ju<sup>576</sup> büšire=ye } kee=n teyin üge~ bara=ldu=ju  
 5379 amaraali=n aldu=bAy.  
 5386 (§165) Amaraq deere dabqur amaraq bol=uya kee=n C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan  
 5387 sedki=jü Joci-da<sup>577</sup> Se<sup>n</sup>güm-ün döyi Caur\_ beki-yi quyi=run  
 5388 Se<sup>n</sup>güm-ün köün Tusaqa-da bidan-u Qojin\_ beki-yi aralji=n  
 5389 ög=üye~ kee=n quyi=asu tende Se<sup>n</sup>güm öer-iyen yekejile=n  
 5390 sedki=jü ügüle=rün Bidan-u uruq an-dur od=uasu

---

572: Kozin (surprisingly) fails to indicate the poetic lines here; Ligeti (as shown here) and de Rachewiltz show five lines, Pelliot four, and Cleaves seven.

573: YCPS ügeyün emended to ügeün (i.e. üge<y>ün); see note to line 1104.

574: YCPS tüne interpreted as front-harmonic (i.e. tün<a>[e]).

575: Poetry indicated only by Kozin (as shown here) and de Rachewiltz.

576: For the meaning of olulca, a cooperative form of the root meaning 'to find', see MostSQP.210 (= HJAS 15.340).

577: YCPS Joci-de interpreted as back-harmonic (i.e. Joci-d<e>[a]).

5391<sup>63</sup> *alaun-a*<sup>578</sup> *bayi=ju eeneg-ce*<sup>579</sup> *qoyimar qara=qu~ a=juu.*  
 5392 *An-u uruq bidan-tur ire=esü qoyimar-a sau=ju*  
 5393 *alaun-a qara=n~ a=juu kee=n öer-iyen yekejile=n sedki=jü*  
 5394 *bidan-i doromjila=n ügüle=jü Caur\_ beki-yi ülü~ ög=ün*  
 5395 *ese taala=juuy. Tere üge-tür Cingis qahan dotora-an*  
 5396 *O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan Nilqa\_ se<sup>n</sup>güm qoyar-tur dura qocor=cuu.*  
 5400 (§166) *Teyin dura qocor=uqsan-i Jamuqa uqaju qaqa~ jil qabur*  
 5401 *Jamuqa Altan Qucar Qardaki^day*<sup>580</sup> *Ebügejin Noyaki+n*  
 5402 *Sögeetey Tooril Qaciu<sup>n</sup>\_ beki te+de bo<sup>f</sup>=un niken~ eye-te+n*  
 5403 *bo<sup>f</sup>=ju newü=jü od=cu Jejeer ündür-ün gerü-de*  
 5404 *Berke\_ ele+d-te Nilqa\_ se<sup>n</sup>güm-tür od=cu Jamuqa ulgi=n~ ügüle=rün*  
 5405 *Temüjin anda min-u Nayman-u Taya<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-tur kele-tü elci-tü*  
 5406 *bu=yu. <sup>581</sup>Aman~ in-u Ecige~ köü' kee=jü a=mu; aburi in-u*  
 5407 *öere bu=yu. Itege=jü@ü: a=muy ta. Ese nende=esü tan-a*  
 5408 *yau bol=qu. Temüjin anda-tur morila=asu bi köndelen-ece*  
 5409 *oro=ldu=su kee=jüüy. Altan Qucar qoyar ügüle=rün*  
 5410 *Ba Höelün eke-yin köün-i {<sup>582</sup>aqa-yi ala=ju {deü-yi tebci=jü*<sup>583</sup>  
 5411 *}ög=sügey kee=jüüy. Ebügejin Noyaki+n Qartaad*<sup>584</sup> *ügüle=rün*  
 5412 *{<sup>585</sup>Qar in-u qarda=ju {köl~ in-u kölde=jü }ög=sügey kee=jüüy.*  
 5413 *Tooril ügüle=rün Arqa-ca od=cu Temüjin-i ulus in-u*

---

578: Lit. 'at the back of the door (of the tent)'; the stem, recurring twice below, is unknown elsewhere on Mongolian; see deR4.597. Reference is to the least honorable place in the tent.

579: DeR4.597 lists the present form as having meanings 'only, exclusively, constantly'. Cleaves in HJAS 12.107-08 cites the present SH passage with reference to an occurrence of *egenegte* in the Sino-Mongolian inscription of 1362, which form is listed for CMo. in Lessing 1973.298b as *egenegte* 'already, completely; always, forever, eternally'. Cleaves also mentions a CMo. entry *egenegce* 'secret, mystère' in Kowalewski 1844.229b.

It is merely my guess that the present form include the suffix *-ce* (originally the ablative) found in forms like *qoyina-ca*, *dotora-ca* (4093, Y154), and *urida-ca* (5305).

580: Probably an error for *Qartaaday* (deR4.599).

581: Kozin shows four lines of poetry here, with initial a, e, a, ö.

582: Alliteration not marked by Pelliot, and poetry not marked by Cleaves; Kozin divides into four lines, Ligeti and de Rachewiltz two.

583: The syllable-final b (present in PP) is missing in C.

584: De R translation queries this "(?= Qardakida)"

585: Kozin and Cleaves divide into four lines, Ligeti and de Rachewiltz into two.

5414 *ab=uya. Ulus-iyān ab=da=asu ulus ügeü<sup>586</sup> bol=uasu*  
 5415 *yeki=kü+n te+de kee=jüüy. Qaciuñ\_ beki ügüle=rün Nilqa\_ se<sup>n</sup>güm*  
 5416 *köün cima-yi yau~ sedki=esü {<sup>587</sup>urtu-yin üjüür-e {gün-ü*  
 5417 *hiraur-a }gür=ülce=sü kee=jü*  
 5424 (§167) *e+de üge+s ügüle=gde=jü Nilqa\_ se<sup>n</sup>güm ecige-dür-iyen*  
 5425 *O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-tur te+de@er üge+s Sayıqan\_ tödeen-iyer*  
 5426<sup>64</sup> *ügüle=jü ile:=jüüy. E+de@er üge+s ügüle=gde=jü O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan*  
 5427 *ügüle=rün Köün-i min-u Temüjin-tür yeki=n teyin sedki=n~ bu=yu*  
 5428 *ta. Ejie turuq ima-ar-i bol=ju bö=ed<sup>588</sup> edöe*  
 5429 *köün-tür min-u teyin mawuy~ sedki=esü te<sup>n</sup>geri-de ülü*  
 5430 *taala=qda=qu+n bida. Jamuqa yabu=daq~ kele-tü bü=lee. Jöb@üü*  
 5431 *tab@uu ügüle=n bu=yu kee=n ese taala=ju ile:=jüüy. Basa*  
 5432 *Se<sup>n</sup>güm ügüle=jü ile:=rün Ama-tu kele-tü güün ügüle=n*  
 5433 *böe=tele yeki=n ülü büšire=gde=gü kee=n jici~ quci ügüle=jü*  
 5434 *ile:=ed yada=ju öesün beengedü=n<sup>589</sup> od=cu ügüle=rün*  
 5435 *Bel cima-yi edüy bü=küy~ caq-tur bidan-i yaun-a @ber ülü*  
 5436 *bol=qa=n~ bu=yu. Ünen-ber<sup>590</sup> qan ecige-yen cima-yi {<sup>591</sup>caqaan-a*  
 5437 *sacaasu {qara-da qaqa=asu }Qurcaqus\_ buyuruq qan*  
 5438 *ecige-yin cin-u joban edüy quri=ya=ju a=qsan ulus-i*  
 5439 *cin-u man-a@u: mede=ül=gü. Ken-e~ @ber yeki=n mede=ül=gü*  
 5440 *kee=jüüy. Tere üge-tür O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan ügüle=rün Caqa-yan~ köü-ben*  
 5441 *ker tebci=gü. Ejie turuq ima-ar-i~ bol=ju mawuy*  
 5442 *sedki=esü joki=quy@u: Te<sup>n</sup>geri-de ülü~ taala=qda=qu+n bida*  
 5443 *kee=jüüy. Tere üge-tür köün~ in-u Nilqa\_ se<sup>n</sup>güm mawuyła=ju*  
 5444 *eüten oor=cu qar=cuu. Jici köün-ü-en Se<sup>n</sup>güm-ün duran*  
 5445 *qayırala=ju uri=ju ire=ül=jü O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan ügüle=rün*

---

586: YCPS ügeyü emended to ügeü (i.e. üge<y>ü); see note to 1104.

587: Poetry indicated only by Kozin and de Rachewiltz.

588: See note to 3081.

589: This word has sometimes been romanized as two words, been gedün, but the Chinese text brackets the whole as a unit. It turns out to be the converb (used adverbially here, 'in person') of a verb beengedü- 'to strain or exert oneself' found in the Sino-Mongolian inscriptions of 1335 and 1362 (Cleaves HJAS 13:102.113, fn 76, discussed in deR4.604-05).

590: YCPS (incorrectly) glosses the ber as a particle.

591: Only Cleaves indicates four lines here; others two.

5446 Te<sup>n</sup>geri-de maqa taala=qda=qu+n@u: bida.<sup>592</sup> Köün-i ker  
 5447 tebci=sü' kee=müy ta. Cida=n~ @ele üyiled=üdkün ta.  
 5448 Mede=dkün kee=jüüy.  
 5456 (§168) Tende-ce Se<sup>n</sup>güm ügüle=rün Müd@lü bidan-u Caur\_ beki-yi  
 5457 quyu=n<sup>593</sup>~ bü=lee. Edöe Buuljar ide=re ire=dkün'~ kee=n  
 5458 üdür bolja=ju uri=ju ire=ül=jü tende bari=ya  
 5459<sup>65</sup> kee=ldü=jü Je kee=n eye bara=ldu=ju Caur\_ beki-yi ög=üye.  
 5460 Buuljar ide=re ire=dkün~ kee=n ile:=bAy. Uri=qda=ju  
 5461 C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan harban haran ayis=urun jaura Mö<sup>n</sup>lig ecige-yin  
 5462 ger-tür qono=asu tende Mö<sup>n</sup>lig ecige ügüle=rün  
 5463 Caur\_ beki-yi quyu=asu müd@lü bidan-i doromjila=ju ülü  
 5464 ög=ün bü=lee. Edöe ker buruuy-a<sup>594</sup> buuljar  
 5465 ide=re uri=juu. Öe+d-iyen yekejile=kü+n haran buruuy-a  
 5466 yeki=n Ög=sü'~ kee=n uri=qu+n bü=leey. Jöb@üü tab@uu sedkil~ bu=y.  
 5467 Köün uqa=ju od=da=qu. Qabur~ bol=BA; aduun bidan-u  
 5468 turuqa+d~ bu=y. Aduu-ban tejie=ye'~ kee=n šilta=ju ile:=ye  
 5469 kee=jü ülü~ od=un Buqatay Kiratay qoyar-i Buuljar  
 5470 ide=dkün kee=jü ile:=jü C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan Mö<sup>n</sup>lig ecige-yin  
 5471 ger-tece qari=bAy. Buqatay Kiratay qoyar-i gür=küy-lüe  
 5472 Sere=gde=bAy bida. Manaqar erte büci=jü bari=ya  
 5473 kee=ldü=bAy.  
 5479 (§169) Teyin büci=jü bari=ya~ kee=n üge~ bara=ldu=qsan-i Altan-u deü  
 5480 Yeke\_ ceren ger-dür-iyen ire=jü ügüle=rün Manaqar erde  
 5481 Temüjin-i bari=ya' kee=ldü=bAy. Ene üge-yi Temüjin-e  
 5482 kelen gür=ge=n od=qu güün-i yambar @ele bol=qa=qda=yu  
 5483<sup>66</sup> kee=jüüy. Teyin ügüle=küy-tür eme in-u Alaq\_ id ügüle=rün  
 5484 Tere deleme üge cin-u yaun~ bol=umuy. Haran ba ünemšige=üjey<sup>595</sup>

---

592: da[.]

593: YCPS quyu emended to quyun (i.e. quyu[n]): the Altan Tobchi has γuyun here (Vietze92.43, line 1880). The YCPS error is explained in deR4.606-07. Haenisch had queried the possibility of an emendation to quyu[ju].

594: Both deR4.610 and Kuril.252 show the morpheme division here and in the next line (unlike Ligeti, deR72, Pelliot, and Haenisch). The first of these states, "'On the contrary' and 'contradicting themselves' [in the translation on p. 86] both translate the adverb buru'ui-a, lit. 'in the opposite direction'", and cites a work of Ozawa. CL82.92, 140 has 'contrary to our expectations'. Lessing lists only a form lacking the y.

595: The YCPS form here baffled early romanizers. H62txt.43 wrote unen mige'ujei, but on p. 139 (and H62dict.164) queried a possible emendation unenle'ujai from a verb unenlegegu or unenlegegu. Pelliot 52 wrote rather ünämšigä'ü-jäi, but in fn. 6 queried ünämšigä'ü-jäi. Kuril.254 and deR72.80 follow Ligeti 121 in using his version of the last of these forms, Kuribayashi separating the morphemes as ünemšige=üjei.

5485 kee=jüüy. Teyin kelele=küy-tür aduuci in-u Baday sün  
 5486 gür=ge=re ire=jü ene üge-yi sonos=cu qari=BA. Baday  
 5487 yorci=ju nökör aduuci Kişiliq-a Ceren-ü ügüle=gšen  
 5488 üge+s ügüle=jüü. Kişiliq ügüle=rün Bi basa od=cu  
 5489 uqa=suqay kee=jü ger-tür od=cuuy. Ceren-ü köün  
 5490 Narin\_ keen qada: sau=ju sumu+d-ıyan hürün sau=ju ügüle=rün  
 5491 Tuqar bida yau kee=ldü=leey. <sup>596</sup>Kele-ben ab=da=qu+n. Ken-ü ama  
 5492 idqa=qu+n kee=jüüy. Teyin ke:=ed Narin\_ keen basa  
 5493 aduci-da-an Kişiliq-a ügüle=rün Merki^dey\_ caqaan  
 5494<sup>67</sup> Aman\_ caqaan\_ keer qoyar-i bari=ju abcira. Huya=ju söni erte  
 5495 morila=qu kee=jüüy. Kişiliq yorci=ju Baday-a  
 5496<sup>68</sup> ügüle=rün Tuqar-un kelen cin-u bolqaa=BA. Maqad~ bol=BA.  
 5497 Edöe bida qoyar Temüjin-e kelen gür=ge=n yorci=ya kee=n  
 5498 üge bara=ldu=ju Merki^dey\_ caqaan Aman\_ caqaan\_ keer qoyar-i  
 5499 bari=ju ire=jü huya=ju üdeşi büed<sup>597</sup> qoş-dur-ıyan  
 5500 niken qurıqa-ban ala=ju iseri-yer-e:n bol=qa=ju  
 5501<sup>69</sup> Merki^dey\_ caqaan Aman\_ caqaan\_ keer qoyar belen huya=qsa+d-i  
 5502 unu=ju söni-de yorci=ju ———<sup>598</sup> Cıngis qahan-tur söni  
 5503 gür=cü ger-ün ümere-ce Baday Kişiliq qoyar ügüle=rün ———  
 5504 Yeke\_ ceren-ü ügüle=gšen üge+s köün-i in-u Narin\_ keen-ü  
 5505 sumu+d-ıyan hürü=n<sup>599</sup> sau=ju ——— ügüle=gšen-i ———<sup>600</sup> Merki^dey\_ caqaan  
 5506 Aman\_ caqaan\_ keer qoyar aqta+s bari=ju huya~ kee=gšen  
 5507 üge+s bügüde-yi ügüle=jü ög=bAy. Basa Baday Kişiliq  
 5508 qoyar ügüle=rün Cıngis\_ qaan-i soyurqa=asu ariyal  
 5509 ügey~ bu=y. Büci=jü bari=ya'~ kee=n üge bara=ldu=BA kee=be.  
 6011 (§170) Teyin ügüle=gde=jü Cıngis qahan Baday Kişiliq qoyar-un  
 6012 üge+s büşire=jü söni~ bö=ed dergedeün bü=kü+n itegel-te+n-e

---

596: Cleaves shows the next five words as two poetic lines.

597: Emend to böed? Or is this, recurring in 8358, perhaps the older form?

598: C has extremely large spaces (here marked by a dash) at this point and in lines 5503 and 5505. The first and third of these, at least, signal major syntactic breaks. Kozin 250 uses a comma for the break in 5502, a semi-colon for the next, fails to mark the third but has a dash after üges. MS P is of no help on this matter.

599: Locus of morpheme division just a guess.

600: Break in the syntax signalled by the translations of Cleaves and de Rachewiltz, but not marked by spacing in the Chinese text.



6013 kelen ki=ed<sup>601</sup> köngele=n yau~ ke-ben<sup>602</sup> ge:=ed buru:yla=n söni  
 6014 bö=ed gödöl=bAy. Maw\_ ündür-ün gerü-er gödöl=ürün  
 6015 Maw\_ ündür-ün gerü-de Urya<sup>n</sup>qa^day Jelme\_ qoa-yi itege=jü  
 6016 qoyina-an caqduulsun boł=qa=n qaraulsun talbi=ju gödöl=jü  
 6017 tere gödöl=ügse-er manaqarši üdür~ düli naran  
 6018 kebeli=ül=ün<sup>603</sup> Qalaqalji+d ele+d gür=cü üderi=n~ bau=BA.  
 6019 Üderid=cü<sup>604</sup> bü=küy-tür Alciday-in aqta+s aduulaulsun<sup>605</sup>  
 6020 Cigidey Yadir jüyil-e jüyil-e noqoan-tur aqta+s-ıyan  
 6021 aduula=n yabu=quy-tur qoyina-ca Maw\_ ündür-ü ebür-ıyer  
 6022 Hulaan\_ burqa+d<sup>606</sup> daari=n ayisu=quy dayin-u tousun-i üje=jü  
 6023 Dayin gür=bAy kee=jü aqta+s-ıyan hülde=ed ire=jü  
 6024 Dayin gür=bAy kee=gde=jü üje=esü Maw\_ ündür-ün  
 6025<sup>70</sup> ebür-ıyer Hulaan\_ burqa+d<sup>607</sup> daari=n toosun qar=qa=ju O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan  
 6026 tere neke=jü ayis=un a=juyy kee=jü tende-ce  
 6027 Cırgis qahan toosun üje=ed aqta+s-ıyan bari=ul=uad  
 6028 acaala=ju morila=bAy. Tedüy ese üje=esü  
 6029 gene+d<sup>608</sup> bü=leey. Tere ayisu=quy-tur Jamuqa O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-lua  
 6030 qamtu ayis=ulca=ju ayis=un a=juyy. Tende O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan  
 6031<sup>71</sup> Jamuqa-daca asaq=cuu. *Temüjin köün-tür qadqu=ldu=qu+n metü+s*  
 6032 ke+d~ bu=y~ kee=n asaq=cuu. Jamuqa ügüle=rün Tende Uruu+d

---

601: See note to line 2357.

602: For yau ke see MostSQP.84-85, and (for detailed discussion) Cleaves in HJAS 13.116-17 (1950), fn. 137. Cleaves shows that the plural of yau ke is yau ked.

603: YCPS kebeliürün emended to kebeliülün, as in 6018 (i.e. kebeliü<r>[l]ün). The form in our text was variously emended by Kozin, Haenisch, and Pelliot before Mostaert set the record straight. He discusses lines 6011-6029 at length in MostSQP.82-90.

604: Inasmuch as the verbs üderid- here and üderi- in the last line have identical glosses, one is tempted to emend one of the two. (Or should we set up a derivational suffix -d- making deverbal verbs? That is what I did — very tentatively, and on the basis of only two examples — in Street 1957.5.) Lessing 995 has a CM. üdele- 'to camp at noon for a meal', based on ude 'noon'.

605: Note that the noun has a direct object! See MostSQP.86 (= HJAS 14.336), with the parallel sayı eriülsün (line 9129), 'one who seeks good things'.

606: YCPS buruqad emended to burqad (i.e. bur<u>qad). Hulaan burqad is 'Red Willows' (deR4.89, 617).

607: Emended as bur<u>qad; see note to 6022.

608: See MostSQP.87-88 (= HJAS 14.337-38) for discussion of this word, said to be a plural of the adjective genen (which occurs SH 3103). The form seems to mean essentially 'not expecting anything unusual'.

6033 *Ma<sup>n</sup>qu+d kee=n irgen in-u~ bu=y. Te+de irgen in-u qadqu=ldu=muy*  
6034 *@je. {<sup>609</sup>Toori=quy~ tutum {toyi~ joki=yu. {Derel=gü @gü~ tutum {dem*  
6035 *joki=yu. }Ücü:gen-ece üldü jida-tur dad=uqsan<sup>610</sup> irgen*  
6036 *te+de. Qaraqci+ud ala qci+ud<sup>611</sup> tuq-ta+n~ bu=y. Te+de serel-te+n*  
6037 *irgen bu=y~ @je kee=jüüy. Tere üge-tür O<sup>n</sup> \_ qan ügüle=rün*  
6038 *Teyin bö=esü bida te+den-tür Jirgin baatu+d-iyen*  
6039 *Qadag-i tuşiya=ldu=n Jirgi+n baatu+d-iyen dobtul=qa=ya.*  
6040 *Jirgi+n-ü gejige Tümen\_ tübege+n-ü Aciq\_ şirun-i dobtul=qa=ya.*  
6041 *Tübege+n-ü<sup>612</sup> gejige Olon\_ do<sup>n</sup>qayi+d baatu+d-i dobtul=qa=ya.*  
6042 *Do<sup>n</sup>qayi+d-un gejige O<sup>n</sup> \_ qan-u minqan turqa+ud-i udurid=un*  
6043 *Qori\_ şilemün\_ taysi dobtul=tuqay<sup>613</sup>. Minqan turqa+ud-un gejige bida*  
6044 *yeke qol dobtul=ay~ @je kee=jüüy. Basa O<sup>n</sup> \_ qan ügüle=rün*  
6045 *Jamuqa deü bidan-u cerig ci jasa kee=jüüy. Tere~ üge-tür*  
6046 *Jamuqa öre böldeyid=cü qar=cu nökö+d-e-en ügüle=rün*  
6047 *O<sup>n</sup> \_ qan «<sup>614</sup>ene cerig-iyen nama-yi jasa» kee=mü. Anda-tur*  
6048 *bi qadqu=ldu=n yada=n yabu=lua. «Ene~ cerig nama-yi jasa»*  
6049 *kee=müy. O<sup>n</sup> \_ qan düled na-daca cinaru a=juu. Caq-tu~ nökö*  
6050 *bu=yu. Anda-tur kele~ oro=ul=uya. Anda qadauci=tuqay*  
6051 *kee=jü Jamuqa doroun<sup>615</sup> C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan-tur kele~ oro=ul=ju*  
6052 *ügüle=jü ile:=rün O<sup>n</sup> \_ qan na-daca asaq=BA. `Temüjin*  
6053<sup>72</sup> *köün-tür qadqu=ldu=qu+n metü+s ke+d~ bu=y'~ kee=n asaq=uasü bi*  
6054 *ügüle=rün Uruu+d Ma<sup>n</sup>qu+d-i tumbula=n ügüle=BA bi. Min-u*  
6055 *üge-tür müd Jirgi+n-iyen tumbula=ju ma<sup>n</sup>layla=n jasa=ldu=BA.*  
6056 *Jirgi+n-ü gejige Tümen\_ tübege+n-ü Aciq\_ şirun-i kee=ldü=BA.*

---

609: All sources agree on marking poetry here. But only Kozin shows the residue of this quotation as five further poetic lines with initials ü ü d t t.

610: Locus of morpheme division based on CMo.

611: See note to this form in line 3456.

612: YCPS (C, PP) Tübeğeni emended to Tübeğenü (i.e. Tübeğen<ı>[ü]). Haenisch wrote nü; Pelliot nü, without the expected footnote. The editions of Ligeti and de Rachewiltz followed Pelliot, without comment.

613: YCPS dobtulduqay emended to dobtultuqay (i.e. dobtul<d>[t]uqay); see note to 2403. Emendation mine.

614: See Street13.46, 61-62.

615: Hapax; apparently 'secretly'.

6057 *Tübege+n-ü<sup>616</sup> gejige<sup>617</sup> Olon<sup>618</sup> \_do<sup>n</sup>qayi+d-i<sup>619</sup> kee=ldü=bá<sup>620</sup>. Do<sup>n</sup>qayi+d-un gejige O<sup>n</sup> \_qan-u minqan turqa+ud-un noyan*

6058 *Qori\_ šilemün\_ taysi-yi kee=ldü=bAy. `Teün-ü gejige mün*

6059 *O<sup>n</sup> \_qan-u yeke~ qol cerig-iyer bayi=su' kee=ldü=bAy.*

6060 *Basa O<sup>n</sup> \_qan ügüle=rün `Jamuqa deü ene cerig ci jasa'*

6061 *kee=n nama-yi tüši=n ügüle=müy. Eü-ber uqa=asu caq-tu*

6062 *nökör~ bu=yu. Cerig-iyen jasa=ldu=n yaw~ cida=qu+n. Erde bi*

6063 *anda-tur qadqu=ldu=n yada=ju yabu=lua. O<sup>n</sup> \_qan na-daca*

6064 *cinaru~ a=juu. Anda bu~ ayu. Qadauji<sup>621</sup> kee=jü ile:=jügü.*

6075 (§171) *Ene kele ire=ül=üed C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan ügüle=rün Uruu+d-un*

6076 *Jürcedey ebin ci yau kee=mü. Cima-yi ma<sup>n</sup>layla=ya~ kee=be<sup>622</sup>.*

6077 *Jürcedey-i<sup>623</sup> do<sup>n</sup>qod=qu-yin urida Ma<sup>n</sup>qu+d-un*

6078<sup>73</sup> *Quyildar\_ secen ügüle=rün Anda-yin emüne bi qadqu=ldu=su. Mono~ qoyina*

6079 *öneci+d köü+d-i min-u asara=qu-yi anda mede=tügey kee=be.*

6080 *Jürcedey ügüle=rün C<sup>n</sup>gis qaan-u emüne ba Uruu+d Ma<sup>n</sup>qu+d*

6081 *ma<sup>n</sup>layla=n qadqu=ldu=su kee=jüüy. Teyin ke:=ed Jürcedey*

6082 *Quyildar qoyar Uruu+d Ma<sup>n</sup>qu+d-iyar-iyen C<sup>n</sup>gis qaan-u*

6083 *emüne jasa=ju bayi=bAy. Bayi=quy-lua dayin Jirgi+n-i*

6084 *ma<sup>n</sup>layla=ju gü=cü ire=bAy. Ire=küy-lüe Uruu+d*

6085 *Ma<sup>n</sup>qu+d esergü dobtul=ju Jirgi+n-i daru=bAy. Daru=ju*

6086 *ayisu=quy-tur Tümen\_ tübege+n-ü Aciq\_ širun dobtul=bAy.*

6087 *Dobtul=ju Aciq\_ širun Quyildar-i qadqu=ju bawu=:f=juu.*

6088 *Ma<sup>n</sup>qu+d Quyildar-un deere ekeer=cüüy. Jürcedey*

6089 *Uruu+d-ier-iyen dobtul=ju Tümen\_ tübege+n-i daru=bAy.*

---

616: Five words lacking in YCPS text; see note at end of this sentence.

617: Five words lacking in YCPS text; see note at end of this sentence.

618: Five words lacking in YCPS text; see note at end of this sentence.

619: Five words lacking in YCPS text; see note at end of this sentence.

620: YCPS lacks the sentence *Tübege<sup>n</sup>ü gejige olon do<sup>n</sup>qayidi keeldü**á***, which de Rachewiltz added (1972.82, deR4.621) — following Pelliot and CL82.97 fn.4 — from p. 131, lines 9-10 of the Ulan Bator MS. of the Altan Tobchi. (Vietze 1922.44 shows rather *Tümege<sup>n</sup>-ü köbegün Nacin Sirün-ü gejige olan Dongkiyad-i kemeldü**bei*** in lines 1956-57.)

621: See note to 2197.

622: In C, both the 3-character note on the *-be* of 6076 and what was probably intended as a major space are placed at the top of the following column. So in 6210-11 and 6453-4.

623: YCPS has the two final syllables written *de* and *yi* here and in 6198, rather than *dey* and *yi* (as in 8440).

6090 Daru=ju gödöl=ge=jü ayisu=quy-tur Olon\_ do<sup>n</sup>qayi+d  
6091 esergü dobtul=bAy. Jürcedey basa Do<sup>n</sup>qayi+d-i  
6092 daru=BA. Daru=ju ayisu=quy-tur Qori\_ šilemün\_ taysi minqan  
6093 turqa+ud-iyar dobtul=bAy. Jürcedey basa  
6094<sup>74</sup> Qori\_ šilemün\_ taysi-yi icu=a=ju daru=ju ayisu=quy-tur O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-aca  
6095 eye ügeü<sup>624</sup> Se<sup>n</sup>güm esergü dobtul=qu bol=un e<sup>n</sup>gesge  
6096 qacar-iyar qa=qda=ju Se<sup>n</sup>güm mün tende una=juu. Se<sup>n</sup>güm-i  
6097 una=qda=ju Kereyi+d bügüde-er Se<sup>n</sup>güm-ün deere ekeer=cü  
6098 bayi=bAy. An-i daru=ju š<sup>n</sup>ge=küy naran quburi deere  
6099 taši=n bü=küy-tür bidan-u-ay ekeer=cü Quyildar-i una=qsan  
6100 yaratu-yi ab=uad qari=ju C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan bidan-u-ay  
6101 O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-aca qadqu=ldu=qsan qajar-aca qaqaca=ju üdeši-de  
6102 gödöl=jü qaqaca=n qono=bAy.  
6111 (§172) Bayi=ju qono=ju üdür geyi=ül=ün bügüd=ge=esü Öködey  
6112 Boroqul Boorcu qurban~ ügey~ a=juu. C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan  
6113<sup>75</sup> ügüle=rün Öködey-lüe itegel-te+n Boorcu Boroqul qoyar  
6114 qocor=cuu. Aju~ @ber ükü=jü @ber yau qaqaca=qu+n  
6115 te+de kee=be. Bidan-u-ay söni-de aqta+s-iyar<sup>625</sup> bari=ju  
6116 qono=ju C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan ügüle=rün Qoyina-ca bidan-u  
6117 neke=jü ire=esü qadqu=ldu=ya kee=n jasa=ju bayi=bAy.  
6118 Üdür gegeen bol=qa=ju üje=esü qoyina-ca niken güün  
6119 ayis=u; gür=cü ire=esü Boorcu a=juu. Boorcu-yi  
6120 gür=cü ire=ül=üed C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan ügüle=rün  
6121 Mönke~ te<sup>n</sup>geri mede=tügey kee=jü ebceü-ben  
6122<sup>76</sup> mökkeled=be. Boorcu ügüle=rün Dobtul=quy-tur morin-iyar  
6123 una=tala qa=qda=ju yabuqan güyi=jü yabu=quy-tur mün  
6124 Kereyi+d Se<sup>n</sup>güm-ün deere ekeer<sup>626</sup> bayi=quy soor  
6125 cölö-tür acia-tu morin acia-ban kebeli=ül=jü bayi=n<sup>627</sup>  
6126 bü=küy-i acia in-u hoqtol=ju i<sup>n</sup>gircaq-tur in-u

---

624: DeR72.82 would emend YCPS ügeyü to ügeü (i.e. üge<y>ü), as in Ligeti; cf. note to 1104. But deR4.623 happens to use the unemended form here, citing Cleaves in HJAS 16.79-80 (who notes that SH ügey, ügeü, and ügeyü all occur in this expression).

625: The q (present in PP) is missing in C.

626: Pelliot (1949.56, citing ekercü in the Ulan Bator MS. of Altan Tobchi, suggested emending YCPS ekeer to ekercü (i.e. ekeer[cü]). DeR72.84, line 5615, retained ekeer.

627: YCPS baiyin emended to bayin (i.e. ba<y>in; emendation mine (JCS). Ligeti wrote bayi-yin; Pelliot queried emendation to bayju. Kurib1.268 retains the original as bayiyi=n without comment or explanation.

6127 unu=ju qar=cu bidan-u qaqaqa=qu qar=uqsan mör müdki=n<sup>628</sup> yabu=ju

6128 ol=ju edüy ire=be bi kee=be.

6134 (§173) Basa qorum+ud a=tala basa~ niken~ güün ayis=u. Gür=cü

6135 ayisu=quy-tur do:ro in-u köl-iyen unjilja=ju ayis=u.

6136 Üje=esü qaqa~ güün metü~ bu=yu. Ire=n~ bara=asu

6137<sup>77</sup> Öködey-yin qoyina-ca Boroqul sundula=ju aman-u jabaji+n-iyar<sup>629</sup>

6138 cisun cuburi=ul=ju gü=cü ire=be. Öködey sujiyasu-ban

6139 sumun-a tus=da=ju cisun~ in-u haq=da=run Boroqul ama-ar-iyen

6140 šimi=jü bögle=gsen cisun jabaji+n-iyar cuburi=ul=ju

6141 ire=be. C'ngis qahan üje=jü nidün-ece-en nilbusun

6142 cuburi=ul=ju duran alja=ad qal ötör tüle=ül=üed

6143 qalaun daa=ul=uad Öködey-e unda:n eri=ül=jü

6144 ög=ke=ül=jü Dayisun ire=esü qadqu=ldu=ya kee=jü~ bü=leey.

6145 Boroqul ügüle=rün Dayisun-u toosun cinaqši Maw\_ündür-ün

6146 ebür-iyer Hulaan\_ burqa+d<sup>630</sup>~ jüg toosun urtu-da

6147 qar=cu cinaqši yorci=bAy kee=be. Boroqul

6148 tere üge-tür Ire=esü qadqu=ldu=qu+n bü=leey. Dayin-a

6149 buruuyla=n gödöl=de=esü bida cerig-iyen jibšier=cü

6150 qadqu=ldu=d~ @je kee=jü gödöl=bAy. Gödöl=ürin Ulquy

6151 Šilügelji+d öede gödöl=üed Dalan\_ nemürge+s

6152 oro=bAy.

6158 (§174) Tende qoyina-ca Qadaan\_ daldurqan eme köün-ece-en

6159 qaqa<sup>631</sup> ire=be. Ire=jü Qadaan\_ daldurqan O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-u üge~ kee=n

6160 ügüle=rün O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan köü-ben Se<sup>n</sup>güm-i ucuma-ar e<sup>n</sup>gesge~ qacar

6161 una=tala qa=qda=ju deere~ in-u ekeer=cü tende

6162 ügüle=jüüy. { Hiluqad=quy@u.<sup>632</sup> metü-tür {hiluqad=BA.

6163 {Qal=quy@u.<sup>633</sup>~ metü-tür {qal=qu+n~ bol=un {qayiran köün-ü~ min-u

6164<sup>78</sup> {qacar-tur {qadaasun qada=ul=bAy. }Köün-ü ami erüs=ün

---

628: Pelliot queries whether this may have been an error for mückin (presumably = möcgin). DeR4.626 says that "The verb mütki- 'to follow the tracks/path, trail' is a variant of SH möcgi- (= mo. möski-)".

629: My separation of a possible plural morpheme here is questionable; in 9169 jabaji-yar seems equivalent to the present form.

630: YCPS boruqad emended to burqad (i.e. b<o>[u]r<u>qad). See note to 6022.

631: Historically at least this is qaqa-s; but was it felt as an adverb or a converb in the 13th century?

632: Pelliot 187 doesn't translate the -u forms here and in the next line as interrogatives -- though with the remark that the Chinese translation is different from his.

633: See note to this form in 3184.

6165 *dobtuldu=ya*<sup>634</sup> *ke:=esü teün-tür Aciq\_ širun ügüle=rün*  
6166 *Qan qan bü=tügey. Ecine bü=gü~ köü~ eri=rün elbesün jalama*  
6167 *ki=jü "Abuy~ baby" kee=n eri=n jalbari=muy bida. Edü+n*  
6168 *törü=n bara=qsan köü Seḡüm-i asara=ya. Moḡol-un oloḡki+n*<sup>635</sup>  
6169 *Jamuqa-lua Altan Quçar-lua bidan-tur~ bu=y.*  
6170 *Temüjin-lie dayiji=ju qar=uqsan Moḡol qaa~ od=qu+n*  
6171 *te+de. {Morin unua-ta+n {modun nemüre-te+n bol=bAy }te+de.*<sup>636</sup> *An-i*  
6172 *ese ire=esü od=cu morin-u jundaül metü qormayla=ju*  
6173 *abcira=d*<sup>637</sup> *@je bida te+de@er-i' kee=be. Aciq\_ širun-u*  
6174 *ene üge-tür Or\_ qan ügüle=rün Je teyin bö=esü köün*  
6175 *alja=ujay. Köün-i ülü deḡsel=ge=n*<sup>638</sup> *asara=dqun' ke:=ed*  
6176 *qadqu=ldu=qsan qajar-aca qari=n icu=bAy kee=be.*  
6182 (§175) *Tende-ce Cḡgis qahan Dalan\_ nemürge+s-ece Qalqa*  
6183 *huruu gödöl=ürün too toola=ldu=bAy. Toola=ldu=asu*  
6184 *qoyar~ minqan jirwaan jau+d bol=bAy. Niken~ minqan*  
6185 *qurban~ jau+d Cḡgis qahan Qalqa-yin höreneji ete:d-iyer*  
6186 *newü=bAy. Niken~ minqan qurban~ jau+d Qalqa-yin doronaji*  
6187 *ete:d-iyer Uruu+d Maḡqu+d newü=bAy. Teyin newü=jü*  
6188 *ayisu=quy-tur günesün-e abala=n yabu=quy-tur Quyildar*  
6189 *yara+s-ıyan ana=ay üdüüy-e Cḡgis qahan-a idqa=asu*  
6190 *ülü~ bol=un göröesün-tür dobtul=qu bol=un hügdere=jü*  
6191 *nögcı=be. Tende Cḡgis qahan Qalqa-yin Or\_ nuu-yin*  
6192 *keltegey qada-da yasun~ in-u talbi=ul=BA.*  
6197 (§176) *Qalqa-yin Buyur naur-tur cidqu=qu hujaur-a Terge*  
6198 *Emel-te+n*<sup>639</sup> *Orḡira+d bu=y~ kee=n mede=jü Jürcedey-i*<sup>640</sup>

---

634: Some emendation seems needed here. Cleaves translation ('we shall together rush [against them]') indicates that he assumes the YCPS form to include the reciprocal/cooperative morpheme. But this verb is regularly *dobtul-*, and one would therefore expect \**dobtululca-* for the reciprocal/cooperative stem, not a \**dobtululdu-* which might easily have been haplogogized to the form in our text.

635: Written *olonkin* (there being no character for the syllable *lon*). See Cleaves' remarks in HJAS 13.111, fn. 58 for the plural and the orthography.

636: *de[.]*

637: YCPS *acirad* emended to *abcirad* (i.e. *a[b]cirad*), as Pelliot, Ligeti, deR72.85, and Kuribayashi; see note to line 4404.

638: First morpheme division based on CMo. (Lessing 252).

639: YCPS *Amel* emended to the *Emel* of line 4305 (i.e. *<A>[E]mel*).

640: See note to 6077.

6199 Uruu+d-iyar ile:=bAy. Ile:=run `Ongira+d irgen erte  
6200 üdür-ece {<sup>641</sup>je:-yin jisü-er {ökin-ü önge-er' }ke:=esü  
6201 else=d~ @je mü+d. Bulqa~ in-u' ke:=esü qadqu=ldu=d~ @je bida  
6202 kee=jü ile:=esü Jürcedey-tür else=n oro=juuy.  
6203 Else=n oro=qda=ju Cıngis qahan yau~ @ber an-u ese  
6204 könde=bAy.  
6208 (§177) Tende Ongira+d-i oro=ul=uad od=cu Tüñge\_ qoroqan-u  
6209 dorona bawu=ju Cıngis qahan Arqay\_ qasar-a Sügegey\_ jeün  
6210 qoyar-a dawu~ bari=ul=urun `Tüñge\_ qorqan-u dorona bawu=bAy<sup>642</sup>.  
6211 Ebesün~ @ber in-u sayin bol=juuy. Aqta+s man-u  
6212 üyele=bAy<sup>643</sup> qan ecige-de min-u ügüle~ kee=n ügüle=rün  
6213 <sup>644</sup>Qan ecige min-u yaun cimar-tur nama ayu=ul=bAy  
6214 ci. Ayu=ul=qu bö=esü mawu+n~ köü+d-iyen mawu+n~ beri+ned-iyen  
6215 nuyir~ qa<sup>n</sup>qa=n yeki=n ülü ayu=ul=u ci. {<sup>645</sup>Diñ~ sau=quy iseri  
6216 boqunid=qa=ju<sup>646</sup> {deegši qar=quy huni<sup>647</sup> dölüs=ge=jü }yekin=n  
6217 teyin ayu=ul=BA<sup>648</sup> ci. Qan ecige min-u {<sup>649</sup>qaljir=quy@u:  
6218 güün-e {qadqu=qda=BA ci. {Köndeledü@yü:<sup>650</sup> güün-e {köki=ül=de=be  
6219 ci. }Qan ecige min-u bida qoyar yau kee=ldü=leey.

---

641: Poetry not marked by Kozin.

642: In C, both the 3-character note on the -be of 6210 and what was probably intended as a major space are placed at the top of the following column. So in 6076-7 and 6453-4.

643: This most exceptional use of the usually-intransitive ügüle- 'speak' after quoted words (with a few words intervening) should have been cited in fn. 4 of Street13.2.

644: This and the next two sentences are discussed by MostSPQ.95-98 (= HJAS 14.345-48).

645: Only Ligeti fails to mark these poetic lines, and Pelliot's posthumously published edition failed to mark the alliteration.

646: First morpheme division based on CMo. (Lessing 113).

647: For the question whether this word (meaning smoke) should be read hüni (as Pelliot 58, Ligeti 131, and Kuribayashi) or huni see deR4.637.

648: YCPS ayuuluBA emended to ayuulBA (i.e. ayuul<u>BA), as suggested by H62txt.115 (vs. p 47) and accepted by later editions.

649: The next three sets of poetic lines shown by all five writers.

650: Perhaps divide rather as köndeledüy-ü: (as Kurib1.278 [contra Ligeti 131]), or emend to köndeled-güy-ü: or the like. See note to line 2155.

6220 *Jorqal\_ qun-u Hulaan+uud bolda+ud-ta*<sup>651</sup> *bida ese@ü:*  
6221 *ügüle=ldü=lüey. {`Südü-tü moqay-a {södür=te=esü*<sup>652</sup>  
6222<sup>79</sup> *{södürgen-tür in-u bu~ oro=ya. {Südü-er ama-ar ol=ulca=ju*  
6223 *büšireye' }ese@ü: kee=ldü=leey. Edöe qan ecige min-u*  
6224 *südü-er ama-ar@u: ol=ulca=ju qaqaca=BA ci. {Araa-tu*  
6225 *moqay-a {adar=ta=asu {adarqan-tur bu oro=ya. {Ama-ar*  
6226 *kele-er ol=ulca=ju büšire=yE' }ese@ü: kee=ldü=leey.*  
6227 *Edöe qan ecige min-u ama-ar kele-er@ü: ol=ulca=ju*  
6228 *a<sup>n</sup>gicira=BA ci. Qan ecige min-u bi cöen~ @ber bö=esü*  
6229 *olon-i ülü eri=ül=gü bü=lee. Mawuy~ @ber bö=esü*  
6230 *sayin-i ülü eri=ül=gü bü=lee bi. <sup>653</sup>Qoyar kilgü-tey<sup>654</sup> tergen*  
6231 *nököe kilgü-ben ququra=asu hüker in-u jigdü=n yada=yu.*  
6232 *Tere~ metü nököe kilgün cin-u bi ese@ü: a=juu.*  
6233 *Qoyar gürdü-tey tergen nököe gürdü-ben ququra=asu*  
6234 *newü=n yada=yu. Tere~ metü nököe gürdün cin-u bi ese@ü:*  
6235 *a=juu. Erte üdür ke:=esü Qurcaqus\_ buyiruaq qan*  
6236 *ecige-yü-en qoyina `Döcin~ köü+d-ün aqa'~ kee=jü qan*  
6237 *bol=juu @je ci. Qan bol=un~ bara=ju deü+ner-iyen*  
6238<sup>80</sup> *Tay\_ temür\_ taysi Buqa\_ temür qoyar-i ala=BA~ @je~ ci. Erke\_ qara*  
6239 *deü cin-u ala=qda=run ami-yan qoroq=cu qar=cu*  
6240 *Nayman-u Inanca\_ bilge qan-tur buruud=cu oro=juu~ @je.*  
6241 *`Deü+ner-iyen ala=qci~ bol=BA' kee=jü Gür\_ qan abaqa~ cin-u*  
6242 *cima-dur morila=ju ire=esü ci — jaun~ güün ami-yan*  
6243 *qoroq=un — buruud=cu<sup>655</sup> Sele<sup>n</sup>ge huruu tutaa=ju Qaraun*  
6244 *qabcal širqu=lda=BA @je ci. Jici tende-ce qar=urun Merki+d-ün*  
6245 *Toqtoa-da Hujaur\_ üjin ökin-iyen niurqa=n<sup>656</sup> ög=cü*  
6246 *Qaraun qabcal-aca qar=cu Yisügey qan ecige-tür min-u*

---

651: `Red Hills of the Deer(?) Cliff' (deR4.638); the same place is called Hulaan qud or `Red Cliffs' in 5342. (PP has two separate sidelines, but a gloss only for the first.)

652: First morpheme division based on the immediately following noun södürgen.

653: Kozin erroneously treats this and the next line as three lines of poetry, incorrectly romanizing the next-to-last word.

654: YCPS kilügütey with the stem interpreted as kilgü/kilgün here and below (i.e. kil<ü>gütey), as H61dict.101 (contra H62txt.47), Ligeti 132 etc., and editions later than Pelliot.

655: YCPS buruucu emended (by H62txt.114, 48) to buruudcu (i.e. buruu[d]cu).

656: DeR4.639 cites "the rare verb niurqa- (w.f. niyurqa-) `to please, to curry favour, establish cordial relations, etc.'", citing literature including a 1995 article by G. Kara.



6247 ire=esü~ ci tende ügüle=rün `Gür\_ qan abaqqa-daca ulus  
 6248 min-u abura=ju ög' kee=gde=jü Yisügey qan ecige  
 6249 min-u cima-da teyin~ kee=n ire=gde=jü Tayiciu+d-aca  
 6250 Qunan Baqaji qoyar-i udurid=cu `Ulus cin-u abura=ju  
 6251 ög=sü'~ kee=n cerig jasa=ju od=cu Qurban\_ teles+üü-te<sup>657</sup>  
 6252 bükü+n Gür qan-i qorin qucin güün-i Qaşi+n jüg hülde=jü  
 6253 ulus cin-u abura=ju ög=be~ @je. Tende-ce~ ire=jü  
 6254 Tuula-yin qara~ tün-e qan ecige min-u Yisügey qan-lua  
 6255 anda bol=ulca=ju tende Oñ\_ qan ecige min-u büšire=n  
 6256 ügüle=rün `Ene tusa-yin cin-u haci uruq-un uruq-a cin-u  
 6257 haci qari=ul=qu-yi deere teñgeri qajar-un iheel  
 6258 mede=tügey' kee=n büšire=gsen a=juu~ @je ci. Teün-ü~ qoyina  
 6259 Erge\_ qara Nayman-u Inanca\_ bilge qan-aca ceri+üü quyu=ju  
 6260 cima-tur morila=ju ire=esü ci ami-an qoroq=un<sup>658</sup>  
 6261 ulus-ıyan ge:=jü cöen~ güün tutaa=ju qar=cu Qara\_ kida+d-un  
 6262 Gür qan-tur Cuy\_ müren-e Sartaul-un<sup>659</sup> qajar-a od=BA~ @je ci.  
 6263 Nıken~ hon ülü dawus=un basa Gür qan-aca dayji=ju qar=cu  
 6264 Uyu+d-un Tañud-un qajar-ıyar yada=ju ayis=urun tabun  
 6265 imaa+d širgö:le=jü<sup>660</sup> saa=ju ide=jü temeen-ü cisun  
 6266 qana=ju ide=jü qaqa soqor qaliun mori-tu ire=BA  
 6267 @je ci. Qan ecige-yin cima-yi teyin yada=ju ayis=u kee=n  
 6268 mede=jü urida Yisügey qan ecige-lie min-u anda  
 6269<sup>81</sup> kee=ldü=gsen-ü tula sedki=jü Taqay Sükegey qoyar-i~ esergü  
 6270 cin-u elci ile:=ed basa bi öesün Kelüren-ü  
 6271 Bürgi\_ ergi-dece uqdu=n<sup>661</sup> yorci=ju Güseür naur-a  
 6272 jolqa=ldu=bAy~ @je bida. «<sup>662</sup>Cıma-yi yada=ju ire=be» kee=n

---

657: Locus of first morpheme division only a guess; for remarks on the locality involved see deR4.639-40.

658: YCPS quroqun emended to qoroqun (i.e. q<o>[u]roqun); emendation in de Rachewiltz's Addenda & Corrigenda II, following the emendation implied by H62dict.68.

659: YCPS Sardaulun emended (as tacitly Pelliot 59) to Sarta'ulun (i.e. Sar<d>[t]aqulun), with the t found in lin 5142 and 17 other instances of this stem (Kurib1.818). But the d form recurs in 8037.

660: Spelled širgüelejü in 5115 and 5146.

661: Perhaps emend to uqtun, as X159 and CMo. The d form recurs once, in Y153. (I assume that in either form the morpheme division must come after the u.)

662: See Street13.42, 61.

6273 qubciri qubci=ju cima-da ög=üed uridu ecige-tür  
 6274 min-u anda kee=ldü=gšen yosu-ar Tuula-yin qara~ tün-e  
 6275 bida qoyar-un ecige köün kee=ldü=gšen yosun tere ülü@ü:~ bu=y.  
 6276 Tere übüü cima-yi güreen dotora oro=ul=ju tejie=be<sup>663</sup>  
 6277 @je. Übüü übülje=jü jusa=ju namur in-u Merki+d  
 6278 irgen-ü Toqtoa\_ beki-tür morila=ju Qadiqliq\_ niruun-u  
 6279 Mürüce\_ seül qadqu=ldu=ju Toqtoa\_ beki-yi Barqujin\_ tögüm  
 6280 jüg hülde=jü Merki+d irge dawuli=ju olon aduu  
 6281 ordo~ ger an-u tariya+d an-u bügüde-yi ab=cu qan  
 6282<sup>82</sup> ecige-de ög=be~ @je bi. <sup>664</sup>Ölös=ügsen-i cin-u üdür~ düli-de  
 6283 ese gür=ge=be~ @je. Turu=qsan-i cin-u sara-yin jarim-a  
 6284 ese gür=ge=be~ @je bi. Basa bida Gücügür^tey\_ buyuruq qan-i  
 6285 Uluq\_ taq-un Soqoq\_ usun-acd<sup>665</sup> Altay daba=ul=un hülde=jü  
 6286 Ürü<sup>n</sup>gü huruu od=uad Kicil\_ baş naur-a moqudqqa=ju<sup>666</sup>  
 6287 ab=uay~ @je bida. Tende-ce qari=ju ayisu=quy-tur Nayman-u  
 6288 Kögseü\_ sabraq Baydaraq\_ belcir-e ceri+üd-iyen jasa=ju  
 6289 bayi=ldu=quy-tur üdeşi~ jilda bol=da=ju Manaqaru~ erde  
 6290 qadqu=ldu=ya' kee=n jasa=ldu=ju qono=asu qan ecige min-u  
 6291 ci baydal-dur-iyen qal+nuud tüle=ül=jü söni-de Qara\_ seül  
 6292 öede gödöl=be~ @je ci. Manaqar erde üje=esü  
 6293 bayidal-dur-iyen ügey bol=da=run cima-yi gödöl=de=jü E+de~ @ci  
 6294 bidan-i tüleşile=n~ a=juu' kee=jü bi @ber gödöl=jü  
 6295 Eder\_ altay-in belcir-iyer ketül=jü ire=jü Saari  
 6296 keer-e bawu=BA~ @je. Tende cima-yi Kögseü\_ sabraq neke=jü  
 6297 Se<sup>n</sup>güm-ün eme~ köü irge orqa bügüde-yi ab=uad  
 6298 qan ecige-yin cin-u Telege-tü amasar-a bükü+n jarim+ud  
 6299 irgen aduun ideen cin-u dawuli=ju od=uasu  
 6300 Merki+d-ün Toqtoa-yin köün Qudu Cilaun qoyar irge  
 6301 orqa-bar-iyen cima-tur bü=rün tere soor-tur  
 6302<sup>83</sup> ecige-dür-iyen neyile=n Barqujin oron cima-daca dayiji=n  
 6303 gödöl=jüüy~ @je. Tende qan ecige min-u~ ci `Nayman-u Kögseü\_ sabraq-a  
 6304 irge orqa-ban dawli=qda=BA bi. Köün min-u dörben~

---

663: PP tejibAyje within one column (analogous to the jolqaldubAyje of C and PP in 6272).

664: Kozin 255, probably incorrectly, treats this and the following sentence as six poetic lines, with initials ö ü e t s e.

665: YCPS has the glossing division after the na rather than before.

666: Probably emend to muqudqquj; see note to 5183.

6305<sup>84</sup> *külü+üd-iyen ög=cü ile:~ kee=jü ile:=esü cin-u~ metü ülü~ sedki=n*  
6306 *tende~ bi Boorcu Muqali Boroqul Cilaun baatur*  
6307 *e+de dörben külü+üd-iyer-iyen ceri+üd jasa=ju ile:=esü*  
6308 *e+de dörben~ külü+üd-ün~ min-u urida Hulaan \_ qu+d-da Se<sup>n</sup>güm*  
6309 *bayi=ldu=qu bol=un morin-u-an quya qa=qdaju ab=da=qu~ bol=ju*  
6310 *bü=küy-tür e+de dörben~ külü+üd min-u gür=cü Se<sup>n</sup>güm-i*  
6311 *abura=ad eme~ köü irge orqa selte bügüde-yi*  
6312 *abura=ju ög=üesü tende qan ecige min-u büšire=n ügüle=rün*  
6313 *Köün-ü-en Temüjin-e od=un bara=qsan irge orqo-ban dörben*  
6314 *külü+üd-iyen ile:=jü abura=ju ög=te=be' kee=jü bü=lee*  
6315 *ci. Edöe qan ecige min-u yambar cimar-tur min-u*  
6316 *cimad=BA~ ci. Cimar-un yosun-tur elci+n ile:. Ile:=rün*  
6317 *Qulbari \_ quri Idürgen qoyar-i ile:. Qoyar-i ese~ ile:=esü*  
6318 *nököji-yi ile: kee=jü ile:=esü*  
6336 (§178) *e+de üge+s-tür On \_ qan ügüle=rün Ay~ soyiluq. {<sup>667</sup>Köün-ece-en*  
6337 *qaqaca=quy@u:. {Törö-dece qaqaca=BA. {Hirice=güy@ü:<sup>668</sup>.*  
6338 *{Üyile-dece hirice=bAy bi } kee=n dura alja=ad*  
6339 *ügüle=rün Edöe köü-ben üje=jü mawuy sedki=esü*  
6340 *ene~ metü cisu-ban qar=qa=qda=su kee=n andaqa=ju*  
6341 *šigi~ quruun-u-an toli onubci<sup>669</sup> kituqay-bar<sup>670</sup> qadqu=ju*  
6342 *cisun~ cuburi=ul=ju ücüügen daqtay-tur ki=jü Köün-e min-u*  
6343 *ög kee=jü ile:=be.*  
6347 (§179) *Basa C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan *Jamuqa anda-da ügüle~ kee=n ügüle=rün**  
6348 *Qan ecige-dece min-u üje=n~ yada=ju qaqaca=ul=BA ci.*  
6349 *Urida bos=uqsan bidan-u qan ecige-yin kökö cu<sup>n</sup> uu=qu*  
6350 *bü=lee. Na-da urida bos=cu u:=qda=run nayida=BA~ @je ci.*  
6351 *Edöe qan ecige-yin kökö cu<sup>n</sup> bara=dqun. Kedüy~ @je*  
6352 *qoro=qu+n~ ta kee=jü ile:=be. Basa C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan *Altan**  
6353 *Qucar qoyar-a ügüle~ kee=n ügüle=rün Ta qoyar nama*  
6354 *tebci=jü ile@üü~ ge:=sü kee=leey ta; juqa=ju@u: ge:=sü~ kee=leey*

---

667: Poetry indicated only by Kozin and de Rachewiltz.

668: YCPS hirijegüyü: (hapax) emended to hiricegüyü: (i.e. hiri<j>[c]egüyü); emendation in Ligeti 136. The form with c occurs in 3442 and 6338. (It seems odd indeed that the YCPS editors would allow two different spelling in successive lines.) Thus far I have not found any reflex of this verb in later stages of the language.

669: YCPS onuci emended (as Pelliot et al.) to onubci (i.e. onu[b]ci).

670: I am baffled by Ligeti's writing kituqa<i>-bar here and in 2161; why did he to emend the forms there but not in line 9147? Elsewhere he regularly writes kituqai for this word.

6355 ta. *Qucar-i cima-yi Nekün\_ taysi-yin köün kee=jü`Bidan-aca*  
6356 *ci qan bol~ ke:=esü ese bol=BA~ @je ci*<sup>671</sup>. *Altan-i cima-yi* —  
6357 *Qutula qan@lu mede=n yabu=lua* — *ecige-yü-en mede=n*  
6358<sup>85</sup> *a=qsa-ar`Ci qan bol~ ke:=esü ese @gü bol=BA~ @je ci.*  
6359<sup>86</sup> *Deere-ecce Bartan\_ baatur-un*<sup>672</sup> *köün~ kee=jü Saca Taycu qoyar-i*<sup>673</sup>  
6360 *ta qa+d bol=udqun kee=jü yada=BA~ @je bi.* «<sup>674</sup>*Tan-i qa+d*  
6361 *bol=udqun» kee=jü yada=ju tan-a~`Ci qan bol' kee=gde=jü*  
6362 *mede=n yabu=BA~ @je bi. Tan-i qa+d bol=uqsan bö=esü*  
6363<sup>87</sup> *olon~ dayin-tur alginci haul=qa=qda=asu te<sup>n</sup>geri-de ihee=gde=esü*  
6364 *dayisun güün-i dawuli=quy-tur* {<sup>675</sup>*qacar qoa öki qadun*  
6365 *eme-yi {qarqam*<sup>676</sup> *sayin aqta abcira=ju {ög=üey bü=lee @je*  
6366 *bi. {Qraa göröesün-tür {utura=ul=da=asu {qada-yin*  
6367 *göröesün {qa~ in-u niketele~ şıqa=ju {ög=üey bü=lee~ @je bi.*  
6368 *{Qun-u göröesü {quya~ in-u nike=tele şıqa=ju {ög=üey*  
6369 *bü=lee~ @je bi. {Keer-ün göröesü {keeli~ in-u nike=tele*  
6370 *şıqa=ju {ög=üey bü=lee~ @je bi. }Edöe qan ecige-de*  
6371 *min-u sayi-tur nököce=jü ög=üdkün. Uyida<sup>n</sup>qa*  
6372 *kee=gde=üje~ ta. `Caud\_ quri-yin turuq~ @ele a=juuy' bu*  
6373 *kee=ül=üdkün. Qurban müre+d-ün teriün ken-e~ @ber bu*  
6374 *bawu=:l=udqun kee=jü ile=be.*  
6382 (§180) *Basa Cırgis qahan Tooril deü-de ügüle~ kee=n ügüle=rün*  
6383 *Deü kee=gü yosun* — *Tumbinay Caraqay\_ lı<sup>n</sup>qu qoyar-un Oqda*  
6384 *bool-iar bila=ju ire=be~ @je. Oqda bool-un köün*  
6385 *Sübegey bool bü=lee. Sübegey bool-un~ köün*  
6386 *Kököcü\_ kirsaan bü=lee. Kököcü\_ kirsaan-u köün*

---

671: For lines 6355-60, cf. p. 21 of Street's "The particle *lu* in the SH", *Zentralasiatische Studien* 19.9-26 (1986), 20.361-2. (But because of the *...qoyar-i* at the end of 6359 [= deR72.90, line 6101], I now believe -- after writing Street13 -- that the next three words represent indirect discourse rather than direct: 'said that you should become qans'.)

672: *Bartan\_ baatur* is an error for *Barqaq\_ baatur* (deR4.101, 645).

673: Referential object; see note to 1126, and Street13.52.

674: So Street13.50 with both possible translations.

675: Kozin treat the entire quoted sequence here as poetry. Other writers end poetry at the word *Edoe* in 6370. But Cleaves (presumably following Pelliot) further excludes from poetry each sequence *ögüey bülee je bi* plus the prior converb.

676: YCPS *qarqa* emended to *qarqam* (i.e. *qarqa[m]*). The emendation was tentatively suggested by Pelliot 61, and included in the Ligeti, de Rachewiltz, and Kuribayashi romanizations.

- 6387 *Yegey\_ qo<sup>n</sup>taqar bü=lee. Yegey\_ qo<sup>n</sup>taqar-un~ köün Tooril ci.*
- 6388 *Ken-ü ulus+ud ög=sü'~ kee=n jusurid=un yabu=yu ci.*
- 6389 *Min-u ulus Altan Qucar qoyar ken-e~ @ber ülü*
- 6390 *mede=ül=kü+n bu=yu~ @je. Cima-yi deü kee=gü yosun { Borqay-in*
- 6391 *min-u {bosoqa-yin bool {elincüg-ün min-u {eüden-ü*
- 6392 *emcü bool' }kee=jü ile:=gü-yi min-u eyimü.*
- 6397 (§181) *Basa Cıngis qahan Se<sup>n</sup>güm anda-da ügüle kee=n ügüle=rün*
- 6398 <sup>677</sup> *Degel-tü törö=g<sup>78</sup>sen köün bi a=juu~ @je. Nicügün törö=g<sup>79</sup>sen*
- 6399 *köün ci a=juu~ @je. Qan ecige bidan-u bida qoyar-i*
- 6400 *sacau asara=qu bü=lee. Jaura oro=qda=quy-aca*
- 6401 *Se<sup>n</sup>güm anda nama nayda=ju hülde=be~ @je ci. Edöe*
- 6402 *qan ecige-yin bidan-u jürüge in-u ülü jobo=a=n üde*
- 6403 *manaqari oro=ju qar=cu sergü=e=jü yabu; üyen-ü<sup>680</sup>*
- 6404 *sedkil-iyen ülü talbi=n qan ecige-yi ami-du*
- 6405 *böe=tele Qan bol=su' kee=n qan ecige-yin bidan-u*
- 6406 *sedkil jobo=a=ju bu alqasa=ul ke:=ed Se<sup>n</sup>güm anda*
- 6407 *na-dur elci ile.; ile:=rün Bilge\_ beki Tödöen*
- 6408 *qoyar-un nököji<sup>681</sup> ile: kee=jü ile:=be. Na-dur*
- 6409 *elci+n ile:=rün qan ecige qoyar elci+n ile:.*
- 6410 *Se<sup>n</sup>güm anda qoyar @gü elci+n ile:. Jamuqa anda qoyar<sup>682</sup>*
- 6411 *@gü elci+n ile:. Altan qoyar~ @gü elci+n ile:.*
- 6412 *Qucar qoyar~ @gü elci+n ile:. Aciq\_ şirun qoyar~ @gü*
- 6413 *elci+n ile:. Qaciun qoyar~ @gü elci+n ile: kee=n*
- 6414 *Arqay\_ qasar Sügegey\_ jeün qoyar-iyar edüy üge+s*
- 6415 *dawu~ bari=ul=ju ile:=be. E+de üge+s eyin*
- 6416 *ügüle=gde=jü Se<sup>n</sup>güm ügüle=rün Keli Qan ecige'*

---

677: Kozin treats all of this sentence as four poetic lines, with initials d b n c.

678: YCPS dörög<sup>sen</sup> emended twice in this line to törög<sup>sen</sup> (i.e. <d>[t]örög<sup>sen</sup>) emendation mine (JCS).

679: Emended as earlier in this line.

680: Note the occurrence of this word as an n-stem.

681: De Rachewiltz (2004.651), following Pelliot, emends nöködi to nököji, assuming corruption of an earlier manuscript. Cf. line 6318. Ligeti and Kurib1 maintain the di form.

682: In this line PP had twice qoyargü, with two glosses but no formal indication of the morpheme division (as C for other instance of this phrase in 6412-3).

6417 kee=gü bü=lee. Kiduci<sup>683</sup> ebügen' ese@ü: kee=gü  
6418 bü=lee. Nama<sup>684</sup> keli Anda'~ kee=n bü=lee. `Toqtoa böe  
6419 sartaqcin<sup>685</sup> qonin-u seül jübci=jü yabu=yu' ese@ü:  
6420 kee=gü bü=lee. E+de@er üge+s-ün arqa+s  
6421 uqa=qda=BA. Qadqulduan-u teriü+d üge+s~ bu=y. Bilge\_ beki  
6422 Tödöen qoyar qadqu=ldu=quy. Tuq bos=qa=dqun. Aqta+s  
6423 tarqula=ul=udqun. Ariyal ügey~ bu=y~ @je kee=be.  
6424 Tedüy O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-aca Arqay\_ qasar qari=quy-tur  
6425<sup>88</sup> Sügegy\_ jeün-ü eme köün tende Tooril-tur a=juu. Qd=qu  
6426 jürüge yada=ju Sügegy\_ jeün Arqay-aca qocor=cuuy.  
6427 Arqay ire=jü e+de üge+s C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan-a  
6428 ügüle=be.  
6437 (§182) Tedüy C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan od=uad Baljuna naur bawu=BA.  
6438 Tende bawu=quy-tur Coos\_ caqa:n Qorula+s jöb tende  
6439 ucira=ldu=bAy. Te+de Qorula+s ülü~ bulqa=n else=n  
6440 ire=bAy. Ö<sup>n</sup>gü+d-ün Alaquş\_ digid\_ quri-daca Asan  
6441 Sartaq<sup>^</sup>tay<sup>686</sup> caqa:n temee-tü minqan irge+s tau=ju  
6442 Ergüne müren huruu buluqa+d keremün quda=ldu=ju  
6443 ab=ura ayis=urun Baljuna usula=n oro=quy-tur  
6444 ucira=BA.  
6448 (§183) C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan mün Baljuna usula=n bü=küy-tür Qasar  
6449 eme~ köü-ben Yegü Yisü'ge Tuqu-ta+n qurban köü+d-iyen  
6450 O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-tur ge:jü cöen~ beye+s nökö+d-iyer-iyen qar=cu  
6451 Aqa-yu-an~ kee=n C<sup>r</sup>gis qaan-i eri=n Qaraun\_ jidun-u  
6452 niruu+d kigür=jü ol=un yada=n yada=ju širi širbusun  
6453 ide=jü yabu=ad Baljuna-da C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan-tur neyile=be<sup>687</sup>.  
6454 Qasar-i ire=ül=üed bayas=cu C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan  
6455 O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-tur elci+n ile:=yE~ kee=n eyetü=jü Jewüre<sup>^</sup>dey  
6456 Qaliudar Urya<sup>n</sup>qa<sup>^</sup>day Caqurqan qoyar-iyar ügüle=jü

---

683: For this word, "= Cmo. kiduyacı < kidu- 'to kill' + dev. noun suff. -yacı, mm. 'acı) 'murderer, assassin', see deR4.652 and references there.

684: Unique referential object without actual accusative ending; see Street13.14.

685: Cf. SH kibcaqcin ayan 'the Kipcaq campaign' Z288, seemingly composed of \*Kibcaq + -qcin. Cf. also Sarta<sup>^</sup>ul-un qajar 'land of the Muslims' 5412, Asan Sartaq<sup>^</sup>tay 'Hasan the Muslim' 6441.

686: See note to 5142.

687: In C, both the 3-character note on the -be of 6513 and a major space are placed at the top of the following column.

6457 ile:=rün Qan ecige-de `Qasar-un üge'~ kee=n ügüle=dkün~ kee=n  
 6458 ügüle=rün ``Aqa-yan {<sup>688</sup>qara=ju qaraa in-u jabqa=BA.  
 6459 {Qayi=ju qauluqa in-u ol=un yada=bAy. {Qayila=ju  
 6460 dawu-ban ese sonos=da=bAy. {Ho+d<sup>689</sup> qara=ju  
 6461 urba<sup>n</sup> dere-tü bol=ju gebte=mü bi. }Eme~ köün min-u  
 6462 qan ecige-tür~ bu=y. Itegemji ereen ol=uasü qan  
 6463 ecige-tür od=qu bi" kee=jü ile:=be' kee=n  
 6464 ügüle=dkün<sup>690</sup>. Basa ügüle=rün Ba tan-i udaara=n gödöl=jü  
 6465 Kelüren-ü Arqal\_ gewgi-de bolja=ldu=ya. Ta tende  
 6466 ire=dkün kee=n bolja=ldu=ju tedüy Qaliudar  
 6467 Caqurqan qoyar-i ile:=ed Jürcedey Arqay  
 6468 qoyar-i algincila=ju Baljuna naur-aca  
 6469 C'rgis qahan udaara=n eüs=ülce=jü qar=un  
 6470 morila=qsa-ar Kelüren-ü Arqal\_ gewgi-de  
 6471 gür=be.  
 6480 (§184) Qaliudar Caqurqan qoyar O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan-tur gür=cü Qasar-un  
 6481 üge kee=n ende-ce ügüle=jü ile:=gsen üge+s ügüle=jüüy.  
 6482 O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan altan~ terme bos=qa=ju gene+d qurimla=n a=juuy.  
 6483 Qaliudar Caqurqan qoyar-un üge-tür O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan ügüle=rün  
 6484 Teyin bö=esü Qasar ire=tügey kee=jü Itegemji  
 6485 Itürgen-i ile:=ye kee=n ile:=ldü=jüüy. Tedüy ire=ed  
 6486 bolja:l~ qajar-a Arqal\_ gewgi-de gür=küy-lüe barua  
 6487 yeke-yi üje=jü Itürgen elci+n<sup>691</sup> qari=n tutaa=juu.  
 6488 Qaliudar-un morin qurdun a=juu. Qaliudar güyice=jü  
 6489 bari=qu jürüge yada=ju urida-un qoyina-un in-u  
 6490 hoqtori=qa=n yabu=quy-tur Caqurqan-u morin udaan a=juu.  
 6491 Qoyina-ca sumun-u gür=küy üjüür-e Itürgen-ü altan  
 6492 emeel-tü qara aqta-yin quya<sup>n</sup>~ hujaur sau=tala  
 6493 qarbu=juu. Tende Itürgen-i Qaliudar Caqurqan qoyar  
 6494 bari=ju C'rgis qahan-tur abcira=bAy. C'rgis qahan  
 6495 Itürgen-tür ülü kelele=ldü=n Qasar-tur ab=cu  
 6496 od=udqun. Qasar mede=tügey kee=be. Ab=cu

---

688: Only de Rachewiltz and Cleaves indicate poetic lines here, following Pelliot.

689: NB: `stars', not `years'.

690: Note omission of the word keebe here, as often when a long quotation is followed by another spoken by the same person.

691: Not plural in meaning.

6497 od=uasu Qasar Itürgen-tür ülü kelele=ldü=n mün  
6498 tende cabci=ju ge:=be.  
6504 (§185) Qaliudar Caqurqan qoyar C'ngis qahan-a ügüle=rün  
6505 O<sup>n</sup> \_ qan gene+d~ bu=y; altan terme bos=qa=ju qurimla=muy.  
6506 Qtörle=n neül=ge=jü<sup>692</sup> söni+d düllilge=jü<sup>693</sup> nende=n büciye  
6507 kee=be. Ene üge-yi jöbšiye=jü Jürcedey Arqay  
6508 qoyar-i algincila=ul=ju söni+d düli=ed gür=cü  
6509<sup>89</sup> Jejeer\_ ündür-ün Jer\_ qabciqay-in amasar-a bü=küy-tür büci=bAy.  
6510 Qurban söni+d<sup>694</sup> qurban~ üdü+d bulqa=qda=run büci=jü bayi=basu  
6511 qutuar üdür yada=ju mü+d oro=bAy. O<sup>n</sup> \_ qan Se<sup>n</sup>güm  
6512 qoyar-i söni ker @ber qar=uqsan-i ese mede=gde=be.  
6513 Ene bulqa=ldu=qci Jirgi+n-ü Qadaq baatur a=juu.  
6514 Qadaq baatur oro=ju ire=jü ügüle=rün Qurban söni+d  
6515 qurban üdü+d bulqa=ldu=run Tus qan-ıyan üje=ed bari=ju  
6516 ker ala=ul=qu' kee=n tebci=n yada=ju Ami-yan qoroq=un  
6517 kîr<sup>n</sup>ke=tügey' kee=n suora=ul=un bulqa=ldu=laa bi. Edöe  
6518 ükü=ül=de=esü ükü=sü. C'ngis qahan-a soyurqa=qda=asu  
6519 gücü~ ög=sü kee=be. C'ngis qahan Qadaq baatur-un üge-yi  
6520 jöbšiye=jü jarliq bol=urun Tus qan-ıyan tebci=n yada=ju  
6521 amin qoroq=un kîr<sup>n</sup>ke=tügey' kee=n bulqa=ldu=qu ere tere  
6522 ülü@ü:~ bu=y. Nököce=gde=gü güün bü=lee kee=ed soyurqa=ju  
6523 ülü ükü=ül=ün Quyildar-un amin-u tula «Qadaq baatur-i  
6524 jaun Jirgi+n-i Quyildar-un eme köün-e in-u~ gücü  
6525 ög=tügey. Nuun~ köün törö=esü Quyildar-un uruq-un uruq-a  
6526 gür=tele daqa=ju gücü ög=tügey»<sup>695</sup>; Ökin~ köün törö=esü  
6527 ecige eke an-u öer-ün dura-ar bu qudala=tuqay.

---

692: YCPS igülgüjü emended to neülgejü (as Pelliot; i.e. <ig>[ne]ülgejü); the form in our text apparently resulted (deR4.666-67) from an error in reading the vertical script form negülgejü (= SH neülgejü).

693: YCPS düliigejü emended to düliigejü (i.e. düli<i>gejü). This emendation was made by Pelliot. (H62dict39 had earlier questioned whether the sequence might represent = düli düliigejü). For the text's sönid düliigejü we might expect either söni dülijü (as 2333, 3335) or söni düliildüjü (3338); hence perhaps the seeming d plural here is an error as well as the following verbal form. Note that in Y032 we find söni düli<i>gejü! And note the error in line 6510 just below.

694: YCPS söni emended to sönid (i.e. sön[d]); the emendation was tentatively made by Pelliot on the basis of line 6514 below.

695: This complex quotation is best understood (Street13.59-60, with retranslation by de Rachewiltz) by assuming that a keen was either omitted or understood at this point. For it would be very odd (and apparently unique in Middle Mongolian) to have direct and indirect quotation combined before a single instance of kee-.



6528 *Quyildar-un eme köün-ü emüne ümerek-en jaru=tuqay*  
 6529 kee=n soyurqa=n jarliq bo=BA. Quyildar\_ secen-ü  
 6530 aman urida neke=gsen-ü<sup>696</sup> tula C'ngis qahan soyurqa=ju  
 6531 jarliq bo=urun *Quyildar-un uruq-un uruq-a*  
 6532 *gür=tele Quyildar-un tusa-yin tula öneci+d-ün abliqa*  
 6533 ab=un a=tuqay kee=n jarliq bo=BA.  
 7011 (§186) Tedüy Kereyi+d irge dorayita=ul=ju jüg~ jüg  
 7012 qubiya=ju tala=ul=bAy. Suldu^day<sup>697</sup> Taqay baatur-un  
 7013 tusa-yin in-u tula niken jaun Jirgi+n-i ög=be.  
 7014 Basa C'ngis qahan jarliq bo=urun<sup>698</sup> O'n\_ qan-u deü  
 7015 Jaqa\_ gambu jirin öki+d a=juuy. Egecimed<sup>699</sup> in-u  
 7016 Ibaqa\_ beki-yi C'ngis qahan öesün ab=urun döyimed<sup>700</sup>  
 7017 Sorqaqtani\_ beki-yi Toluy-a ög=be. Tere  
 7018 şiltaan-iyar Jaqa\_ gambu-yi ima-da  
 7019 qariya-ta+n emcü irge @ber<sup>701</sup> tumdaa<sup>702</sup>  
 7020 nököe kilgün~ bol kee=jü soyurqa=ju ese  
 7021 tala=ul=BA.  
 7025 (§187) Basa C'ngis qahan jarliq bo=urun *Baday Kişiliq*  
 7026 *qoyar-un tusa-yin an-u tula O'n\_ qan-u altan~ terme*  
 7027 *sau=qsa-ar altan gürüe<sup>703</sup> ayaqa~ saba asara=qsa+d*  
 7028 *haran sElte O'qoji+d<sup>704</sup> Kereyi+d-i keşig-te+n an-u*

---

696: Probably emend nekegsen-ü to neegsen-ü (i.e. ne<k>egsen-ü). Elsewhere in the SH the verb meaning 'open' is three times nee-, once nege- (8439); this latter form and the present neke- probably carry over the g/k of CMo. neke- (K'halkha nee-). But there's also a causative written negeül in 2419.

697: NB contrast with Suldu+s-un Sorqan şira 'Sorqan-Shira of the Suldus' in 2187. Hence the d of Sulduday does not represent the plural morpheme.

698: Cleaves (1982.114) thought there was a lacuna in text, since what follows is not the text of the decree; de Rachewiltz (2004.669) apparently does not.

699: For the suffix here (originally forming collective nouns) see PoppeGWM §262, p. 70. But here seemingly 'the elder [of the two]'.  
 700: See the note to 7015.  
 701: YCPS erroneously glosses this as a particle rather than an instrumental.  
 702: De Rachewiltz (2004.671) suggests this is a nomen imperfecti from a hypothetical verb \*tumda- based on Chinese t'ung 'whole, all, entirely; to gather into one, unite'. What is surely the same word recurs as tumdaq in 8050, tumtaqa (probably to be emended to d) in 8452.  
 703: = Turkic körägä 'container for wine': see deR4.671-72.  
 704: Perhaps = Oñ + qan + jin + plural (deR4.672, following Pelliot).

- 7029 *bol=tuqay. Qorcila=ul=ju ötögle=ül=jü uruq-un*  
 7030 *uruq-a gür=tele darqala=n jirqa=dqun. <sup>705</sup>{Qlon dayin-tur*  
 7031 *haul=uasu {olja~ ol=uasu {ol=uqsa-ar ab=udqun.*  
 7032 *{Uraa göröesün ala=asu {ala=qsa-ar ab=udqun*  
 7033 *kee=n jarliq bof=BA. Basa C'ngis qahan jarliq*  
 7034 *bof=urun Baday Kişiliq qoyar-un amin jaura tusa*  
 7035 *gür=ge=gse-ü tula mönke te'ngeri-de ihee=gde=jü*  
 7036 *Kereyi+d irge dorayda=ul=ju ündür-ün oron-tur*  
 7037 *gür=be~ @je. Mona~ qoyina uruq-un uruq-a min-u*  
 7038 *oron-tur sau=ju ene~ metü tusa gür=ge=gse+d-i*  
 7039 *ulam~ ulam uqa=tuqay kee=n jarliq bof=BA. Kereyi+d*  
 7040 *irge dawul=ju ken-e~ @ber ese duta=tala*  
 7041 *tügee=ldü=bAy<sup>706</sup>. Tümen\_ tübee+n-i tügee=ldü=jü*  
 7042 *tügee=tele ab=ulca=BA. Qlon\_ do'nqay+d oquqa üdür-e*  
 7043 *ülü gür=ge=n tala=ul=BA~ @je. Cisu-tu~ tonoq ab=uqci*  
 7044 *Jirgi+n baatu+d-i jisü=jü qubiya=ju gür=ge=ldü=n*  
 7045 *yada=bAy. Kereyi+d irge tedüy qorua=ju tere*  
 7046 *übül Abjia\_ ködeger-i übülje=bAy.*  
 7053 (§188) *O'n\_ qan Se'ngüm qoyar beye+s-iyen dayij=ju qar=cu*  
 7054 *od=uad Didig\_ saqal-un Nekün usun-a O'n\_ qan ha'nqa=ju oro=qu*  
 7055 *bof=un Nayman-u qaraul Qori\_ sübeci-tür oro=juu.*  
 7056 *Qori\_ sübeci O'n\_ qan-i bari=juu. Bi O'n\_ qan bu=yu ke:=esü*  
 7057 *ülü tani=n ese büşire=jü tende ala=juu. Se'ngüm*  
 7058 *Didig\_ saqal-un Nekün usun-a ülü~ oro=n qadaun yorci=ju*  
 7059 *Cöl-tür oro=ju usurqa=run qula+d hiluatu=ju*  
 7060 *bayi=qu+n-i Se'ngüm bawu=ju mariya=juu. Se'ngüm-ün nökö*  
 7061 *Kököcü aqtaci — eme-tü — Se'ngüm-lüe qurbaula*  
 7062 *a=juu. Mori-yan Kököcü aqtaci-da-an bari=ul=juuy.*  
 7063 *Kököcü aqtaci aqta in-u kötöl=üed qari=n*

---

705: Poetic lines are shown in the translations of Cleaves and de Rachewiltz (but not Ligeti), with different line-arrangements. Kozin marks only three of de Rachewiltz lines, accidentally omitting all of SH line 7032. Cleaves compresses everything into two lines of poetic translation.

706: Historically the stem tügee-, meaning 'distribute', was probably a causative of tüge- 'suffice'; I have not marked it as such here and below because of the semantic specialization. Note also occurrence of alternants tükee- and tüke:- for 'distribute'.

7064 qatara=juuy. Eme in-u ügüle=rün {<sup>707</sup> Alta-tay-i<sup>708</sup> emüs=küy-tür  
 7065 {amta-tay-i ide=küy-tür } `Kököcü min-u' kee=gü bü=lee.  
 7066 Qan-ıyan Se<sup>n</sup>güm-i yeki=n teyin tebci=jü ge:=jü od=un~ bu=yu  
 7067 ci kee=jü eme in-u bayi=ju qocor=cuu. Kökücü  
 7068 ügüle=rün `Se<sup>n</sup>güm-i erele=sü' kee=n bu=yu~ @je ci kee=jüüy.  
 7069 Tere üge-tür eme in-u ügüle=rün Eme~ güün noqay  
 7070 niur-tay' kee=gde=yi~ @je bi. Altan jantawu @ber in-u  
 7071 ög. Usun~ @ber udqu=ju uu=tuqay kee=jüüy. Tende-ce  
 7072 Kökücü aqtaci altan jantawu in-u Ab kee=n  
 7073 qoyinaqşı o:r=uad<sup>709</sup> qatara=juu. Tedüy ire=ed  
 7074 Cırgis qahan-tur Kökücü aqtaci ire=jü Se<sup>n</sup>güm-i  
 7075 teyin Cöl-tür ge:=jü ire=be bi kee=n tende  
 7076 ügüle=ldü=gšen üge+s-ıyen bügüde-yi tegüs ügüle=jü  
 7077 ög=üesü Cırgis qahan jarlıq bol=urun Eme-yi  
 7078 in-u soyurqa=ju mün Kökücü aqtaci-yi — tus qan-ıyan  
 7079 eyin tebci=jü ire=jüüy. Eyimü güün edöe ken-tür  
 7080 nököce=esü itege=gde=gü kee=jü cabci=ju ge:=bAy.  
 7090 (§189) Nayman-u Taya<sup>n</sup> qan-u eke Gürbesü ügüle=rün O<sup>n</sup> \_ qan erten-ü  
 7091 ötögü yeke qan bü=lee. Teriü in-u abcira=dqun. Mün  
 7092 bö=esü tayi=ya bida kee=jü Qori\_ Sübeci-tür  
 7093 elci ile:=jü teriü in-u hoqtol=ju abcira=ul=ju  
 7094 tani=ju caqa.n~ toloq deere talbi=ju beri+ned-ıyen  
 7095 berile=ül=jü ötögle=ül=jü quurda=ul=ju ayaqa  
 7096 bari=ju tayi=juuy. Tende teriün teyin tayi=qda=run ine:=jüü.  
 7097 Inee=be kee=n Taya<sup>n</sup>-qan kemkerü gecikile=ül=jüüy<sup>710</sup>.  
 7098 Tende Kögseü\_ sabraq ügüle=jüü. Ükü=gšen qan~ güün-ü teriün  
 7099 in-u~ ta @gü hoqtol=ju abcira=d. Nököe-te ta @gü  
 7100 kemgeri=d. Yaun joki=quy. Noqa+n-u bidan-u quca=quy dawun

---

707: Poetry shown only by Kozin (who includes the rest of the sentence as a third poetic line) and de Rachewiltz.

708: YCPS writes simply A-l-ta-t-a-yi, with no demarkation of the morphemes. Similarly in the next line.

709: The verb is ooru- 'throw, cast', not oru- 'enter' (deR4.678). For the first, see Kowalewski 366-67.

710: Here and in line Z300, deR72.227 (and passim) and deR4.681 emend this verb by dropping the first *j*; so Ligeti 147, 248. No so Kurib1.698 or Haenisch. Pelliot emended one occurrence (p. 65) but not the other (114).

7101 mawuy~ bol=bi. Inanca \_ bilge qan ügüle=lee. {<sup>711</sup> Eme jalauy<sup>712</sup>};  
 7102 {ere= bi ötöl=be. {Ene Taya<sup>n</sup>-i {elbesü-er  
 7103 töre=ül=ülee. Ayi~ {torluq töre=gseñ köün min-u  
 7104 {törülmişi olon {doromji+n mawuy ulus min-u {asara=ju  
 7105 bari=n cida=quy@u:' }kee=lee. Edöe noqa+n-u dawun  
 7106 idüre=küy<sup>713</sup> qucal~ quca=muy. Qadun-u bidan-u Gürbesü-yin  
 7107 jasaq qurca bol=bi. Qan min-u torluq Taya<sup>n</sup> jöölen  
 7108 bu=yu ci. Şibawula=qu abala=qu qoyar-aca buşi sedkil  
 7109 erdem~ ügey~ bu=y kee=gde=jü tende Taya<sup>n</sup> qan ügüle=rün  
 7110 Ene dorona cöke+d Mo<sup>n</sup>qol~ bu=y' kee=gde=müy. Te+de  
 7111 irgen ötögü yeke erten-ü O<sup>n</sup> \_ qan-i qor-iyar-iyar  
 7112 ayu=ul=ju dayiji=ul=ju ükü=ül=be. Edöe mün  
 7113 Qan bol=su' kee=n a=qu+n@u.<sup>714</sup> te+de. Te<sup>n</sup>geri deere naran  
 7114 sara qoyar gere-te+n~ gegeen bol=tuqay' kee=n naran sara  
 7115 qoyar~ bu=y~ @je. Qajar deere qoyar qa+d ker bol=qu.  
 7116 Bida od=cu te+de^ke+d mo<sup>n</sup>qol-i abcira=ya kee=jüüy.  
 7117 Teün-tür eke in-u Gürbesü ügüle=rün Yeki=üje  
 7118 te+de@er-i. Mo<sup>n</sup>qol irgen {<sup>715</sup> hünür mawu-ta+n {qubcasu  
 7119 baratu-ta+n }bü=leey. Angi-da qolo~ bü=jü bü=tügey. Şiliu+n  
 7120 beri+ned öki+d-i an-u maqa abcira=ul=ju qar köl an-u  
 7121 ukiya=ul=ju ünüie+d qoni+d-iyar<sup>716</sup> maqa saa=ul=qu+n @ele  
 7122 kee=jüüy. Teün-tür Taya<sup>n</sup> qan ügüle=rün Teyin bö=esü  
 7123 yau-ta+n aqu+n. Te+de Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-tur od=cu qor~ an-u maqa  
 7124 abcira=ya kee=jüüy.  
 7135 (§190) E+de@er üge+s-tür Kögseü \_ sabraq ügüle=rün Ayi  
 7136 yeke~ üge ügüle=d~ ta. Ayi torluq qan joki=quy@u: bu=y.  
 7137 Niu=dqun kee=jüüy. Kögseü \_ sabraq-a idqa=ul=uad bü=rün  
 7138 Torbi \_ taş nere-tü~ elci Öngü+d-ün Alaquş \_ digid \_ quri-da

711: Poetry indicated only by Kozin (whose line divisions I here tentatively accept) and de Rachewiltz.

712: DeR4.111 (following Kozin) shows the quoted sentences of lines 7101-5 as poetry. Ligeti and Cleaves do not.

713: Cf. Tkç. yitür-/yet-ür- 'cause to arrive, accomplish' (deR4.682-83). This passage contains several other Turkic forms, discussed at this point in de Rachewiltz's commentary.

714: DeR72.98 omitted the macron indicating reconstructed vowel length; this is included in Kurib1.322.

715: Poetry indicated only by Kozin 261.

716: YCPS qonindiyar interpreted (by Haenisch, Pelliot et al.) as qonidiyar (i.e. qoni<n>diyar).

- 7139 ügüle=jü ile:=rün Ene dorona cöeken Mo<sup>n</sup>qol~ bu=y'
- 7140 kee=gde=müy. Ci baraun qar~ bol. Bi ende-ce qamsa=ju
- 7141 te+de<sup>^</sup>ke+d Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-un qor~ an-u ab=uya kee=jü ile:=jüü.
- 7142 Tere üge-tür Alaquş\_ digid\_ quri qariu ügüle=rün
- 7143 Baraun qar~ bol=un ülü~ cida=qu bi kee=jü ile:=ed
- 7144 Alaquş\_ digid\_ quri Yuqunan nere-tü elci-yer-iyen
- 7145 Cırgis qahan-a ügüle=jü ile:=rün Nayman-u Taya<sup>n</sup> qan qor
- 7146 cin-u ab=ura ire=müy. «<sup>717</sup>Nama-yi baraun qar bol»'
- 7147 kee=jü ire=jüü; bi ese bol=BA. Edöe~ bi cima-da
- 7148 sere=ül=jü ile:=be. Ire=jü qor-ıyan ab=da=ujay ci
- 7149 kee=jü ile:=jüü. Jöb~ tende Cırgis qahan Temeen\_ keer-i
- 7150 abala=ju Tülkin\_ ce+üd-i<sup>718</sup> qomor=cu bü=küy-tür
- 7151 Alaquş\_ digid~ quri-yin ile:=gsen Yuqunan elci ene~ kelen
- 7152 gür=ge=n ire=be. Ene kelen-tür aba~ deere
- 7153 @bö=ed<sup>719</sup> Ker ki=kü+n kee=ldü=esü olon güün ügüle=rün
- 7154 Aqta+s bidan-u turuqa+d~ bu=y. Edöe yeki=kü+n bida
- 7155 kee=ldü=jüü. Teün-tür Odcigin noyan ügüle=rün
- 7156 Aqta+s turuqa+d' kee=n yeki=n şilta=qda=qu. Min-u aqta+s
- 7157 tarqu+d~ bu=y. Eyimü üge+s sonos=cu yeki=n sau=qda=qu
- 7158 kee=be. Basa Belgütey noyan ügüle=rün <sup>720</sup>Ami-duy
- 7159 böe=tele nökör-e qor-ıyan ab=da=asu a=qsan yaun
- 7160 tusa~ bu=y. Töre=gsen ere-de ükü=esü @taki
- 7161<sup>90</sup> qor~ numun-lüe-ben yasun-lua niken-e kebte=esü ülü@ü:~ sayin~ bu=y.
- 7162 Nayman irgen <sup>721</sup>Ulus yeke-tü irge olo-tu' kee=n
- 7163 yeke üge ügüle=n a=juu. Bida ene an-u yeke~ üge-tür
- 7164 şıqa=n morila=ju od=cu an-u qor ab=uası berke-tü@ü.<sup>722</sup>
- 7165 a=juu. Qd=uası olon aduun an-u joqsa=ju ülü@ü:
- 7166 qocor=uujay. Qrdo~ ger in-u eüre=jü ülü@ü:

---

717: See Street13.43, 50, 61.

718: Tülkince+ud` (?) the Tulkin Hills' (deR4.687), apparently containing the plural of a ceg 'hill' (cf. Şilginceg in Z585; this form is discussed by MostSQP.259-60 [= HJAS 15.389-90]).

719: See note to 3081; here de Rachewiltz translates 'at once' (deR4.112), CL82.118 merely as 'then'.

720: Kozin, probably erroneously, takes the following nine words as poetry.

721: Kozin, probably erroneously, takes the following four words as poetry.

722: YCPS berkedüü emended to berketüü (i.e. berke<d>[t]üü, interpreted as containing -tü plus the interrogative particle).

- 7167 *qocor=uujay. Qlon ulus an-u ündür etüge+d-tür*
- 7168 *qor=ura ülü@ü: qar=uujay. Mü+d ene eyimü yeke~ üge*
- 7169 *ügüle=ül=jü ker sau=qda=qu. Morila=ya @bö=ed<sup>723</sup>*
- 7170 *kee=be.*
- 7180 (§191) *Belgütey noyan-u ene üge-yi jöbšiyе=jü Cıngis qahan*
- 7181 *aba~ bawu=ad Abjiqa\_ köteger-ece gödöfjü Qalqa-yin*
- 7182 *Or\_ nuu-yin Keltegey\_ qada bawu=ju toa-ban toola=ldu=ju*
- 7183 *minqan tende minqala=ju minqan-u~ noyan jaun-u~ noyan*
- 7184 *harban-u~ noyan tende tüši=bAy. Cerbi+n-i tende @gü*
- 7185 *tüši=bAy. Dödey cerbi Doqolqu cerbi Ögele cerbi*
- 7186 *Tolun cerbi Bucaran cerbi Söyiketü cerbi*
- 7187 *e+de jirwaan cerbi+n-i tende tüši=bAy. Minqan*
- 7188 *minqala=n jau jaula=n harban harbala=n bara=ju*
- 7189 *nayan kebteül dalan turqa+ud tende kešig-te+n*
- 7190 *ilqa=ju oro=ul=urun minqa+d-un jau+d-un noya+d-un köü+d-i*
- 7191 *deü+ner-i ütü dürü-yin güün-ü köü+d-i deü+ner-i oro=ul=urun*
- 7192 *erdem+üd-te+n<sup>724</sup> beye~ šil sayi-ta+n ilqa=ju oro=ul=bAy.*
- 7193 *Tende Arqay\_ qasar-i soyurqa=ju Baatu+d-i ilqa=ju*
- 7194 *minqala=tuqay. Qadqu=ldu=an üdür emüne min-u bayi=ju*
- 7195 *qadqu=ldu=tuqay. Qlon üdür turqaq kešig-te+n min-u*
- 7196 *bol=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA. Dalan turqa+ud-i*
- 7197 *Ögöle cerbi aqala=ju a=tuqay. Qudus\_ Qalcan-lua*
- 7198 *eyetü=ldü=jü a=dqun kee=be.*
- 7204 (§192) *Basa Cıngis qahan jarliq bol=urun Qorci+n turqa+ud*
- 7205 *kešig-te+n bawurci eütenci<sup>725</sup> aqtaci üdür*
- 7206 *kešig oro=ju naran~ šınge=gü-yin urida kebteül-e jayila=ju*
- 7207 *aqta+s-tur-ıyan qar=un qono=tuqay. Kebteül söni~ ger*
- 7208 *horcin kebte=gü+n-ıyen kebte=ül=jü eüten-tür*
- 7209 *bayi=qu+n-ıyan kešigle=n bayi=ul=tuqay. Qorci+n turqa+ud*
- 7210 *manaqari in-u bidan-i šülen ide=esü*

---

723: See note to 3081.

724: YCPS *erdemüten* emended to *erdemüdten* (i.e. *erdemü[d]ten*). The form with *d* occurs in 4258, that without in 7192 and 8194 as well as here. The emendation was proposed by Pelliot (Haenisch emended rather to *erdemten* (i.e. *erdem<ü>ten*) for all three instances. Haenisch emended rather to *erdemten* (i.e. *erdem<ü>ten*. MostSQP tentatively adopted Pelliot's emendation, as discussed in fn. 237 on p. 250 (= HJAS 15.380); deR4.692 followed Mostaert.

725: Should one not interpret YCPS *eütenci* as *eüteci* (i.e. *eüte<n>ci*)? Cf. the plural *eüdecin* of 7211, X056, and z405, but the simple *eüden* occurs often (e.g. 8438), alone or with *-n* before case endings.

7211<sup>91</sup> *kebteül-tür kelele=jü qorci+n turqa+ud bawurci+n eüdeci+n*  
 7212 *mün mün mör-dür-iyen yabu=tuqay. Saurin-dur-iyen sau=tuqay.*  
 7213 *Qurban söni qurban üdür keşig üdür-iyen dawus=cu*  
 7214 *mün @gü yosu-ar qurban söni qono=ldu=ju*  
 7215 *yeüdge=ldü=jü söni kebteül a=tuqay. Horcin kebte=jü*  
 7216 *qono=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA. Tedüy minqan minqala=n*  
 7217 *bara=ju cerbi tüşi=jü nayan kebteül dalan turqa+ud*  
 7218 *keşig-te+n oro=ul=ju Arqay\_ qasar-a baatu+d ilqa=ju*  
 7219 *Qalqa-yin Or\_ nuu-yin Keltegey\_ qada-daca Nayman*  
 7220<sup>92</sup> *irgen-tür morila=run*  
 7224 (§193) *quluqana jil jun-u teriün sara-yin harban jirqaan*  
 7225 *üdür hulaan tergel-e tuq sacu=ad morila=run*  
 7226 *Kelüren öede Jebe Qubilay qoyar-i algincila=ju*  
 7227 *yabu=ad Saari\_ keer-i gür=üesü Qa<sup>n</sup>qarqan-u teriü-te*  
 7228 *Nayman-u qaraul tende a=juu. Bidan-u qaraul-a hülde=ldü=jü*  
 7229 *bidan-u qaraul-aca niken š<sup>n</sup>qula morin mawuqan emeel-tü-yi*  
 7230 *Nayman-u qaraul-a ab=ta=juuy. Nayman-u qaraul tere morin*  
 7231 *ab=cu ügüle=ldü=rün Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-un aqta+s turuqa+d a=juu*  
 7232 *kee=ldü=jüüy. Bidan-u-ay Saari\_ keer-i gür=cü tende*  
 7233 *törid=cü Ker ki=kü+n kee=ldü=esü tende Dödey cerbi*  
 7234 *Ci<sup>n</sup>gis qahan-a durad=qa=run Bidan@lu cöen~ bu=y. Cöen deere*  
 7235 *cile=jü ire=bAy. Eyin @gü törid=cü aqta+s-iyen*  
 7236 *cad=tala ene Saari\_ keer-i delge=n~ bawu=ju ami-tu*  
 7237 *@ele güün tutum ere-yin tabun a<sup>n</sup>gi-da qal+nuud tüle=jü*  
 7238 *qal-iyar oqjad=qa=ya. Nayman irgen olon kee=gde=müy.*  
 7239 *Qan an-u ger-tece ese qar=uqsan~ ta<sup>n</sup>gi kee=gde=müy.*  
 7240 *Qal-iyar hülürige=ül=tele bidan-u aqta+s @ber cad=umu~ @je.*  
 7241 *Aqta+s-iyen cad=qa=n Nayman-u qaraul-i hülde=ed*  
 7242 *daruca=ju qol-tur an-u neyile=ül=ün tere samawuy-tur*  
 7243 *qadqu=ldu=asu bol=quy@u: kee=n durad=qa=asu ene üge-yi*  
 7244 *jöbšiye=jü Ci<sup>n</sup>gis qahan jarliq bol=urun Teyin bö=ed*  
 7245 *qal+nuud tüle=ül=üdkün kee=n ceri+üd-te jasaq~ tu<sup>n</sup>qa=bAy.*  
 7246 *Tedüy Saari\_ keer-i delge=n bawu=ju ami-tu @ele güün*  
 7247 *tabun a<sup>n</sup>gi-da qal+nuud tüle=ül=bAy. Söni Nayman-u qaraul*  
 7248 *Qa<sup>n</sup>qarqan-u teriün-ece söni olon qal~ üje=jü «Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-i*  
 7249 *cöeken ese@ü:<sup>726</sup>» kee=n bü=leey. Hodun-aca olon qal-ta+n~ bu=y*

---

726: YCPS esegü, with the final vowel interpreted as long (de Rachewiltz in his 1997 Addenda et Corrigenda III). The unexpected g in our text was simply an erroneous carry-over from the vertical script

7250 kee=n Taya<sup>n</sup> qan-tur mawuqan emeel-tü šir<sup>n</sup>qulaqan morin  
7251 ög=cü ile:=ed Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-un ceri+üd Saari\_ keer-i büte=tele  
7252 bawu=lua. Üdür-tür ündür-ün~ a=qu+n@u:. Hodun-aca olon  
7253 qal-ta+n bu=y~ kee=jü ile:=jüüy.  
7262 (§194) Qaraul-un ene kele gür=te=jü Taya<sup>n</sup> qan Qa<sup>n</sup>qay-in Qacir  
7263 usun-a a=juuy. Ene kele gür=ge=ül=üed Gücülüq qan  
7264 köün-dür-iyen kele=jü ile:=rün Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-un aqta+s turuqa+d  
7265 a=juuy. Hodun-aca olon qal-ta+n' kee=müy. Mo<sup>n</sup>qol olon  
7266 a=juuy. Edöe bida <sup>727</sup> {qamtud=un~ bara=asu {qaqaca=quy  
7267 berke bol=qu+n@u:. {Qamtud=un~ bara=asu {qara nidün-iyen  
7268 hirmes ülü ki=kü+n te+de. {Qacar-iyen qadqu=qda=asu  
7269 {qara cisun qar=uasu {qaltaril ügey qata<sup>n</sup>gin  
7270<sup>93</sup> Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-tur {qamtud=uasu bol=quy@u:. }Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-un aqta+s turuqa+d  
7271 kee=gde=müy. Bida ulus-iyen Altay daba=ul=un segü=ül=ün  
7272 gödöl=jü cerig-iyen jibšier=cü an-i udu=ju yabu=ju  
7273 Altay-in ölke+s gür=tele noqay kerel kere=jü yabu=ju —  
7274 Bidan-u aqta+s tarqu+d~ bu=y. Keeli segü=ül=ün Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-un  
7275 aqta+s biqarda=ul=un niur deere an-u asqa=ya  
7276 bida kee=jü ile:=jüüy. Tere üge-tür Gücülüq qan  
7277 ügüle=rün Anaay-in<sup>728</sup> eme Taya<sup>n</sup> jirüge yada=run ene  
7278 üge+s ügüle=jüüy. Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-un olon qaa-ca ire=jüüy.  
7279 Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-un olo<sup>n</sup>ki+n<sup>729</sup> Jamuqa-lua ende bidan-tur bu=y.  
7280 <sup>730</sup> Kündü~ eme-yin šie=küy qajar-a {ese qar=uqsan {gürdün-ü  
7281 tuqul-un belcier-tür<sup>731</sup> {ese gür=ügsen }eme Taya<sup>n</sup>  
7282 jirüge yada=run ese@ü: e+de üge+s ügüle=jü ire=jüüy  
7283 kee=n elci+n-ece ecige-yü-en ebere=tele berte=tele

---

(Street08.48, 63, et passim).

727: All five writers show poetry here, but Kozin marks also a new line beginning with Kirmes (the hirmes here). For general remarks about lines 7268-7274 see MostSQP.113-16 (= HJAS 24.363-66 [1952]).

728: See the CMo. form anai in Lessing 52. DeR4.117, 700 translates, 'Again [that] woman Tayang!'

729: Written olonkin: see note to 6168.

730: Ligeti and Cleaves take this as two poetic lines, de Rachewitz as four; Kozin takes the residue of the sentence as two further lines.

731: YCPS beljieltür emended to belciertür (i.e. bel<j>[c]ie<D>[r]tür); this emendation was made by Ligeti in Central Asiatic Journal 24.299, fn.16), q.v. for discussion. It assumes misinterpretation of the vertical script form with c/j, and omission of the small character distinguishing r from l. Other editors leave the form unemended.



7284 ügüle=jü ile:=jüküy. Ene üge-tür Taya<sup>n</sup> qan öer-iyen  
 7285 emecile=gde=n ügüle=gde=jü Taya<sup>n</sup> qan ügüle=rün <sup>732</sup>Gücü-tü  
 7286 omoq-tu Gücülüg gür=ülce=küy ala=ldu=quy üdür  
 7287 maqa ene omog-ıyan bu~ talbi=tuqay. Gür=ülce=n qamtud=un  
 7288 bara=asu qaqaca=quy maqa berke~ bu=y~ @je kee=be.  
 7289 Tere üge-tür Taya<sup>n</sup> qan-u do:ro~ mede=gü yeke~ noyan  
 7290 Qori\_ sübeci<sup>733</sup> ügüle=rün Inanca\_ bilge qan ecige cin-u  
 7291 saca nökör-e <sup>734</sup>ere-yin aru aqta-yin qarqam ese  
 7292 üje=ül=ülee. Edöe ci manaqar erte bö=ed  
 7293 yeki=n jirüge yada=mu ci. Cima-yi eyin jirüge yada=quy-i  
 7294 mede=gse bö=esü qadun @ber güün bö=esü eke-yi  
 7295 cin-u Gürbesü-yi abcira=ju cerig ülü@ü: jasa=ul=qu  
 7296 bü=lee. Cima<sup>735</sup> qayiran Kögseü\_ sabraq-a ötöl=de=küy yaun.  
 7297 Cerig-ün bidan-u jasal sülbergüy bol=bi. Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-un  
 7298 caq jayaan bu=y~ @je. Ese bol=bi. Ayi turluq  
 7299 Taya<sup>n</sup> yada=qu metü @ele~ bu=yu ci ke:=ed qor-ıyan  
 7300 deled=üed buruu qatara=BA.  
 7311 (§195) Teün-tür Taya<sup>n</sup> qan kil<sup>n</sup>la=ju ügüle=rün <sup>736</sup>Ükü=gü  
 7312 amin jobo=qu beye bügüde niken bu=yu~ @je. Teyin bö=esü  
 7313 qadqu=ldu=ya kee=jü Qacir usun-aca gödöl=jü  
 7314 Tamir huruu yabu=ad Orqon-i ketül=jü  
 7315 Naqu qun-u doronaji qormay daari=n Cakirma+ud<sup>737</sup>  
 7316 gür=cü ayisu=quy-tur C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan-u qaraul üje=jü  
 7317 Nayman gür=cü ayis=ay kee=n kelen gür=ge=esü  
 7318 ene kelen gür=ge=ül=üed C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan jarliq bol=urun  
 7319 <sup>738</sup>Qlon-aca olon cöen-ecce cöen qor bol=umu~ @je  
 7320 ke:=ed esergü an-u morila=ju qaraul-i an-u

---

732: Kozin treats this entire sentence as three poetic lines, with initials equivalent to g g m.

733: For lines 7290-7369, edition C reproduces leaves from the block-print edition dating from the early 15th century ("F").

734: Kozin treat the next four words as two poetic lines.

735: For cima, "an exclamation of pity and regret", see deR4.702.

736: Kozin treats this sentence as three poetic lines with initials ü j b

737: For the places mentioned in this line see deR4.703; that mentions that Poppe believed the second to be plural of a caqırmaq borrowed from Turkic (the Kirghiz form meaning '3-year-old deer').

738: Kozin treats this sentence as four poetic lines with initials equivalent to o o c c.

7321 hülde=ed cerig jasa=run <sup>739</sup>Qaraqana yorcil yorci=ju  
7322 naur~ bayi-du<sup>740</sup> bayi=ldu=ju šiüci qadquldua qadqu=ldu=ya  
7323 kee=ldü=bAy. Teyin ke:=ed C'ngis qahan öesün  
7324 algincila=ju Qasar-i qol jasa=ul=BA. Odcigin\_ noyan-i  
7325 kötö+d jasa=ul=BA. Nayman Cakirma+ud-aca icu=ju  
7326 Naqu qun-u ebür aula-yin qormay kiji=n<sup>741</sup> bayi=juuy.  
7327 Tedüy Nayman-u qaraul-i bidan-u qaraul hülde=ed  
7328 Naqu qun-u ebür yeke~ qol-tur an-u neyile=tele  
7329 hülde=ed gür=cüüy. Teyin hülde=jü gür=küy-i  
7330 Taya<sup>n</sup> qan üje=jü Jamuqa tende Nayman-lua cerig morila=ju  
7331 ire=ldü=jü tende~ aju Taya<sup>n</sup> qan Jamuqa-daca asaq=cuu.  
7332 Te+de yau+d. Qlon~ qoni+d~ cino: hülde=jü qoton-tur gür=tele  
7333 hülde=jü ire=gü metü e+de~ yau+d haran teyin hülde=jü  
7334 ayis=ay kee=n asaq=BA. Jamuqa ügüle=rün Temüjin anda  
7335 min-u dörben noqa+s-i<sup>742</sup> güün-ü miqa-ar tejie=jü  
7336 ginjile=jü huya=ju a=qu~ bü=lee. Te+de qaraul-i bidan-u  
7337 hülde=jü ayisu=qu+n te+de bu=y~ @je. Te+de dörben noqa+s<sup>743</sup>  
7338 <sup>744</sup>{širemün ma<sup>n</sup>lay-ta+n {šiüci qošiu-ta+n {šibüge kele-te+n  
7339 {temür öre-te+n {üldü~ minaa-ta+n {šüüder-i ide=jü {key~ unu=ju  
7340 yabu=d te+de. {Ala=ldu=quy üdür {haran-u miqa ide=d  
7341 te+de. {Gür=ülce=gü üdür {güün-ü~ miqa {günesüle=d te+de.  
7342 }Ginji-ben mültül=de=jü edöe ese@ü: buqsa=ju aqsa+d.  
7343 Bayis=cu teyin šilemelje=n<sup>745</sup> ayis=ay te+de kee=jüüy.

---

739: Kozin treats this sentence as 3 poetic lines, with initials q n š.

740: Poppe (cited by deR4.705) rejected an emendation to bayi[l]du[a] suggested by Ligeti (and accepted by Cleaves 1982.124), showing that the original text could be translated without emendation, bayidu being treated as dative-locative of a \*bayi (CMo. bai [< Ch. p'ai] `signpost, landmark').

741: See note to Y184.

742: YCPS noqaysi emended here (and similar in 7337 and 7344) to noqasi (i.e. noqa<y>si); emendation made by deR72.104 (his lines 7007, 7010, 7015). Note the si sequence here, rather than ši, over a morpheme division.

743: YCPS noqays emended to noqas (i.e. noqa<y>s); see note to 7335.

744: Passage treated as poetry by all five writers, but Cleaves omits (as prose) what is here line 4, and Ligeti lines 4 and 5.

745: Also šilemelije- in 7368, šilemelce- in 7361. DeR4.6-9 cites both shapes, ascribing such alternation to "the ambivalence of the letter č in the Uighur-Mongol script".

7344 Te+de dörben noqa+s<sup>746</sup> ke+d te+de ke:=esü<sup>747</sup> *Jebe Qubilay*  
7345 qoyar Jelme Sübeetey qoyar te+de dörben~ bu=y  
7346 kee=jüüy. Taya<sup>n</sup> qan ügüle=rün Ele te+de doromji-aca  
7347 qolo bayi=yaya kee=jü qoyinaqši iquri=ju aula  
7348 asa=n~ bayi=BA<sup>748</sup>. Teün-ü qoyina-ca duyal=ju toori=qa=ju  
7349 ayis=qu+n-i üje=jü basa Taya<sup>n</sup> qan Jamuqa-daca  
7350 asaq=cuu<sup>749</sup>. Te+de yau+d. <sup>750</sup>Erte talbi=qsa+d unuqan  
7351 eke-yü-en sün kökö=jü eke-yü-en horcin torol=un<sup>751</sup>  
7352 güyi=gü unuqa+d metü yeki=n teyin toori=qa=n ayis=ay  
7353 te+de kee=n asaq=cuu. Jamuqa ügüle=rün Te+de {<sup>752</sup>jida-tu  
7354 ere-yi jiuju {cisu-tu tonog~ tonog=qi+n {üldü-tü ere-yi  
7355 hülde=jü {una=qa=ju ala=ju {üb~ tonaq ab=uqci+n }Uruu+d  
7356 Ma<sup>n</sup>qu+d kee=gde=d te+de. Edöe ese@ü: bayas=cu  
7357 teyin duyal=un ayis=ay te+de kee=jüü. Tende-ce  
7358 Taya<sup>n</sup> qan ügüle=rün Ele teyin bö=esü te+de  
7359 doromji-aca qolo bayi=yaya kee=jü basa qoyinaqši  
7360 aula abari=n bayi=BA. Teün-ü qoyina-ca ayisu=qu+n  
7361 öyese=ggen <sup>753</sup>šibawun metü šilemelce=jü qušura=ju  
7362 ayis=qu+n ken~ bu=yu kee=n Taya<sup>n</sup> qan Jamuqa-daca  
7363 asaq=cuu. Jamuqa ügüle=rün Ene ayis=qu  
7364 Temüjin anda min-u. Gübcin~ beye in-u {<sup>754</sup>širemü-er  
7365 šire=gde=ggen {šibüge-de qadqu=quy-a cölö~ ügeü<sup>755</sup>.

---

746: YCPS noqays emended to noqas (i.e. noqa<y>s); see note to 7335.

747: Kozin treats the next six words as two poetic lines.

748: For discussion of the possible meaning of ele here and below see Street "The particle ele in early Middle Mongolian" Journal de la Société Finno-ougrienne 80.239 (1986).

749: YCPS asacuu emended to asaqcuu (i.e. asa[q]cuu). H62txt.58, 135 specifies this emendation; Pelliot tacitly corrected the text without the usual footnote.

750: Kozin treats the following sentence as five poetic lines, with initials e e e g y.

751: De Rachewiltz (2004.7-9) takes this as iterative/frequentative in -l- of a verb toro- with meanings like 'to run or bump into; stumble' in modern languages, as distinct from tor- 'get stuck' (found in 7380).

752: Kozin extends this poetic passage to the end of the quotation, with lines starting with u e d.

753: Only Cleaves follows Pelliot in showing the next three words as poetry.

754: Kozin begins this poetic passage eight words earlier, with line-initials e and g. He also (improbably) extends the poetry to the end of the following sentence, with initials t ö e.

755: YCPS ügeyü emended to ügeü (i.e. üge<y>ü). See notes to lines 1104 and 6095.

7366 {Temür-iyer **dabta**=qsan {**tebene-de qadqu**=quy-a cölö  
 7367 ügeü<sup>756</sup>. }Temüjin anda min-u öyese=gseñ **šibawun metü**  
 7368 eyin **šilemelje**=n ayis=u@lu. Üje=bey@üü~ ta<sup>757</sup>. *Nayman*  
 7369 nökö+d *Monqol-i üje*=esü ešige-yin qodu üli  
 7370 hüle=ül=küy-ece bü=leey. Ta üje=dkün kee=be.  
 7371 Ene üge-tür Taya<sup>n</sup> qan ügüle=rün Ele amsaari  
 7372 aula abari=n bay=ya kee=jü aula abari=ju  
 7373 bayi=juu. Basa Taya<sup>n</sup> qan Jamuqa-daca asaqa=urun Basa  
 7374 tere qoyina-ca jujaan-a ayisu=qu+n ken bu=yu kee=n  
 7375 asaqa=BA<sup>758</sup>. Jamuqa ügüle=rün Höelün eke niken~ köü-ben  
 7376 güün-ü miqa-bar tejie=jü bü=lee. {<sup>759</sup>Qurban~ alda  
 7377 beye-tü {**qunajin bodo ideši-tü** {**qurban dabqur**  
 7378 **quyaq emüs=cü** {**qurban buqa jidgüüli=jü ayis=u~ @je**.  
 7379 {Qortu güün-i {qotola-yi jalgi=asu {**qoolay-dur-iyän**  
 7380 üli tor=da=yu. }Gübcin ere-yi emgü=esü öre üli jasa=yu.  
 7381 {Aurla=asu **a<sup>n</sup>qua sumu-ban delijü talbi=asu**  
 7382 {**aula alus bü=kü+n** {**harban qorin haran-i üolge=tele**  
 7383 qarbu=yu. {Gere=ldü=gseñ nökör-i {**keer ketüs**<sup>760</sup> bü=gü+n-i  
 7384 {**keyibür sumu-ban deli=jü talbi=asu** {**kelki=tele**  
 7385 ülke=tele qarbu=yu. {Yeke-de deli=jü qarbu=asu  
 7386 {**yisü~ jau+d alda qajar-a qarbu=yu**. {Tata=n deli=jü  
 7387 qarbu=asu {**tabun jau+d alda qajar-a qarbu=yu**.  
 7388 {Güün güün-ece busu {**güröl=gü**<sup>761</sup> ma<sup>n</sup>qus töre=gseñ  
 7389 {Joci\_ qasar kee=gde=yü. }Tere bu=yu~ @je kee=jüüy.  
 7390 Tende-ece Taya<sup>n</sup> qan ügüle=rün Ele teyin bö=esü  
 7391 aula-yin ündür temece=ye. Deegši abari=dqun  
 7392 kee=jü aula abarin bayi=BA. Basa Taya<sup>n</sup> qan  
 7393 Jamuqa-daca asaqa=urun Teün-ü qoyina-ca ayisu=qu+n

---

756: YCPS ügeyü emended to ügeü (i.e. üge<y>ü). See notes to lines 1104 and 6095.

757: See note in line 2155.

758: The q (present in PP) is missing in C.

759: I here follow Ligeti 157 in breaking the following lengthy poetic passage at line 7380; Cleaves and deRachewiltz have no such break, and similarly Kozin -- who additionally starts the passage earlier, at the start of the quotation, with initials h and g.

760: Perhaps divide as ketü-s. Lessing 460 lists a ketü 'beyond, in excess, over...!'

761: For gürölgü manqus 'a coiling dragon-snake' see deR4.715-18.

7394 *ken bu=yu kee=jüüy. Jamuqa ügüle=rün Tere Höelün*  
 7395 *eke-yin nilqa köün; Odcigin helige-tü kee=gde=yü.*  
 7396 Eрте unta=qci oray-a bos=uqci {<sup>762</sup>baruan-aca  
 7397 @ber ülü qocor=uyu. {Bayidal-aca @ber ülü qocoda=yu  
 7398 } kee=jüüy. Taya<sup>n</sup> qan ügüle=rün Teyin bö=esü  
 7399 *aula-yin horgil deere qar=uya kee=jüüy.*  
 7420 (§196) Jamuqa Taya<sup>n</sup> qan-a e+de üge+s eyin ügüle=ed  
 7421 Nayman-aca qaqaca=n böldeyid=cü qar=cu C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan-a  
 7422 kele oro=ul=ju ile:=rün Anda-da ügüle kee=n  
 7423 ügüle=jü ile:=rün Taya<sup>n</sup> qan {<sup>763</sup>üge-tür min-u üküdgü=jü  
 7424 {öede temece=n ürgü=jü qar=bAy. {Ama-ar  
 7425 ala=qda=ju ayu=ju {aula abari=n qar=bAy.  
 7426 }Anda qadauci. Mü+d aula-tur qar=BA. E+de  
 7427 esergüle=gü ciray ügeü+n<sup>764</sup>~ bu=y. Bi bü=rün Nayman-aca  
 7428 qaqaca=BA kee=jü ile:=jüüy. C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan naran  
 7429 jilda bo<sup>l</sup>-da=ju Naqu qun-u aula-yi büselgü=n<sup>765</sup>  
 7430 bayi=ju qono=bAy. Tere söni Nayman buruuyila=n  
 7431 gödö<sup>l</sup>-kü+n bo<sup>l</sup>=un Naqu deere-ce qulad=cu deere  
 7432 deere-en qutaqla=ldu=ju yasu~ hüsü-ben<sup>766</sup> kemkerü  
 7433 una=ldu=ju hünjüü bayi=tala daruca=ju ükü=ldü=jüüy.  
 7434 Manaqaši in-u Taya<sup>n</sup> qan-i muqudqa=ju ab=ubAy.  
 7435 Gücülü<sup>g</sup> qan öere a=qsa-ar cöen güün dayji=n gödö<sup>l</sup>=jü  
 7436 güyce=gde=rün Tamir-a güreele=jüü. Tere güreen-dür-iyen  
 7437 bayi=n yada=ju gödö<sup>l</sup>=jü tutaa=ju qar=cu od=BA.  
 7438 Nayman irgen-ü ulus-i Altay-in ölke-de muqudqa=ju  
 7439 quri=ya=bAy. Jamuqa-lua a=qsa+d Jadaran<sup>767</sup> Qatagi+n

---

762: All writers show the poetry here, but Kozin starts it earlier, after Tere, with two h-initial lines.

763: I here follow Cleaves p. 129; Kozin and deR4.122 extend the poetry to include all but the last word of 7246 (with two a- initial a lines).

764: YCPS ügeyünbüy emended to ügeünbüy (i.e. üge<y>ün büy). See notes to lines 1104 and 6095.

765: Treated by Haenisch as a converb büselgü-n (H62dict.23), 'surrounding' (deR4.122); and seemingly an error for büsele-kü+n or causative büsele-ül-ün (the latter equivalent of CMo. büsele-gül-ün, from busele- (based on büse 'belt, girdle') which Lessing lists as 'bind, gird; encircle, surround...').

766: YCPS hüsü-ban interpreted as front-harmonic (i.e. hüsü-b<a>[e]n).

767: Possibly a plural form in -n.

7440 Salji+ud Dörben Tayiciu+d O<sup>n</sup>gira+d @ki=ed<sup>768</sup> tende @gü

7441 oro=bAy. Taya<sup>n</sup>-un eke Gürbesü-yi C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan

7442 abcira=ul=ju ügüle=rün Ci `Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-un hünir mawuy'

7443 kee=jü ese@ü: bü=lee. Edöe yeki=n ire=be

7444 ci kee=jü C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan ab=ulaa.

7451 (§197) Mün quluqana~ jil namur Qaradal\_ hujaur-a Merki+d-ün

7452 Toqtoa\_ beki-lüe C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan bayi=ldu=ju Toqtoa-yi

7453 gödöf=ge=jü Saari\_ keer-e irge orqa ulus

7454 in-u dawuli=bAy. Toqtoa Qudu Cilaun

7455<sup>94</sup> köü+d-lüe-ben cöen~ güün beye+s-iyen tutaa=ju qar=bAy.

7456 Tedüy Merki+d irgen dawli=qda=run Ua+s<sup>769</sup> Merki+d-ün

7457 Dayir\_ usun öki-yen Qulan\_ qatun-i C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan-a

7458 üje=ül=sü kee=n ab=cu ayis=urun jaura ceri+üd-te

7459 jedgü=gde=jü Baari^day Naya: noyan-tur icura=ju

7460 Dayir\_ usun ügüle=rün Ene öki-yen C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan-a

7461 üje=ül=sü' kee=n ayis=u bi kee=jüüy. Tende Naya: noyan

7462 ügüle=rün Qkin-i cin-u bida qamtu üje=ül=üye

7463 kee=n törid=ge=jüüy. Törid=ge=rün Dayir\_ usun-i<sup>770</sup> Ci

7464 qaqca-ar od=uasü jaura ceri+üd samawuy caq-tur

7465 cima-yi~ @ber ülü a=ul=qu öki~ @taki cin-u

7466 samawura=qu kee=jü qurban üdür qurban söni

7467 törid=ge=jüüy. Tende-ce Qulan qadun-lua Dayir\_ usun-i

7468 ab=uad qamtu Naya: noyan C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan-tur

7469 gür=ge=be. Tende-ce C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan Naya:-yi<sup>771</sup> Yeki=n

7470 töde=e=jü<sup>772</sup> a=BA ci kee=n maši kil<sup>n</sup>la=ju Qata<sup>n</sup>quy-a

7471 maraa=n<sup>773</sup> asaq=cu jasaq bol=qa=ya kee=n asaq=un

7472 bü=küy-tür Qulan qadun ügüle=rün Naya ügüle=lee.

7473 `C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan-u yeke~ noyan~ bu=yu bi. Bida qamtu öki

---

768: See note to line 2357.

769: YCPS Hoas Merkid is said to be "a mistake for U'as Merkid" (deR4.123), the first word being Uas (= Ua+s) in my transcription. Pelliot 72, Haenisch (tacitly H62txt.60), and others following them, had emended that first word rather to Qo'as.

770: Presumably direct object of töridge- rather than a referential object.

771: Referential object.

772: First morpheme division on the basis of CMo. tüde- and tüdege- (Lessing 849).

773: DeR4.727 states that this is the modal converb of maraa-, mariya- 'to watch or observe carefully, pry; to spy' (Cmo. mariya-, miriya-, Lessing 529, 540).

7474 cin-u qahan-a üje=ül=üye. Jaura ceri+üd samawura=qu'  
7475 kee=n idqa=lua. Edöe Nayaa-daca busu+d  
7476 ceri+üd-tür ucira=asu samawu-tur tüyid=küy-tür<sup>774</sup>  
7477 oro=quy@u: a=juu. Qay<sup>775</sup> ene Nayaa-tur ucira=quy  
7478 man-u sayin bol=BA. Edöe Nayaa-daca asaq=tala  
7479 qahan soyurqa=asu te<sup>n</sup>geri-yin jaya:-ar ecige eke  
7480 töre=ül=ügsen mariyan-aca asaq=uasu kee=n  
7481 öci=ül=jüüy. Nayaa asaq=da=run Qahan-aca busu  
7482 niur min-u ügey~ bu=y~ @je. {<sup>776</sup>Qari irgen-ü qacar~ qoa  
7483 öki qadun {qarqam~ sayin aqta ucira=asu  
7484 {Qahan-u-a+n<sup>777</sup> @gü' kee=jü a=mu~ @je bi. }Eün-ece busu  
7485 sedkil min-u bö=esü ükü=sü~ bi kee=jüüy.  
7486 Cırgis qahan Qulan qadun-u öcil jöbšiye=jü mün  
7487 üdür-iyer bö=ed bol=qa=n sori=asu Qulan qadun-u  
7488 öcil adali bol=da=ju Cırgis qahan Qulan qadun-i  
7489 soyurqa=ju taala=BA. Nayaa-yin üge+s adali  
7490 bol=da=ju jöbšiye=jü Ünen üge-tü a=juu kee=n  
7491 Yeke üyile tüši=sü kee=n soyurqa=BA.  
8011 (§198) Merki+d irgen dawlı=ju Toqtoa\_ beki-yin  
8012 yeke~ köün Qudu-yin qadu+d<sup>778</sup> Tügey Döregene  
8013 jirin-ece Döregene-yi tende Ögödey qahan-a  
8014 ög=be. Merki+d-ün jarim+ud ulus  
8015 dayji=ju Tayqal qorqa qorqala=juuy.  
8016 Tende Cırgis qahan jarlıq bol=urun  
8017 Sorqan\_ šira-yin köün Cimbay-i noyala=ju  
8018 jewün qar-un ceri+üd-iyer qorqala=qsa+d  
8019 Merki+d-i eere=ül=ün ile:=bAy.  
8020 Toqtoa Qudu Cilaun köü+d-iyer-iyen cöen beye+s

---

774: YCPS tüyküytür emended to tüyidküytür (i.e. tüy[id]küytür. Pelliot (p. 72) suggested that the text be emended to read either tüydküytür or tüyidküytür (in my transcription); Ligeti and de Rachewiltz accepted the former, but I prefer the latter inasmuch as it avoids the odd consonant cluster ydk (in my transcription). Note, too, CMo. düyid- 'to be held up, hindered, stopped by an obstacle' (Lessing 279b).

775: Qai is "a word expressing doubt ('perhaps, who knows?')" (deR4.727).

776: The line markings here follow Ligeti and de Rachewiltz; Cleaves has only the first two poetic lines; Kozin marks the whole quotation as poetic (with initial q q q e ü).

777: This seems the only reasonably certain instance in the SH of the plural of -ay 'belonging to' (Street 1957.27).

778: YCPS qadund interpreted (by Haenisch, Pelliot et al.) as qadud (i.e. qadu<n>d).

- 8021 dayji=jū qar=uqsan-i Cʳngis qahan neke=jü Altay-in  
8022 ebür-e übülje=jü hüker jil qabur Aray-iyar<sup>779</sup>  
8023 daba=jū od=uasu Nayman-u Gücülüğ\_ qan ulus-ıyan  
8024 ab=qa=ul=jū tere dayji=jū qar=uqsa-ar cöen  
8025 güün Merki+d-ün Toqtoa qoyar neyile=jü  
8026 Erdis-ün Buqdurma hujaur-a qamtud=cu cerig-ıyen  
8027 jasa=jū a=jūuy. Cʳngis qahan gür=cü bayi=ldu=asu  
8028 Toqtoa tende šiba-yin~ sumun-a tus=da=jū una=jūu.  
8029 Köü+d in-u yasu in-u bari=n yada=jū beye-yi in-u  
8030 ab=cu od=un yada=jū teriü in-u hoqtof=jū  
8031 ab=cu yorci=jūu. Tende Nayman Merki+d bol=un  
8032 qamtud=cu bayi=ldu=n yada=jū buruuyla=n gödöl=ürün  
8033 Erdiš ketül=ürün cübtüs=cü ol<sup>n</sup>ki-yan<sup>780</sup>  
8034 usun-tur ükü=ül=jüüy. Cöen qar=uqsa+d Nayman  
8035 Merki+d Erdiš ketül=ün bara=jū qaqaca=n  
8036 gödöl=jüüy. Nayman-u Gücülüğ\_ qan Uyurtay  
8037 Qarlu+ud-ı<sup>781</sup> daari=n Sartaul-un<sup>782</sup> qajar-a Cuy~ müren-e  
8038 bü=kü+n Qara\_ kida+d-un Gür\_ qan-tur neyile=n od=cuuy.  
8039 Merki+d-ün Toqtoa-yin köü+d Qudu Qad Cilaun  
8040 teriü-te+n Merki+d Qa<sup>n</sup>li+n-i Kimca+ud-ı<sup>783</sup> daari=n  
8041 yorci=jūuy. Tende-ce Cʳngis qahan qari=jū Aray-iyar<sup>784</sup>  
8042 daba=jū auru+ud-tur bawu=bAy. Cimbay Tayqal  
8043 qorqa qorqala=qsa+d Merki+d-i muqudqa=jūuy.  
8044 Tende Merki+d-i Cʳngis qahan jarliq bol=urun  
8045 kidu=qu+n-i an-u kidu=ul=jū hüle=gse+d-i an-u  
8046 ceri+üd-te tala=ul=bAy. Basa urida oro=qsan  
8047 Merki+d auru+ud-aca dayji=f=n bos=cuu.  
8048 Auru+ud-tur bü=kü+n kötöci+n bidan-u te+den-i

---

779: De Rachewiltz (2004.125, 126, 730) points out that this place name would correctly be written with l rather than r. But he does not actually emend the text here or in lines 8041 or Y368. Neither does Kurib1.362 etc..

780: Written olonkiyan: see note to 6168.

781: The singular, \*qarluq, doesn't occur in the SH.

782: YCPS Sardaulun emended to Sartaulun (i.e. Sar<d>[t]aulun), with the t found sartaqcin and Sartaqtay (6419, 6441, Y511). So in 6262.

783: The hypothetical singular, \*Kimcaq 'the Kipchaq', doesn't occur in the SH.

784: See note to line 8022.



- 8049 daru=juu. Tende C'ngis qahan jarliq  
8050 bol=urun Tumdaqa<sup>785</sup> ba a=ul=uya' kee=lüe. Mü+d  
8051 @ele dayiji=n a=juu kee=n Merki+d-i jüg~ jüg  
8052 hülüd=tele qubiya=ul=bAy.  
8061 (§199) Mün hümer jil C'ngis qahan jarliq bol=urun  
8062 Sübeetey-i temür telege-tü-yi<sup>786</sup> Toqtoa-yin Qudu Qal  
8063 Cilaun teriü-te+n köü+d-i in-u neke=ül=ün ile:=rün  
8064 Sübe:tey-e C'ngis qahan jarliq bol=ju  
8065 dawu~ bari=ul=urun *Toqtoa-yin Qudu Qal Cilaun*  
8066 teriü-te+n köü+d in-u od=un oqjad=cu qari=n  
8067 qarbuca=ju uqurqa-tu qulan sumu-tu buqu bol=ju  
8068 od=bAy. Te+den-i jüür-tü bol=ju nis=cu  
8069 te<sup>n</sup>geri-tür qar=uasu ci Sübeetey š'rqor  
8070 bol=ju nis=cu ülü@ü: bari=ujyi. Tarbaqan bol=ju  
8071 kimusu-ar-ıyan malta=ju qajar-tur oro=asu  
8072 calir bol=ju coki=ju eri=jü ülü@ü: güyice=gü ci.  
8073 Jiqasun bol=ju Te<sup>n</sup>gis dalay-tur oro=asu  
8074 ci Sübeetey gölmi qubciur bol=ju šiü=jü  
8075 qubci=ju ülü@ü: ab=qu ci. Basa ündür dabaa  
8076 daba=n örgen müren ketül=ün ile:=be cima-yi.  
8077 Qajar-un qola-yi sedki=jü cerig-ün ulaa turu=ay  
8078 üdüüy-e<sup>787</sup> qayirala=dqun<sup>788</sup>. Günesü-ben bara=ay üdüüy-e  
8079 qucia=dqun. Aqta turu=n~ bara=asu qayirala=asu  
8080 ülü bol=uyi. Günesün~ bara=n~ bara=asu quca:=asu ülü  
8081 bol=uyi. Mör-tür tan-u göröesün olon~ bu=y~ @je.  
8082 Alus sedki=jü yabu=quy-tur cerig-ün güün-i  
8083 göröesün-tür bu haul=qa=dqun. Kem~ ügey bu abala=dqun.  
8084 Cerig-ün güün-e günesün-e nemeesün ö<sup>n</sup>ge=gü-yen  
8085 bol=tuqay' kee=n abala=basu kemle=jü abala=dqun.  
8086 Kem-te+n aba-daca a<sup>n</sup>gi-da cerig-ün güün-ü emeel-ün  
8087 qudurqa bu qudurqala=ul. Qadaar ülü  
8088 nemürgen sudalbi=ju yabu=tuqay. Teyin jasa=ldu=ju

---

785: Written tumdaa in 7019; see note there. This word is glossed 'whole, complete', but its apparent equivalent \*tumqaya is 'apparently unattested elsewhere in the written language' (dR4.671).

786: The yi was accidentally omitted from deR72.109.

787: YCPS üdüüy-a interpreted as front-harmonic, twice in this line (i.e. üdüüy-<a>[e]).

788: YCPS qayiralaqun emended (H62txt.62, 117) to qayiraladqun (i.e. qayirala[d]qun).

- 8089 *yabu=asu cerig-ün güün haul=un ker cida=qu.*
- 8090 *Eyin jasaqla=ju bö=ed<sup>789</sup> jasaq~ daba=qsa+d-i bari=ju*
- 8091 *niši=tuqay. Bidan-u jarliq daba=qsa+d-i bidan-a*
- 8092 *tani=qda=qu+n metü+s-i bidan-a ög=cü ire=dkün.*
- 8093 *Bidan-a ülü tani=qda=qu+n olon-i mün tende bö=ed*
- 8094 *mököri=ül=üdkün. {<sup>790</sup>Müren-ü cina^un möse=ldü=kü+n<sup>791</sup> ta. {Mün*
- 8095 *yosu-ar yabu=dqu+n. {Aula-yin cina^un {alqasa=ldu=qu+n*
- 8096 *ta. {Anği-da öere bu sedki=dkün. }Mönke te<sup>n</sup>geri-de*
- 8097 *gücü auqa neme=gde=jü Toqtoa-yin köü+d-i*
- 8098 *qar-dur-ıyan oro=ul=uasu bidan-tur abcira=tala*
- 8099 *yaun~ bu=y; tende~ ta ge:=dkün kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*
- 8100 *Sübeetey-e basa Cırgis qahan ügüle=rün Cima-yi*
- 8101 *ayala=ul=urun bi ücü:gen caq-tur qurban Merki+d-ün*
- 8102 *Uduyi+d-ta Burqan\_ qaldun-i qurban-ta quci=ul=ju*
- 8103 *ayu=ul=da=laa bi. Teyimü öş-te+n irgen-i —*
- 8104 *edöe basa aman~ kelen alda=ju od=cuuy —*
- 8105 <sup>792</sup>*urtu-yin üjüür-e gün-ü hiruar-a gür=ülce=tügey*
- 8106 *kee=n neke=ül=ün üjüüle=n temür telege deled=cü*
- 8107 *hüker jil caura=ul=bAy. Bidan-i ecine*
- 8108 *@ber bö=esü ile metü qolo~ @ber bö=esü oyira*
- 8109 *metü sedki=jü yabu=asu deere te<sup>n</sup>geri-de @ber*
- 8110 *ihee=gde=müy~ @je ta kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*
- 8120 (§200) *Nayman Merki+d-i muqudqqa=n~ bara=asu Jamuqa*
- 8121<sup>95</sup> *Nayman-lua~ bü=rün tende ulus-ıyan<sup>793</sup> ab=da=asu mün tabun nökö+d-tü*
- 8122 *oorcaq bol=ju Ta<sup>n</sup>lu deere qar=cu uqulja*
- 8123 *ala=ju şıra=ju ide=rün tende Jamuqa nökö+d-te-en*
- 8124 *ügüle=jüü. Ken-ü köü+d ene üdür uqulja*
- 8125 *ala=ju eyin ide=mü kee=jüü. Tere uqulja-yin*

---

789: See note to 3081.

790: Poetic lines here are those of Cleaves and de Rachewiltz; Ligeti starts the poetry four words (and two poetic lines) earlier. Kozin, surprisingly, has shows all but the first three words of §199 as poetry, with line-initials as follow: c S T t n S j T t o u b j t c n t q c u j c Š b O q T g a q g q m a c b k c o a k c b q s t c e j b b b m m t a t m g T q b t k S C c b q b q t e a u g g n t h b i o d i k

791: The hypothetical root here (and first morpheme division) based on a Manchu form, as suggested by Poppe: see deR4.739.

792: DeR4.128 takes 8105 as two lines of poetry. (Not so Cleaves or Ligeti.) Kozin, oddly enough, divides virtually all of §199 into purportedly poetic lines.

793: YCPS ulusi-yan (with the glossing division in PP but not C). Note si rather than ši.

- 8126 miqa~ ide=n bü=küy~ jaura tabun nökö+d in-u  
8127 Jamuqa-yi qarda=ju bari=ju Cʀgis qahan-tur  
8128 abcira=juu. Jamuqa nökö+d-te-en bari=ju ire=gde=jü  
8129 Qahan anda-da ügüle. {<sup>794</sup>Qara kerie {qarambay noqosu  
8130 bari=qu bol=BA. {Qaracu bool qan-tur-iyen {qar  
8131 gür=ge=gü bol=BA. {Qahan anda min-u yau ende=gü<sup>795</sup>.  
8132 {Boro~ quladu {borcin~ sono bari=qu bol=BA. {Bool  
8133 nekün {büdün~ ejen-iyen {boso=ju<sup>796</sup> nende=jü bari=qu  
8134 bol=BA. {boqda~ anda min-u yau ende=gü }kee=n  
8135 ügüle=esü Jamuqa-yin tere üge-tür Cʀgis qahan  
8136 jarliq bol=urun Tus~ qan-dur-iyen qar gür=ge=gse  
8137 güün-i ker a=ul=da=qu. Teyimü+n~ güün ken-tür  
8138 nököce=gü. Tus~ qan-dur-iyen qar gür=ge=gse+d haran-i  
8139 uruq-a an-u gür=tele mököri=ül=üdkün kee=n  
8140 jarliq bol=BA. Mün Jamuqa-yin ile ima-yi  
8141 qarda=qsan haran-i mököri=ül=jü ög=bAy.  
8142 Cʀgis qahan Jamuqa-da ügüle kee=n ügüle=rün  
8143 <sup>797</sup>Edöe bida qoyar qamtud=BA. Nököce=yE.  
8144 Öreele kilgün~ bol=ulca=ju a=asu öermicile=n  
8145 qaqaça=n sedki=mü ci. Edöe niken-e qamtu~ a=ju  
8146 {<sup>798</sup>umarta=qsan-iyen durad=qa=ldu=ju {untara=qsan-iyen  
8147 seri=ül=ülce=jü aya. {Öere @ber aʀgi-da  
8148 yabu=asu {öljey-tü qutuq-tu anda~ min-u bü=lee.  
8149 {Ünen ükü=ldü=küy üdür {öre jürüge-ben ebed=gü  
8150 bü=lee ci. {Aʀgi-da @ber öere yabu=asu  
8151 {ala=ldu=quy üdür {auşgi jürüge-ben ebed=gü  
8152 bü=lee ci. }Keli ke:=esü Kereyi+d irgen-lüe

---

794: The poetic line-divisions here are those of Ligeti, apparently followed by Cleaves (who has a stanza break at the end of 8131) and de Rachewiltz; Kozin's lines here are all two words long.

795: For this verb, and these poetic lines, see MostSQP.126-29 (= HJAS 14.376-79 [1951]).

796: Perhaps interpret as bösöjü (MostSQP.163 = HJAS 15.293). The verb recurs in the meaning 'to block (a door)' in X405.

797: Kozin shows as poetry everything from here to line 8190 in §201 (except for the first word of that section).

798: Poetic lines here as Ligeti, Cleaves and de Rachewiltz. But Ligeti extends the poetry to the end of the quotation in 8157 (excluding all of line 8155). Kozin marks all these and yet more poetic lines in §200 and §201.

- 8153 *Qalaqalji+d\_ele+d-te qadqu=ldu=quy-tur O<sup>n</sup>\_qan*  
 8154 *ecige-de ügüle=gse+d üge+s-iyen sere=ül=jü*  
 8155 *ile:=gsen tusa cin-u bu=y~ @je. Basa Nayman irgen-i*  
 8156 *{<sup>799</sup>üge-er ükü=ül=jü {ama-ar ala=ju*  
 8157 *{ayu=ul=uqsan-iyen — 'Adalidqa=tuqay' kee=jü*  
 8158 *kele ile:=gsen cin-u tusa bol=juuy~ @je~ kee=n*  
 8168 (§201) *ügüle=esü Jamuqa ügüle=rün Erte üdür*  
 8169 *ücü:ge+d caq-tur Qorqonaq\_jubur-a qan*  
 8170<sup>96</sup> *anda-lua anda kee=ldü=rün {ülü š<sup>n</sup>ge=küy idee*  
 8171 *ide=ldü=jü {<sup>800</sup>ülü umarta=qu üge+s ügüle=ldü=jü*  
 8172 *{gönjile-de-en qaqa=lda=ju a=qda=juu~ @je. {Köndöledü-de<sup>801</sup>*  
 8173 *köki=ül=de=jü {qaljir=qu-da qadqu=qda=ju {qaqaca=n*  
 8174 *bara=ju {'Qadaqa-tu üge+s ügüle=ldü=lee' kee=n*  
 8175 *{qara~ niur-iyen {qaul=da=quy-aca {qalidun yada=n*  
 8176 *{qan anda-yi-yan {qalaun ciray üje=n yada=ju yabu=BA~ @je*  
 8177 *bi. {'Ülü umarta=qu<sup>802</sup> üge+s {ügüle=ldü=lee' kee=n*  
 8178 *{hulaan niur-iyen {übcı=gde=küy-ece {urtu*  
 8179 *sedkil-tü anda-yi-yan {ünen ciray üje=n yada=ju*  
 8180 *yabu=BA~ @je bi. }Edöe qan anda min-u soyurqa=ju*  
 8181 *nama-yi nököce=ye kee=jüüy. Nököce=küy caq-tur*  
 8182 *ese nököce=ldü=BA bi. Edöe anda {<sup>803</sup>tögörigey*  
 8183 *ulus-i {tübsid=ke=bAy. {'Qari~ tutum-i {qamtud=qa=BA*  
 8184 *ci. }Qan oro cima-dur jori=BA. Delegey edöe*  
 8185 *belen bol=uqsan-tur nököce=jü yaun tusa bol=qu bi.*  
 8186 *Munda anda-yin {<sup>804</sup>qara sönin-ü jewüdün-tür cin-u*  
 8187 *oroqu bi; {gegeen üdür-ün sedkil cin-u jobaaqu bi.*

---

799: These two poetic lines noted by Cleaves and de Rachewiltz, and included with the earlier quote by Ligeti and Kozin.

800: Poetry here as shown by Ligeti, Cleaves, and de Rachewiltz. And included in the longer poetic section of Kozin.

801: See note to 6218.

802: YCPS umataqu emended (by Haenisch, Pelliot, deR72.112, Kurib1.378) to umartaqu (i.e. uma[r]taqu).

803: Poetic lines as in the prior passage.

804: The four poetic lines here are shown by Cleaves and de Rachewiltz. Ligeti has instead five poetic lines from 8188 through 8190 (with line-initial l j j a a a). Kozin's very different treatment, as noted above, shows poetry in all of 8168-8190.

- 8188 {Jaqa-yin cin-u böesün {jah<sup>n</sup>-un<sup>805</sup> cin-u örgesün<sup>806</sup>  
8189 bol=qu bi. }Arbin<sup>807</sup> emege-tü bü=lee bi. Anda-aca  
8190 alus-i sedki=gü bol=un aljias bol=da=BA bi.  
8191 Edöe ene törelki-tür anda ba qoyar-un  
8192 urqu=quy naran-aca š<sup>n</sup>ge=küy naran-tur gü=tele  
8193 nere min-u gü=be~ @je. Anda secen eke-tü. Törülki  
8194 külüg töre=jü erdem+üd-te+n<sup>808</sup> deü+ner-tü örlü+üd  
8195 nökö+d-iyer-iyen dalan qurban aqta+s-iyar-iyen  
8196 bol=ju anda-da hüle=gde=be~ @je. Bi bü=rün  
8197 eke ecige-dece ücü:gen qocor=cu deü+ner ügeü<sup>809</sup>.  
8198 Eme min-u domoqci<sup>810</sup>. Itegel ügeü<sup>811</sup> nökö+d-tü.  
8199 Tewü-ber te<sup>n</sup>geri-ece jayaa-tu anda-da  
8200 hüle=gde=be~ @je. <sup>812</sup>Anda soyurqa=asu nama-yi  
8201 ötör nökc<sup>i</sup>=esü<sup>813</sup> anda jürüge-ben amu=mu~ @je ci.  
8202 Anda soyurqa=ju ala=ul=urun cisu ülü qar=qa=n  
8203 ala=ul~; ükü=jü gebte=esü ölüg~ yasun min-u  
8204 ündür etügen-tür eürE turuq uruq-un uruq-a  
8205 cin-u gü=tele ihe:=jü ög=sü. Hirüer bol=uyu~ @je  
8206 bi. Hujaur öere törülki-tü bü=lee bi.  
8207 Hüleü törülki-tü anda-yin sülder-e daru=qda=BA~ @je  
8208 bi. Ügüle=g<sup>s</sup>en üge+s min-u ülü umarta=n

---

805: De Rachewiltz (deR4.750-51) states that the transcription here is undoubtedly faulty, and that the original form must have been jaying 'inner lapel of a coat'.

806: YCPS örügesün emended to örgesün (i.e. ör<ü>gesün). The emended shape is in the editions of Ligeti (1971), Kurib1.378, and deR72.112.

807: Cf. CMo. arbi 'abundance' and arbin 'plentiful, abundant; abundance' (Lessing 50a, b). The form recurs in Z177; in theory the n could be the plural morpheme.

808: See note to 7192.

809: YCPS ügeyü emended to ügeü (i.e. üge<y>ü). See notes to 1104 and 6095.

810: For domoqci 'prattler, babbler' see deR4.752.

811: YCPS ügeyü emended to ügeü (i.e. üge<y>ü). See notes to 1104 and 6095.

812: Kozin shows all of lines 8200-8210 as poetry.

813: YCPS nögceesü, emended to nögciesü (i.e. nögc<e>[i]lesü); see H62dict.118, and deR4.132, 733 translation as 'die'. Ligeti 170 emended rather to nököceesü (repeated in Kurib1.380), based on the verb meaning 'become (or join as) a companion'.

- 8209 *üde manaqar durad=cu ügüle=ldü=dkün*<sup>814</sup> ta. Edöe
- 8210 *nama-yi*<sup>815</sup> *ötörle=tügey kee=n ügüle=esü e+de@er*
- 8211 *üge+s-tür in-u C'ngis qahan ügüle=rün* Anda
- 8212 *min-u a'ngi-da @ber yabu=ju bidan-tur aman~ düüren*
- 8213 *kelele=jü amin-tur qor sedki=gü-yi in-u ese*
- 8214 *sonos=da=BA~ @je. Sur=da=qu güün bü=lee. Mün ülü*
- 8215 *bol=umuy. Ü*kü=ül=üyE' ke:=esü *tölge-tür ülü*
- 8216 *oro=muy; şiltaan ügey amin-tur qor ki=esü ülü*
- 8217 *joki=muy. K*ündü *mör-tü güün~ bu=y. Ene maqa *şiltaan**
- 8218 *in-u ügüle=dkün. Erte *Coji\_ darmala Taycar**
- 8219 *qoyar-un aduu-ban deermed=ülce=gšen-ü tula*
- 8220 *Jamuqa anda~ ci buruuy-a bulqa~ köyid=cü ire=jü*
- 8221 *Dalan\_ balju+d-ta qadqu=ldu=ju Jerene qabciqay-a qorqo=ju*
- 8222 *nama-yi tende ese@ü: ayu=ul=ulaa ci. Edöe*
- 8223 "Nököce=yE" ke:=esü *ülü bol=uyu. A*min *cin-u*
- 8224 *qayira=asu ese bol=BA ci' kee=n ügüle=dkün.*
- 8225 Edöe *cin-u üge-ber cisu ülü qar=qa=n*
- 8226 *nögcı=e=tügey' kee=n ügüle~ ke:ed Cısu *ülü**
- 8227 *qar=qa=n nögcı=e=jü yasu in-u ile~ bu~ ge:=dkün.*
- 8228 Sayı-tur *bari=dqun kee=n jarlıq bol=BA.*
- 8229 *Jamuqa-yi tende nögcı=e=jü yasu in-u bari=ul=BA.*
- 8241 (§202) Tedüy <sup>816</sup>*sisgey tourqa-tu ulus-i şidurqud=qa=ju*
- 8242 *bars~ jil Onan-u teriün-e quri=ju yisün köl-tü*
- 8243 *caqaan tuq bayi=ul=uad C'ngis qahan-a qan~ nere*
- 8244 *tende ög=bAy. Muqali-da Guy\_ o'n~ nere tende @gü*
- 8245 *ög=be. Jebe-yi Nayman-u Gücülüg qan-i neke=ül=ün*
- 8246 *tende @gü caura=ul=bAy. Mo'nqoljin ulus-i*
- 8247 *jibşiyer=ün~ bara=ju C'ngis qahan jarlıq bol=urun*
- 8248 Ulus *bayi=ul=ulca=n yabu=ldu=qsa+d-ta minqan minqala=ju*
- 8249 *minqa+d-un noya+d tüşi=jü soyurqal üge ügüle=sü kee=n*
- 8250 *jarlıq bol=BA. Mınqa+d-un *noya+d tüşi=n nereyid=ürün**
- 8251 *Mö'nlig ecige Boorcu Muqali guy\_ o'n Qorci İlügey*

---

814: YCPS ügüledükün emended to ügüeldüdkün (i.e. ügüeldü[d]kün). Emendation suggested by Haenisch and Pelliot.

815: For lines 8210-8294, edition C reproduces leaves from the block-print edition dating from the early 15th century ("F").

816: Only Cleaves (following Pelliot's alliteration marking) shows the next four words as poetic lines.

- 8152 Jürcedey Qunan Qubilay Jelme Tüge Degey Tolon  
8253 Öngür Cülgetey Boroqul Şigi\_ qutuqu Gücü Kökücü  
8254 Qorqosun Hüsün Quyardar Şiluqay Jetey Taqay  
8255 Caqaan\_ qoa Alaq Sorqan\_ şira Buluqan Qaracar  
8256 Kökö\_ cos Süyiketü Nayaa Ju<sup>n</sup>soy Gücügür Bala  
8257 Oronartay Dayir Müge Bujir Möngüür Doloaday  
8258 Bögen Qudus Maral Jebke Yuruqan Kökö Jebe  
8259 Udutay Bala\_ cerbi Kete Sübeetey Mönkö Qalja  
8260 Qurcaqus Gewgi Baday Kişiliq Ketey Caurqay  
8261 O<sup>n</sup>giran Toqon\_ temür Megetü Qadaan Moroqa  
8262 Dori\_ buqa Iduqaday Şiraqul Dawun Tamaci Qauran  
8263 Alci Tobsaqa Tu<sup>n</sup>quyday Tobuqa Ajinay Tüyideger  
8264 Secewür Jeder Olar\_ güregen Ki<sup>n</sup>giya^day  
8265 Buqa\_ güregen Quril Aşiq\_ güregen Qaday\_ güregen Cigü\_ güregen  
8266 Alci\_ güregen qurban minqa+d O<sup>n</sup>gira+d Butu\_ güregen  
8267 qoyar minqa+d Ikire+s Öngü+d-ün Alaquş\_ digid  
8268 quri\_ güregen tabun minqa+d Öngü+d. Hoy-in irgen-ece  
8269 a<sup>n</sup>gi-da Mo<sup>n</sup>qol ulus-un minqa+d-un noya+d-i C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan-u  
8270 nereyid=ügsen yeren tabun minqa+d-un noya+d bol=BA.  
8274 (§203) Gürege+d-lüE niken-e basa — C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan jarliq  
8275 bol=urun — e+de nereyid=ügse+d<sup>817</sup> yeren~ tabun minqa+d-un~ noya+d-i  
8276 minqan tüşi=ed bü=rün tere dotora C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan  
8277 jarliq bol=urun Tusa-ta+n-a soyurqal ög=sü kee=n  
8278 «Boorcu Muqali teriü-te+n noya+d-i ire=tügey»  
8279 kee=küy-tür ger~ dotora Şigi\_ qutuqu bü=lee.  
8280 Uri=ra~ od kee=n Şigi\_ qutuqu-da ügüle=esü  
8281 Şigi\_ qutuqu ügüle=rün Boorcu Muqali-ta+n {}<sup>818</sup>ken-ece  
8282 hüleü tusa ki=lee. Ken-ece hüleü gücü ög=ülee.  
8283 Soyurqal ög=de=güy-e<sup>819</sup> bi yaun dutau tusa ese  
8284 bol=ulaa; yaun dutau gücü ese ög=ülee bi.  
8285 {}<sup>820</sup>Ölegetey bü=küy-ece {ündür bosoqa-tur cin-u  
8286 {eriün-tür edüy saqal urqu=tala ös=cü

---

817: YCPS nereyidügsed emended by Haenisch (H62txt.65, 135) to nereyidügsed (i.e. nere[yi]dügsed).

818: Only Kozin marks the next eight words as poetic lines.

819: YCPS ög=de=güy-a interpreted as front-harmonic (i.e. ög=de=güy-<a>[e]).

820: Poetic lines indicated by Ligeti, Cleaves, and de Rachewiltz. Kozin starts the poetry earlier, with the yaun in 8283

- 8287 {öere ese sedki=be~ @je bi. {Ala-tur  
8288 šiegte-ece {altan bosoqa-tur cin-u aju  
8289 {aman-tur saqal edüy urqu=tala ös=cü  
8290 {aljias ese ge:dki=be~ @je bi. {Köl-dür-iyen  
8291 kebte=ül=jü {köücile=n ös=ge=be~ @je nama-yi.  
8292 {Derge-de-en kebte=ül=jü {deücile=n ös=ge=be~ @je  
8293 nama-yi. }Edöe na-da yambar soyurqal ög=ümü  
8294 kee=jüüy. Tere üge-tür C'riḡis qahan Šigi~ qutuqu-da  
8295 ügüle=rün Jirqo-duar deü busu@u: ci. Orocu  
8296 deü-de-en cima-da soyurqal deü+ner-ün qubi-yi-yar  
8297 qubila=ldu. Basa tusa+s-un cin-u tula  
8298<sup>97</sup> yisun~ aldal-tur bu alda=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA. Mönke  
8299 te<sup>n</sup>geri-de ihee=gde=jü gür~ ulus-i jügüle=ül=jü  
8300 bü=küy-tür ci {<sup>821</sup>üje=gü-yin nidün {sonos=qu-yin cikin  
8301 }bol=ju gür~ ulus-i eke-de bidan-a deü+ner-e  
8302 köü+d-te qubi irgen-ü nere-er {isgey tuurqa-ta+n-i  
8303 irice=ül=jü {qabdasun eüde-te+n-i qaqaca=ul=ju  
8304 }qubila=ju ög. Ken @ber cin-u üge buši bu  
8305 bol=qa=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA. Basa  
8306 Šigi\_ qutuqu-yi<sup>822</sup> Gür~ ulus-un {<sup>823</sup>qulaqay-i kese=e=jü  
8307 {qudal-i~ moqa=a=ju<sup>824</sup> }ükü=ül=de=kü+n yosu-ta+n-i ükü=ül;  
8308 alda=ul=da=qu+n yosu-ta+n-i alda=ul kee=n  
8309 gür~ deere-yin jar=qu tüši=be. Basa gür irgen-ü  
8310 {<sup>825</sup>qubi qubila=qsan-i }jarqu jarqula=qsan-i  
8311 }kökö debter bicig bici=jü debterle=jü uruq-un  
8312 uruq-a gür=tele Šigi\_ qutuqu-yin na-tur eyetü=jü  
8313 yosula=ju kökö bicig caqaan caalsun-tur  
8314 debterle=gšen-i bu yeüdke=tügey. Yeüdke=kü+n haran  
8315 aldal-ta+n bol=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA.

---

821: Poetry not marked by Ligeti.

822: This could be a direct object of töridge-, or a referential object; but Cleaves translates a indirect quotation which is also possible here (CL82.144).

823: Poetry not marked by Kozin.

824: First morpheme division based on CMo. moqu- vs. moqur̄a- (Lessing 544a), the latter transitive form referred to as moqor̄a- 'to dull, weaken' by deR4.772.

825: Only Cleaves and de Rachewiltz indicate poetry here.



8316 Šigi\_ qutuqu ügüle=rün Min-u metü orocu deü  
 8317 sacau de<sup>n</sup>gece=n qubi ker ab=qu. Soyurqa=asu  
 8318 široay yourqa-tu balaqasun-aca ög=gü-yi  
 8319 qahan-u soyurqal mede=tügey kee=n öci=jüü.  
 8320 Ene<sup>826</sup> üge-tür Öer-ün beye-ben ci caqla=BA. Ci  
 8321 mede kee=be. Šigi\_ qutuqu öer-iyen  
 8322 teyin soyurqa=ul=un bara=ju qar=cu Boorcu  
 8323 Muqali-ta+n noya+d-i uri=ju oro=ul=juu.  
 8332 (§204) Tende Cır̄gis qahan jarliq bo=ju Mö<sup>n</sup>lig ecige-de  
 8333 ügüle=rün {<sup>827</sup>Töre=gü-lüe töre=ldü=gšen {ös=gü-lüe  
 8334 ös=ülce=gšen {öljey-tü qutuq-tu ci }tusa iheyel  
 8335 cin-u kedü+n @ber a=juu~ @je. Tere dotora  
 8336 O<sup>n</sup>\_ qan ecige Se<sup>n</sup>güm anda qoyar nama-yi arqada=n  
 8337 uri=qsan-tur ayis=urun jaura Mö<sup>n</sup>lig ecige-yin  
 8338 ger-tür qono=asu Mö<sup>n</sup>lig ecige ci ese  
 8339 idqa=asu {<sup>828</sup>huyil=un<sup>829</sup> bü=küy~ usun-tur {hulal=un<sup>830</sup>~ bü=küy  
 8340<sup>98</sup> qal-tur }oro=qda=ay bü=leey~ @je. Tere tusa-yi sayi~ sedki=jü  
 8341 uruq-un uruq-a gür=tele ker umarta=qda=qu. Tere  
 8342 tusa sedki=jü edöe sauri ene nuu hujaur-a  
 8343 sau=:l=ju hon-tur sara-tur sata=ju öglige  
 8344 soyurqal cima-da ög=sü. Malia=n<sup>831</sup> a=suqay —  
 8345 uruq-un uruq-a gür=tele kee=n jarliq bo=BA.  
 8349 (§205) Basa Cır̄gis qahan Boorcu-da ügüle=rün Ücü:gen  
 8350 caq-tur šırqa aqta-ta+n nayman mori+d deermed=te=jü  
 8351 jaura qurban qono=ju neke=jü ayisu=quy-tur  
 8352 jolqa=ldu=bAy~ @je. Ci tende ügüle=rün Be<sup>n</sup>leni=jü  
 8353 ayisu=quy nökö<sup>r</sup>-tür nököce=ldü=sü' kee=n ger-tür  
 8354 ecige-dür-iyen @ber kelen ügeü<sup>832</sup> geü-ben saa=n~ a=run

---

826: For lines 8320-8409, edition C reproduces leaves from the block-print edition dating from the early 15th century ("F").

827: Kozin, unlike other writers, marks each of the first four words as separate poetic lines.

828: Only Ligeti shows the second poetic line here as continuing to the end of the sentence.

829: Locus of morpheme division implied by H62dict.80.

830: Locus of morpheme division implied by H62dict.78.

831: For this word, glossed 'to attend on', see deR4.778.

832: YCPS ügeyü emended to ügeü (i.e. üge<y>ü); see notes to 1104 and 6095.

8355 *nambuqa saulqa-ban*<sup>833</sup> *keer-e bürgü=jü min-u oqatur*  
 8356 *qo<sup>n</sup>qor-i talbi=ul=ju na-da oroq~ šir<sup>n</sup>qula-yi unu=ul=ju*  
 8357 *ci öesün qurdun qubi-yi unu=ju aduu-ban*  
 8358 *ejen ügey talbi=ju yaara=ju keer-ece büed*<sup>834</sup>  
 8359 *nama-lua nököce=jü basa qurban qonoq neke=jü*  
 8360 *širqa aqta-ta+n-i deermed=ügsen güreen-tür*  
 8361 *gür=üesü güreen-ü kijiar-a bayi=qu+n-i*  
 8362 *deermed=ün hülde=jü dutaa=ju abcira=bAy~ @je*  
 8363 *bida qoyar. Ecige cin-u Naqu\_ bayan a=juu. Ci*  
 8364 *qaqca köün in-u yau~ mede=jü na-dur nököce=gü*  
 8365 *bü=lee. Sedkil-ün külüg-iyer nököce=be~ @je ci.*  
 8366 *Teün-ü qoyina sedki=jü yabu=ju bi Belgütay-i*  
 8367 *ile:=jü Nököce=yE' ke:=esü ci {<sup>835</sup>**bökötür qo<sup>n</sup>qor-i***  
 8368 *unu=ju {**boro**~ örmege-ben **bögtür**=cü nököce=n*  
 8369 *ire=esü qurban Merki+d bidan-tur ire=jü*  
 8370 *Burqan-i qurban-ta quci=ul=quy-tur quci=ldu=BA~ @je*  
 8371 *ci*<sup>836</sup>. Basa teün-ü qoyina Tatar irgen-tür  
 8372 *Dalan\_ nemürge+s-te šitüee=ldü=jü*<sup>837</sup> *qono=asu*  
 8373 *qura üdür söni ürgülji jüsere=küy-tür*  
 8374 *söni nama-yi*<sup>838</sup> Noyir~ a=tuqay' kee=n nemürge-ben  
 8375 *nemür=ügse-er min-u deere qura~ ülü~ cuburi=ul=un*  
 8376 *söni daus=tala bayi=ju öreele köl-iyen*  
 8377 *qaqcan-da yeüdke=jü bü=lee ci. Külüg-ün cin-u*  
 8378 *belge a=juu~ @je. Teün-ece busu~ ali külüg-i cin-u*  
 8379 *ügüle=jü daus=qu. Boorcu Muqali qoyar*  
 8380 *{<sup>839</sup>jöb<sup>840</sup> min-u yabu=tala jigtü=jü {buruu-yi min-u*

---

833: YCPS sauluqaban interpreted as saulqaban (i.e. sauk<u>qaban).

834: See note to 5499.

835: Poetry not indicated by Ligeti.

836: DeR4 is unique in interpreting 8369-70 as containing three poetic lines (with initial q-).

837: Seemingly equivalent to the šitüldüjü found elsewhere in the SH. But note also the šitüeleldüjü of 9121.

838: My punctuation assumes (Street13.58) that namayi is taken as a referential object.

839: Only Ligeti's edition fails to mark the poetry here. (Pelliot had no alliteration to mark.)

840: YCPS jö emended (by Haenisch and Pelliot) to jöb (i.e. jö[b]).

8381 *bayi=tala idqa=ju }ene oron-tur gür=ge=be.*  
 8382 Edöe büri+n-ü deere sauri sau=ju  
 8383<sup>99</sup> *yisün~ aldal-tur<sup>841</sup> bu alda=tuqay. Boorcu baraun qar-un*  
 8384 *Altay derelegün-ü tümen mede=tügey kee=n*  
 8385 jarliq bol=BA.  
 8394 (§206) Basa Muqali-da C'ngis qahan ügüle=rün Bida  
 8395 *Qorqonaq\_jubur-un Qutula qan-u debse=gü saqla:r*  
 8396 *modun-a bawu=asu Muqali-da te'ngeri-yin jaarin*  
 8397 *jaa=qsan üge temteg-ün tula bi tende Gütün\_qoa-yi*  
 8398 *sedki=jü Muqali-da üge~ bara=lua. Tewü-ber*  
 8399 *sauri deere sauju Muqali-yin uruq-un uruq-a*  
 8400 *gür=tele gür~ irgen-ü guy\_ o'n bol=tuqay kee=n*  
 8401 *guy\_ o'n~ nere ög=be. Muqali guy\_ o'n jewün qar-un*  
 8402 *Qaraun\_jidun-i derele=gü+n tümen mede=tügey kee=n*  
 8403 jarliq bol=BA.  
 8407 (§207) C'ngis qahan Qorci-da ügüle=rün Jönle=jü nama-yi  
 8408 *ücü:gen bü=küy-ece ejie turuq {<sup>842</sup>noyitan<sup>843</sup> nobši=ldu=ju<sup>844</sup>*  
 8409 *{köyiten<sup>845</sup> köbši=ldü=jü }nendü<sup>846</sup>~ qutuq bol=ju*  
 8410 *yabu=BA~ @je ci. Qorci tere caq-tur ügüle=rün*  
 8411 *Jön jöb bol=uasu te'ngeri-de sedkil-tür*  
 8412 *gür=ge=gde=esü nama qucin eme+s-tü bol=qa'*  
 8413 *kee=lee ci. Edöe jöb tula soyurqa=ju*  
 8414 *e+de oro=qsa+d irgen-ü sayin eme-yi sayin öki*

---

841: YCPS alda-tur emended (by Haenisch and Pelliot) to aldal-tur (i.e. alda[|]-tur).

842: Unlike other writers, Kozin extends the poetry to sentence-end.

843: See next note.

844: Note a passage here repeated from my 1978 Elements in Old Japanese 2.227. 'To judge from...Urdus cognates..., nobsi- was a forceful word: not just 'get wet', but 'get soaked to the skin'. Given the parallelism in [SH 8408-09], köbsi- was very likely 'be chilled to the bone, freeze (in the metaphorical sense)'.

845: Poppe54.295) says this consists (historically) of root kö plus -yi- (forming verbal stems) plus -te- (forming deverbal verbs) plus a suffix -n 'of verbal nouns'. The source he cites (p. 109 of Ramstedt's 1903 Über die Konjugation des Khalkha-Mongolischen) shows that this same suffix was the source of the well-known -n converb.

846: YCPS nendü was tentatively emended to nendüg (i.e. nendü[g]) by Pelliot 80, and accepted by Ligeti and deR72, but not by Kurib1.400. DeR4.784-86 argues that this is more likely a borrowing from Sanskrit nanda 'joy, prosperity' and related forms (Kowalewski 602b).

- 8415 *üje=jü qucin~ eme+s sonqu=ju ab<sup>847</sup> kee=n*
- 8416 jarliq bol=BA. Basa Qorci qurban minqa+d Baari+n-u
- 8417 *deere Taqay Ašiq qoyar-lua Adarkin-u*
- 8418 *Cino+s Töölös Tele<sup>n</sup>g+üd<sup>848</sup> bol=un tüme~ düür=cü*
- 8419 *Qorci mede=jü Erdiš qudus hoy-in irgen-tür*
- 8420 *gür=tele nuntuq darqala=n nuntuqla=ju hoy-in irgen-i*
- 8421 *daru=ul=un Qorci tümen mede=tügey kee=n jarliq*
- 8422 bol=BA. *Qorci-daca eye ügeü<sup>849</sup> hoy-in irgen*
- 8423 *eyin teyin bu yabu=tuqay; eye ügeü yabu=qu-yi yau*
- 8424 *saara=qda=qu kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*
- 8430 (§208) Basa Cır̄gis qahan Jürcedey-e<sup>850</sup> ügüle=rün Erkin tusa
- 8431 *cin-u Kereyi+d-lüE Qalaqaljid\_ ele+d qadqu=ldu=quy-tur*
- 8432 *herü=jü bü=küy-tür Quyildar anda aman alda=BA~ @je.*
- 8433 Üyile in-u Jürcedey ci üyiled=be~ @je.
- 8434 Üyiled=ürün Jürcedey ci dobtul=ju Jirgi+n-i
- 8435 *Tübege+n-i Do<sup>n</sup>qayi+d-i Quri\_ šilemün-i minqan turqa+ud-i*
- 8436 *erki+d ceri+üd-i bügüde-yi daru=ju yeke~ qol-tur*
- 8437 *gür=cü Se<sup>n</sup>güm-ün e<sup>n</sup>gesge~ qacar ucumaq-a:r*
- 8438 *qarbu=qsan-u tula mö<sup>n</sup>ke te<sup>n</sup>geri-de eüden jiloa*
- 8439 *nege=gde=bAy<sup>851</sup>~ @je. Se<sup>n</sup>güm-i ese širqa=qsan bö=esü*
- 8440 *yambar maqa bol=qu+n bü=leey bida. Jürcedey-i*
- 8441 *erkin yeke tusa tere~ bol=BA~ @je. Tere qaqaca=ju*
- 8442 *Qalqa huruu newü=rün Jürcedey-i ündür aula-yin*
- 8443 *nemürE metü sedki=jü yabu=qu bü=lee bi. Tere*

---

847: YCPS a emended (by Haenisch and Pelliot) to ab (i.e. a[b]).

848: YCPS Telengüd, written *te-leŋ-gu-t*; the singular *teleŋ* is found in line X153. DeR72.118 (line 8018) has telengüt here for what should be telenggüt in his transcription system. Haenisch romanized as telenggut (H62txt.67), Ligeti 177 as Telenggüt. Pelliot tacitly – or accidentally – changed what should be Tälänggüt in his system of transcription to Tälängüt, and that tacit emendation was carried over into the de Rachewiltz text. In his English translation and commentary de Rachewiltz used the transcription Telengüt (deR4.139, 786). This whole matter would be utterly trivial were it not for the extreme rarity of Middle Mongolian -ud plurals of nouns ending in *ŋ*, and the uncertainty as to how the final consonant was pronounced when a vowel-initial suffix was added. (Note that Mostaert's Ordos dictionary lists a clan name implying CMo. Telenggüs – with the *s* shape of the plural. For Turkic names for the Teleut [*tälänjät*, etc.] see p. 471 in Räsänen's 1969 Versuch eines etymologischen Wörterbuchs der Türksprachen.)

849: YCPS ügeyü emended to ügeü (i.e. üge<y>ü); see notes to 1104 and 6095.

850: YCPS Jürceday-a interpreted as front-harmonic (i.e. Jürced<a>[e]y-<a>[e]).

851: Probably emend to neegdebAy, assuming that the *g* was taken over from the Uighur script form of this word (CMo. nege- = Khalkha neex). But we find neke- in 6530, and causative nege-ül- in 2419.

- 8444 *od=cu Baljuna naur usula=ra gür=BA~ @je. Jici*
- 8445 *Baljuna naur-aca morila=run Jürcedey-i algincila=ju*
- 8446 *Kereyi+d-tür morila=ju te<sup>n</sup>geri qajar-a gücü*
- 8447 *neme=gde=jü Kereyi+d irge muqdqa=ju dawuli=BA.*
- 8448 *Erki+d ulus o<sup>n</sup>ja=lda=ju Nayman Merki+d ciray-ban*
- 8449 *ququra=ju bayi=ldu=n yada=ju busa<sup>n</sup>=qa=qda=bAy~ @je.*
- 8450 *Merki+d Nayman-i busa<sup>n</sup>=quy soor-tur Kereyi+d-ün*
- 8451 *Jaqa \_ gambu jirin öki+d-ü-en šiltag-iyar öer-ün*
- 8452 *qariya-ta+n ulus-iyar-a:n<sup>852</sup> tumdaq<sup>853</sup> a=qsan a=juu~ @je.*
- 8453 *Nököe-te dayisun bol=un qaqaca=qsan-i Jürcedey*
- 8454 *udu=ju arqa-bar Jaqa \_ gambu-yi qaqaca=n bara=qsan-i*
- 8455 *qarta=ju bari=ju bütüe=jüü~ @je. Tere Jaqa \_ gambu-yin*
- 8456 *ulus-i nököe-te ülüd=ke=n tala=bAy. Jürcedey-in*
- 8457 *nököe tusa in-u ene bu=y~ @je. {Ala=ldu=quy üdür*
- 8458 *{ami-yan öre=gsEn-ü tula {ükü=ldü=küy üdür*
- 8459 *{ölömlē=gsen-ü tula }C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan Ibaqa\_ beki-yi*
- 8460 *Jürcedey-e soyurqa=ju ög=ürün Ibaqa-da ügüle=rün*
- 8461 *«<sup>854</sup>Cima-yi {<sup>855</sup>üligē ceeji cin-u ügeüy üjesgüle<sup>n</sup>*
- 8462 *tala mawuy» ese kee=be~ @je bi. Ebür-tür*
- 8463 *köl-tür oro=qsan jerge-tür jergele=n bawu=qsan*
- 8464 *cima-yi Jürcedey-e soyurqa=run yeke töre sedki=jü*
- 8465 *Jürcedey-in {<sup>856</sup>q<sup>a</sup>dqulduan üdür {q<sup>a</sup>lqa bol=uqsan-u*
- 8466 *{dayisun güün-tür {d<sup>a</sup>lda bol=uqsan-u {q<sup>a</sup>qaca=qsan*
- 8467 *ulus {q<sup>a</sup>mtud=qa=qsan-u {b<sup>u</sup>tara=qsan ulus*
- 8468 *{b<sup>ü</sup>güd=ge=ldü=gsen tusa+s-un in-u }törö sedki=jü cima-yi*
- 8469 *ög=be. Mono qoyina min-u uruq bidan-u*
- 8470 *oro~ sau=ju ene~ metü tusa~ ki=gsen töre~ sedki=jü*
- 8471 *min-u üge buši~ ülü bol=qa=n uruq-un uruq-a gür=tele*
- 8472 *Ibaqa-yin oro~ bu tasul=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*
- 8473 *Basa C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan Ibaqa-da ügüle=rün Jaqa \_ gambu*

---

852: Written ulusi-yaran.

853: YCPS tumtaqa emended to tumdaq<sup>a</sup> (i.e. tum<t>[d]aq<sup>a</sup>); emendation mine (JCS). Cf. 7019 and 8056.

854: Presumably passivized indirect quotation (Street13.60-62).

855: Only Kozin treats the next seven words as two poetic lines.

856: Only Kozin ends the poetry here before tusas-un.

8474 *ecige cin-u cima-da qoyar jau+d inje+s cima-da*  
 8475 *Ašiq\_ temür bawurci Alciq bawurci qoyar ög=cü*  
 8476 *bü=lee. Edöe Uruu+d irgen-tür ci od=urun*  
 8477 *geriyes-iyen na-da inje+s-ece-en Ašiq\_ temür*  
 8478 *bawurci-yan niken jaun-i ög=cü~ od kee=jü ab=uad<sup>857</sup>*  
 8479 *basa Cırğis qahan Jürcedey-e ügüle=rün Ibaqa-yi-yan*  
 8480 *cima-da ög=be. Dörben minqa+d Uruu+d-iyen ci*  
 8481 *mede=jü ülü@ü: a=qu ci kee=n soyurqa=ju*  
 8482 *jarliq bol=BA.*  
 9011 (§209) Basa Cırğis qahan Qubilay-a ügüle=rün {<sup>858</sup>Gücü-tü-yin  
 9012 güjüün {bökö-yin<sup>859</sup> bögse daru=ju }ög=be~ @je ci.  
 9013 E+de Qubilay Jelme Jebe Sübegetey ta dörben  
 9014 *noqa+s-iyen sedki=gšen-tür<sup>860</sup> jori=ul=ju ile:=esü*  
 9015 {<sup>861</sup>Gür'~ kee=gšen-tür {gürü~ kemkel=ün<sup>862</sup> {Qal' kee=gšen-tür  
 9016 {qada~ qaqal=un<sup>863</sup> {cewgen cilaun-i cewül=ün<sup>864</sup> {ceel usun-i  
 9017 *nitulun }a=bay<sup>865</sup>~ @je ta. Qubilay Jelme Jebe Sübeetey ta*  
 9018 *dörben noqa+s-iyen<sup>866</sup> jori=qsan qajar-a ile:=jü Boorcu*  
 9019 *Muqali Boroqul Cilaun\_ baatur e+de dörben*  
 9020 *külü+üd-iyen derge-de-en a=asu qadqulduan üdür*  
 9021 *bol=uasu Jürcedey Quyildar qoyar-i Uruu+d*  
 9022 *Ma<sup>n</sup>qu+d-iyar-a:n urida-an bayi=ul=uasu bügüde*  
 9023 *sedkil-iyen amu=qu bü=lee bi kee=be. Ci*  
 9024 *Qubilay cerig-ün üyile bügüde-yi aqala=ju ülü@ü:*

---

857: YCPS abua emended by Haenisch (H62txt.69), to abuad (i.e. abua[d]).

858: Only Kozin continues the poetry to sentence-end.

859: PP lacks this word.

860: The d (present in PP) is missing in C.

861: Only Kozin unambiguously continues the poetry to sentence-end.

862: Locus of morpheme division implied by H62dict.98.

863: Locus of morpheme division based on CMo. qayal- (Lessing 906a).

864: Locus of morpheme division just a guess.

865: abay is written with the 7-stroke character for bay; this was never changed to ba and hence, exceptionally, is not followed by a note in our text.

866: Erroneously written noyas-iyen in the editions of Pelliot 1949.82 and de Rachewiltz (1972.120; but corrected in A&C of 1997).

9025 *a=qu kee=n soyurqa=ju jarliq bol=BA. Basa*  
 9026 *Bedüün-ü mojqraq-un tula bi mawuyula=ju yabu=ju*  
 9027 *minqan ese ög=be. Ci ima-da jöb~ bu=y~ @je.*  
 9028 *Cima-lua minqala=ju eyetü=ldü=jü yabu=qda=qu*  
 9029 *kee=be. Basa mono qoyina Bedüün-i uqa=d~ @je*  
 9030 *bida kee=be.*  
 9036 (§210) *Basa Cırgis qahan Genige^dey Qunan-a ügüle=rün Ta*  
 9037 *Boorcu Muqali teriü-te+n noya+d-ta Dödey Doqolqu-ta+n*  
 9038 *cerbi+n-e ene Qunan {<sup>867</sup>qara söni gendü cino: {gegeen üdür*  
 9039 *qara kerie bol=ju {<sup>868</sup>newü=qüy-tür ese ünji=gšen*  
 9040 *{ünji=küy-tür ese newü=gšen; {busu<sup>869</sup>~ güün-lüe {buši*  
 9041 *niur ese jübci=gšen {öš-tü güün-lüe {öere*  
 9042 *niur ese jübci=gšen. }Qunan Kökö \_cos qoyar-aca*  
 9043 *eye ügeü bu üyiled=üdkün<sup>870</sup>. Qunan Kökö \_cos*  
 9044 *qoyar-tur eyetü=jü üyiled=üdkün<sup>871</sup> kee=n jarliq*  
 9045 *bol=BA. Köö+d-ün min-u aqa Joci bu=y~ @je. Qunan*  
 9046 *Genige+s-iyen teriüle=jü Joci-yin do:ro tümen-ü noyan*  
 9047 *bol=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA. Qunan Kökö \_cos*  
 9048 *Degey Üsün \_ebügen e+de dörben {<sup>872</sup>üje=gšen-iyen<sup>873</sup> ülü*  
 9049 *niu=n sonos=uqsan-iyen<sup>874</sup> ülü qabci=qu+n bü=lee.*  
 9050 *E+de dörben bu=y~ @je.*  
 9055 (§211) *Basa Cırgis qahan Jelme-de ügüle=rün Jarciu^day ebügen*

---

867: Here I follow Kozin and de Rachewiltz. Ligeti does not start the poetry until the fifth line here, Cleaves starts with the third.

868: Only Kozin and de Rachewiltz (deR4.143) treat the next six words as poetic lines.

869: YCPS bosu emended to busu, i.e. b<o>[u]su. So deR4.795-6, following Ligeti, Ozawa et al., and abandoning Poppe's idea of emendation to bosua (Papers on Far Eastern History 23.129; 1981).

870: YCPS üyiledkün emended to üyiledüdkün (i.e. üyile[dü]dkün). This emendation, here and in the next line, was made by myself (JCS) sometime before 1997, but also appears -- probably independently -- in Kurib1.414, 866. The verb is üyiled-; the imperative form which is apparently assumed by translators should be üyiledüdkün, as in line 5447. (The form actually occurring in our text would have to be the plural of the nomen futuri.)

871: See note to 9043.

872: Only Kozin shows the next seven words as poetry.

873: Cleaves (following Kozin), marks üjegsen..qabciqun (bülee) as poetic lines; de Rachewiltz does not.

874: YCPS divides this sonosuc-saniyan.

- 9056 *gü:rege-ben ü:r=cü — Jelme ölegetey ci*<sup>875</sup> —
- 9057 *Burqan\_ qaldun-aca*<sup>876</sup> *bawu=ju ire=rün Onan-u Deliün\_ boldaq-a*
- 9058 *nama-yi töre=küy-tür buluqan~ nelke ög=cü bü=leey.*
- 9059 *Tere nököce=gse-er* {<sup>877</sup> *bosoqa-yin bool*
- 9060 *{eüden-ü emcü }bol=BA~ @je. Jelme-yin tusa in-u*
- 9061 *olon bu=y~ @je. {*<sup>878</sup>*Töre=küy-lüe törö=ldü=gsen*
- 9062 *{ös=küy-lüe esü=lce=gsen }buluqan nelke*
- 9063 *hujaur-tu ölje-tü qutuq-tu Jelme*
- 9064 *yisün aldal alda=asu ereü-tür bu*
- 9065 *oro=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*
- 9070 (§212) *Basa Cırgis qahan Tolun-a ügüle=rün Ecige*
- 9071 *köün öere minqa ker mede=gü bü=lee.*
- 9072 *Ci ulus quri=ya=ldu=n ecige-dece örö:le*
- 9073 *jiür bol=un jigtü=ldü=jü ulus quri=ya=ldu=qsan*
- 9074 *tula cerbi nere ög=BA~ @je. Edöe öer-ün*
- 9075 *ol=uqsan jöe=gse-iyer-iyen öer-ün minqa*
- 9076 *bol=ju Turuqan-tur eyetü=ldü=jü ülü@ü:*<sup>879</sup>
- 9077 *a=qu~ ci kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*
- 9080 (§213) *Basa Cırgis qahan Öngür bawurci-da ügüle=rün*
- 9081 *Qurban Toqurau+d tabun Tarqu+d Möngetü\_ kiyau-u*
- 9082 *köü ci Öngür Cañsi+ud Bayau+d-iyar ta nadur*

---

875: YCPS has ölegeteece; some emendation seems necessary. The same initial two-morpheme sequence occurs as ölegetey (of a girl) in 1417, but ölegetey (of a boy) in 8285. But whether we consider emending to ölegetey-te[y]-ece (with dissimilation) or ölegetey (with metathesis of e and ey), and whatever we may think of the feminine -tey here (rather than the masculine -tu), there seems no reason for an ablative -(e)ce in this brief sentence. I suspect that the final syllable here is really the particle elsewhere occurring as ci in Middle Mongolian, cu in the Classical language. (See my article on this particle in Central Asiatic Journal 28.119-152 [1984].) The interpolated sentence \*Jelme ölegetey-te[y] ci would thus be 'Jelme was [then] still in the cradle, of course'.

Note that Kurib1.414 writes ölegetee-ce here, without explanation.

876: YCPS has a glossing division one syllable too soon: before rather than after the du.

877: Kozin and Cleaves treat this poetry as four lines, the former continuing it to sentence-end.

878: Only Kozin treats each of the four words here as separate poetic lines, and continues the poetry to the end of the quotation, with line-initial b ö y e.

879: PP lacks this word.



9083 niken güreen bol=ju ci Öngür<sup>880</sup> {<sup>881</sup> **b**udan-tur ese  
 9084 tööri=BA~ @je ci. {**B**ulqa-tur ese qaqaca=BA~ @je  
 9085 ci. {**N**oyitan<sup>882</sup> nobši=ldu=ju {köyiten<sup>883</sup> köbši=ldü=jü  
 9086 yabu=BA~ @je ci. {**E**döe yambar soyurqal ab=qu  
 9087 ci kee=esü Öngür ügüle=rün **S**oyurqal  
 9088 so<sup>n</sup>qu=ul=uasu Bayaud aqa deü min-u {<sup>884</sup> }qari qari  
 9089 tutum-tur bura tara<sup>885</sup> bu=y. **S**oyurqa=:su<sup>886</sup> Bayau+d  
 9090 aqa deü-yen ciul=qa=suqay kee=esü **J**e teyin;  
 9091 Bayau+d aqa deü-yen ciul=qa=ju ci mede minqan  
 9092 kee=n jarliq bol=BA. **B**asa Cırgis qahan jarliq  
 9093 bol=urun Öngür Boroul qoyar baraun jewün  
 9094 eteed ta qoyar bawurci+n ideen tüke=e=rün  
 9095 {<sup>887</sup> **b**araun eteed {**b**ayi=qsan sau=qsan-a  
 9096 ülü duta=ul=un {**j**ewün eteed {**j**ergele=gse  
 9097 ese=gse-e ülü duta=ul=un }ta qoyar-i teyin  
 9098 tüge=e=esü min-u qoolay ülü quci=n  
 9099 sedkil amu=yu. **E**döe Öngür Boroul  
 9100 qoyar morila=ju yabu=ju idee olon güün-e  
 9101 tüge=e=dkün kee=n jarliq bol=BA. **S**auri sau=run  
 9102 yeke tüsürge-yin baraun jewün eteed idee  
 9103 basaala=ju sau=dqun. Tolun-ta+n-lua tüble=n sau=tuqay  
 9104 kee=n saurin jia=ju ög=be.  
 9110 (§214) **B**asa Cırgis qahan Boroqul-a ügüle=rün **E**ke min-u

---

880: Pelliot 1949.83 had erroneously Önggün here, carried over into deR72.122 but corrected in the 1997 A&C.

881: Poetic lines here as shown by Ligeti. (The translations of Cleaves and de Rachewiltz show more lines.) Kozin makes eight lines of it (b e b e b n n k k).

882: See note to 8408.

883: See note to 8409.

884: Only Kozin treats these four words as poetic lines (with q b initials).

885: PP lacks this word.

886: DeR72.122 (following Haenisch) wrote soyurqa[a]su here; Ligeti wrote the same form, but without brackets (as though the fourth syllable were represented in our text, which it is not). I prefer to interpret the text's soyurqasu as containing a long vowel, like the beriede:sü of 9439 (which de Rachewiltz interprets as having a long vowel).

887: Poetry not marked in Kozin or Ligeti. Cleaves (CL82.154) took this as the four poetic lines marked here, whereas deR4.144 may well have thought that the ülü forms started two additional lines.

- 9111 Šigi\_ qutuqu Boroqul Gücü Kökücü ta dörben-i  
 9112 irgen-ü nuntuq-aca {<sup>888</sup>köser-ece ol=ju  
 9113<sup>100</sup> {**k**öl-dür-iyen dürü=jü {**k**öü-cile=n asara=ju tejie=rün  
 9114 {**g**üjüün-ece tan-u tata=ju {**g**üün-lüe sacau+n  
 9115 bol=qa=ju {egem-ece tan-u tata=ju {ere-lüe  
 9116 sacau bol=qa=ju } Köü+d-ü-en man-a nököör seüder  
 9117 bol=qa=su' kee=n tejie=BA~ @je tan-i. Tejie=gšen haci-ban  
 9118 eke-de maqa min-u kedüy haci tusa  
 9119 qari=ul=BA ta. Boroqul na-dur nököce=ldü=jü  
 9120 {<sup>889</sup>**q**urdun ayan-tur **q**ura söni {qoosun ese  
 9121 qono=ul=BA~ @je ci. {Šitüele=ldü=jü bü=küy dayisun-tur  
 9122 {šülen ügey ese qono=ul=BA~ @je ci. }Basa ebüge+s  
 9123 ecige-yi bara=qsad öš-te+n kiš-te+n Tatar  
 9124 irgen-i dorayda=ul=ju {<sup>890</sup>ösöl~ ösö=n {kisal~ kisa=n  
 9125 }Tatar irgen-i ciün-tür üli=jü ülid=ke=n  
 9126 kidu=quy-tur ala=qda=run Tatar-un Qargil\_ šira  
 9127 ourcaq bol=un qar=cu jici yada=ju ölös=cü  
 9128 oro=ju ire=jü eke-tür ger-te oro=ju Sayi  
 9129 eriülsün<sup>891</sup> bu=yu~ bi' kee=jü Sayi eriülsün  
 9130 bö=esü tende sau' kee=gde=jü höreneji iseri-yin  
 9131 alaun-a üjüür-e sau=ju bü=küy-tür Toluy — tabun nasu-tu —  
 9132 qadana-ca oro=ju ire=jü jici güyi=jü qar=cu  
 9133 od=un bü=küy-i Qargil\_ šira bos=uad köüken-i  
 9134 suu-dur-ıyan qabci=ju qar=cu yabu=ju ayis=urun  
 9135 kituqay-ban temtel=jü juqul=un<sup>892</sup> yabu=quy-tur Boroqul-un  
 9136 gergey Altani eke-yin ger-tür dorona  
 9137 sau=ju bü=lee. Eke qayila=ju Köün bara=BA'  
 9138 kee=küy-lüe Altani udaara=ldu=n güyi=jü  
 9139 qar=ulca=ju Qargil\_ šira-yin qoyina-ca güyice=jü  
 9140 šibilger in-u bari=ju nököe qar-ıyar-ıyan

---

888: Our five writers agree on these poetic lines.

889: Three of our writers agree on these poetic lines, disagreeing with Pelliot at one point. Kozin divides the lines differently, with line-initials q q (as Pelliot), then e š š e.

890: See note to 1401.

891: See second note to line 6019.

892: Locus of morpheme division here and in 9141, 9156 implied by H62dict,94.

- 9141 kituqay juqul=un bü=küy qar in-u bari=ju tata=quy-lua  
 9142 kituqay-ban alda=juuy. Ger-ün ümERE Jetey Jelme  
 9143 qoyar muqular qara hüker jemlen ala=ju  
 9144 bü=küy-tür Altani-yin dawun-tur Jetey Jelme  
 9145 qoyar süke bari=ju nudurqa+š-ıyan hulaada=ju  
 9146 güyi=jü ire=jü Tatar-un Qargil\_ šira-yi süke-ber  
 9147 kituqay-bar mün tende ala=juuy. Altani Jetey  
 9148 Jelme qurban köün-ü amin abura=qsan juldu  
 9149 temece=ldü=esü Jetey Jelme qoyar ügüle=rün  
 9150 Man-i ügey bö=esü ötür güyi=jü gür=cü  
 9151 ese ala=asu Altani eme~ güün yeki=n bü=lee.  
 9152 Köün-ü amin-tur qor gür=ge=gü bü=lee. Juldu  
 9153 man-u-ay bu=y~ @je' kee=BA. Altani ügüle=rün  
 9154 Min-u dawun ese sonos=uasu ta ker ire=kü+n  
 9155 bü=leey. Nama-yi güyi=jü güyice=jü šibilger in-u  
 9156 bari=ju kituqay juqul=uqsan qar in-u tata=ju  
 9157 kituqay ese alda=qsan bö=esü Jetey Jelme  
 9158 qoyar-i gür=cü ire=tele köün-ü amin-tur qor  
 9159 ülü@ü:~ gür=ge=gü bü=lee' kee=BA. Ügüle=n~ bara=asu  
 9160 juldu Altani-yin bol=BA. Boroqul-un gergey  
 9161 boroqul-tur nököe kilgün bol=un Tohuy-in  
 9162 amin-tur tusa bol=BA. Basa Boroqul  
 9163 Kereyi+d-lüE Qalqaljid ele+d qadqu=ldu=quy-tur  
 9164 Ögödey sujiasu-ban sumun-a tus=da=asu una=asu  
 9165 Boroqul deere bawu=ldu=ju haq=uqsan cisun  
 9166 in-u ama-ar-ıyan šimi=jü söni qono=ldu=ju manaqarši  
 9167 morin-tur unu=ul=ju sau=n yada=qu-yi sundula=ju  
 9168 Ögödey-in qoyina-ca teberi=jü bögle=gšen cisun  
 9169 šimi=n šimi=n aman-u jabaji-yar hulaada=ju  
 9170 Ögödey-in amin esen gür=ge=jü ire=jü bü=lee.  
 9171 Eke-yin min-u tejie=n joba=qsan haci qoyar  
 9172 köü+d-ün min-u amin-tur tusa bol=BA~ @je. Boroqul  
 9173 na-dur nököce=jü {<sup>893</sup>darbaan uriya-daca {dawun  
 9174 dem-ece }ese qojida=BA~ @je. Boroqul yisün~ aldal

---

893: Ligeti continues the second poetic line to the end of the sentence.

9175 *alda=asu bu alda=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*<sup>894</sup>  
 9190 (§215) Basa ökin urug-ıyan soyurqal ög=üyE  
 9191 kee=be.  
 9193 (§216) Basa Cırgis qahan Üsün ebügen-e ügüle=rün Üsün  
 9194 *Qunan Kökö\_ cos Degey e+de dörben üje=gısen-ıyen*  
 9195 *sonos=uqsan-ıyan ülü niu=n qabci=n jia=n aqu+n*  
 9196 *bü=leey. Uqa=qsan sedki=gısen-ıyen kelele=n aqu+n*  
 9197 *bü=leey. Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-un törö noyan mör beki bol=quy*  
 9198 *yosun a=juuy. Baari+n aqa-yin uruq bü=leey. Beki  
 9199 *mör bidan-u dоторa deere-ece beki Üsün*  
 9200 *ebügen bol=tuqay. Beki ergüed {<sup>895</sup>caqaan  
 9201 *deel emüs=cü {caqa:n aqta unu=ul=ju*  
 9202 *{sauri deere {sau=:l=ju taki=ju }basa hon sara*  
 9203 *sata=ju teyin a=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*  
 9207 (§217) Basa Cırgis qahan ügüle=rün *Quyildar anda*  
 9208 *qadquldu-an-tur ami-yan örejü urida aman*  
 9209 *nee=gısen-ü tusa-yin tula uruq-un uruq-a*  
 9210 *gür=tele önöci+d-ün abliqa ab=un atuqay*  
 9211 kee=n jarliq bol=BA.  
 9214 (§218) Basa Cırgis qahan Caqa.n\_ qoa-yin köün  
 9215<sup>101</sup> *Narin\_ tooril-a ügüle=rün Ecige cin-u *Caqa:n\_ qoa min-u*  
 9216 *emüne kicie=jü qadqu=ldu=qu bol=un*  
 9217 *Dalan\_ balju+d-ta qadqu=ldu=quy-tur Jamuqa-da*  
 9218 *ala=qda=lua. Edöe *Tooril ecige-yü-en*  
 9219 *tusa önöci+d-ün abliqa ab=tuqay kee=gde=jü*  
 9220 *Tooril ügüle=rün Soyurqa=*asu Negü+s aqa*  
 9221 *deü min-u qari~ tutum bura~ tara~ bu=y.*  
 9222 *Soyurqa=*asu Negü+s aqa~ deü-yü-en*  
 9223<sup>102</sup> *ciul=qa=suqay kee=esü Cırgis qahan jarliq bol=urun*  
 9224 *Teyin *bö=esü Negü+s aqa deü-yen ciul=qa=ju*  
 9225 *ci uruq-un uruq-a gür=tele mede=jü ülü@ü:*  
 9226 *a=qu kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*  
 9230 (§219) Basa Cırgis qahan Sorqan\_ şıra-da ügüle=rün Nama-yi  
 9231 *ücü:gen caq-tur Tayiciu+d-un Tarqutay\_ kirultuq********

---

894: At this point a footnote in de Rachewiltz 2004.148 says: "There follows a sentence identical to that in §215. This is due to a scribal error and should be deleted". This conclusion is explained on pages 806-07.

895: Not marked as poetry by Cleaves. Kozin takes the last four words as a single poetic line.

9232 *aqa deü-de nayita=ju bari=asu tende`Aqa deü-de-en*  
 9233 *nayita=qda=mu' kee=n Sorqan\_ šira Cilaun Cimbay*  
 9234 *köü+d-iyer-iyen Qadaan-i ökin-iyen asara=ul=ju*  
 9235 *niu=ju a=ju nama-yi talbi=ju ile:=BA~ @je ta. Tere tusa*  
 9236 *sayin-i tan-u sedki=jü {<sup>896</sup>qara söni jewüdün-tür*  
 9237 *{gegeen üdür ceeji-tür }sedki=jü yabu=BA~ @je bi.*  
 9238 *Ta~ @je na-dur Tayiciu+d-aca udaan-a ire=BA~ @je.*  
 9239 *Edöe bi tan-i soyurqa=asu yambar soyurqal*  
 9240 *taala=qu+n ta kee=BA. Sorqan\_ šira Cilaun Cimbay*  
 9241 *köü+d-iyer-iyen bol=un ügüle=rün Soyurqa=asu nuntuq*  
 9242 *darqala=su. Merki+d-ün qajar Sele<sup>n</sup>ge-yi nuntuqla=ju*  
 9243 *darqala=su. Basa busu soyurqal C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan mede=tügey*  
 9244 *kee=BA. Teün-tür C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan ügüle=rün Merki+d-ün*  
 9245 *qajar Sele<sup>n</sup>ge-yi nuntuqla=ju nuntuq @ba darqala=dqun~ @gü.*  
 9246 *Uruq-un uruq-a gür=tele qorcila=ul=ju ötögle=ül=jü*  
 9247 *darqala=dqun. Yisün aldal-tur ereü-tür*  
 9248 *bu oro=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA. Basa C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan*  
 9249 *Cilaun Cimbay qoyar-i soyurqa=run Erte Cilaun Cimbay*  
 9250 *qoyar-un ügüle=gse<sup>n</sup> üge+s sedki=jü ker qanda=qu.*  
 9251 *Ta Cilaun Cimbay ta qoyar {<sup>897</sup>}sedkil-iyen ügüle=kü+n*  
 9252 *bö=esü dutauy-ban quyi=qu+n bö=esü }jaura*  
 9253 *güün-e bu kelele=dkün. Öer-ün beye+s-iyer ama-ar*  
 9254 *na-dur ta {öesü+d sedki=gse<sup>n</sup>-iyen kelele=dkün.*  
 9255 *Dutau-yu-an öesün quyi=dqun kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*  
 9256 *Basa Sorqan\_ šira Baday Kišiliq ta darqa+d basa*  
 9257 *darqala=run {<sup>898</sup>olon dayisun-tur hawul=ju {olja ol=uasu*  
 9258 *{ol=uqsa-ar ab=udqun {oroa göröesün-tür*  
 9259 *abala=asu {ala=qsa-ar ab=udqun } kee=n*  
 9260 *jarliq bol=BA. Sorqan\_ šira kee=esü Tayiciu+d-un*  
 9261 *Tödege-yin haran a=juuy~ @je. Baday Kišiliq qoyar*  
 9262 *kee=esü Ceren-ü aduuci+n a=juuy~ @je. Edöe min-u*  
 9263 *turuq qorcila=ul=ju ötögle=ül=jü darqala=n*

---

896: Only Ligeti fails to mark the poetry here, and Pelliot had no alliteration to mark.

897: Cleaves' translation (uniquely) shows two poetic lines in 9251-2 and two in 9254-5, each passage apparently six words long.

898: Ligeti fails to mark the poetry here, and Pelliot doesn't show alliteration.

- 9264 *jirqa=dqun kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*
- 9273 (§220) Basa C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan Nayaa-da ügüle=rün *Şirgö:tü ebügen*
- 9274 *Alaq Nayaa köü+d-lüe-ben tan-lua Tarqutay*
- 9275 *kiriltug-i bidan-tur bari=ju ayis=urun jaura*
- 9276 *Qutuqul nuu-da gür=cü tende Nayaa ügüle=rün*
- 9277 Tus~ qan-ıyan ker tebci=jü bari=ju od=qu+n bida'
- 9278 *kee=jü tebci=n yada=ju talbi=ju ile:=jü Şirgö:tü*
- 9279 *ebügen Alaq Nayaa köü+d-lüe-ben ire=jü tende*
- 9280 *Nayaa \_biljiur ügüle=rün Tus~ qan-ıyan*
- 9281<sup>103</sup> *Tarqutay\_ kiriltug-i qarta=ju ayis=urun jici tebci=n yada=ju*
- 9282 *talbi=ju ile:=jü ba C<sup>n</sup>gis qaana-gücü ög=üre ire=BA.*
- 9283 <sup>899</sup>Qan-ıyan qarta=ju ire=esü " Tus~ qan-ıyan qarta=qsa+d<sup>900</sup>
- 9284 *haran mono qoyina ker itege=gde=kü+n e+de'*
- 9285 *kee=gde=kü+n" kee=jüü. Qan-ıyan tebci=n yada=BA'*
- 9286 *ke:=esü tende Tus~ qan-ıyan tebci=n yada=qsan yosu*
- 9287 *yeke~ törö-yi sedki=jüüy' kee=n üge in-u jöbşiye=jü<sup>901</sup> Yeke<sup>902</sup>*
- 9288 *üyile-tür tüşi=ye' kee=leey. Edöe Boorcu-da*
- 9289 *baraun qar-un tümen mede=tügey. Muqali-da guy~ o<sup>n</sup> nere ög=cü*
- 9290 *jewün qar-un tümen mede=ül=BA. Edöe Nayaa tüb-ün tümen*
- 9291 *mede=tügey kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*
- 9295 (§221) Basa *Jebe Sübeetey qoyar öer-ün ol=uqsa+d*
- 9296 *jöe=gse-er-ıyen minqala=tuqay kee=BA.*
- 9298 (§222) Basa *Degey qonici-da bügdeül-i ciul=qa=ju*
- 9299 *minqa mede=ül=BA.*
- 9301 (§223) Basa *Gücügür moci-da irge duta=qda=ju endece*
- 9302 *tende-ce qubci=ju — Jadarana-aca Mulqalqu jük-ıyer*
- 9303 *nököce=lüe — Gücügür Mulqalqu qoyar niken-e*
- 9304 *minqala=ju eyetü=ldü=jü a=dqun~ kee=BA.*
- 9307 (§224) Ulus bayı=ul=ulca=qsa+d jobo=ldu=qsa+d-i
- 9308 *minqa+d-un noya+d bol=qa=ju minqa minqala=ju minqa+d-un jau+d-un*

---

899: For the syntax here (with the sole instance of four levels of quotation) see Street13.7, 72.

900: The d (present in PP) is missing in C.

901: The b (present in PP) is missing in C.

902: YCPS niken was emended to yeke by de Rachewiltz, who thought niken "almost certainly an early scribal error...[found also in the Altan Tobchi]...for yeke, the two words bearing a very close resemblance to each other [in their Uighur script form]" (deR4.815).

9309 harba+d-un noya+d tüši=jü tüme<sup>903</sup> tümele=jü tüme+d-ün~ noya+d  
 9310 tüši=jü tüme+d-ün minqa+d-un noya+d-ta soyurqal ög=te=kü+n  
 9311 metü+s-e soyurqal ög=cü soyurqal jarliq~ bof=qu+n-a  
 9312 bof=ju C'ngis qahan jarliq bof=urun Urida  
 9313 nayan kehteülsü-tü dalan turqaq kešig-te+n-tü bü=lee.  
 9314 Edöe mö<sup>n</sup>ke te<sup>n</sup>geri-yin gücün-tür te<sup>n</sup>geri qajar-a  
 9315 gücü~ awqa neme=gde=jü gür~ ulus-i šidurqud=qa=ju  
 9316 qaqa jilua-dur-ıyan oro=ul=uqsan-tur edöe  
 9317 na-dur kešig-te+n turqaq minqa+d minqa+d-aca ilqa=ju  
 9318 oro=ul=udqun. Oro=ul=urun kehteül qorci+n turqaq  
 9319 oro=ul=urun tümen düür=ge=n oro=ul=udqun kee=n  
 9320 jarliq bof=BA. Basa C'ngis qahan kešig-te+n ilqa=ju  
 9321 oro=ul=qu-yi jarliq minqa+d minqa+d-ta tu<sup>n</sup>qa=run Bidan-tur  
 9322 kešig-te+n oro=ul=urun tüme+d-ün minqa+d-un jau+d-un  
 9323 noya+d-un~ köü+d düri-yin güün-ü~ köü+d oro=run erdem+üd-te+n<sup>904</sup>  
 9324 šil~ sayi+d-i bidan-u dergede yabu=qu+n metü+s-i oro=ul=tuqay.  
 9325 Minqa+d-un noya+d-un köü+d-i oro=ul=urun harban nökö+d-tü  
 9326 niken deü in-u daqa=ul=ju ire=tügey. Jau+d-un noya+d-un  
 9327 köü+d-i oro=ul=urun tabun nökö+d-tü niken deü-yi  
 9328 daqa=ul=ju ire=tügey. Harba+d-un noya+d-un köü+d-i  
 9329 oro=ul=urun düri-yin güün-ü köü+d-i oro=ul=urun qurban  
 9330 nökö-r-tü niken~ @gü deü-yi daqa=ul=ju hujaur-aca ulaa  
 9331 gücü jasa=ju ire=tügey. Bidan-tur dergede yabu=ul=qu+n-i  
 9332 bökele=rün minqa+d-un noya+d-un köü+d-te harban nökö+d  
 9333 hujaur minqan jaun-aca qubci=ju ög=tügey. Ecige-yen  
 9334 ög=ügsen qubi~ kešig bö=esü in-u beye qa+d-ıyar<sup>905</sup>  
 9335 ol=uqsan jöe=gsen ere aqta kedüy bö=esü in-u  
 9336 emcü qubi-aca a<sup>n</sup>gi-da bidan-u kemle=gsen kem-ıyer qubci=ju  
 9337 teyin qubci=ju jasa=ju ög=tügey. Jau+d-un noya+d-un köü+d-te  
 9338 tabun nökö+d harba+d-un noya+d-un köü+d-te düri-yin güün-ü  
 9339 köü+d-te qurban nökö+d~ mün~ @gü yosu-ar in-u emcü

---

903: YCPS has tüšijü tümelejü; Haenisch emended by adding tümen (H62txt.73, 118) between these two words. Ligeti 191 included that same form, but failed to put it within square brackets (added by Kuril.440 to indicate an emendation). Pelliot made no such addition. DeR72.127 added [tüme] between these words.

904: See note to 7192.

905: beye qad-ıyer 'by himself'. Though qad is probably historically a plural of qar 'hand', Cleaves in HJAS 12.126 (fn. 222) notes that reflexes of beye qad (with voiceless q) occur as an idiom in Urdu and Khalkha, meaning 'stature'.

9340<sup>104</sup> qubi-aca a<sup>n</sup>gi-da mün teyin~ qubci=ju ög=tügey kee=n  
9341 jarliq bol=BA. Minqa+d-un jau+d-un harba+d-un noya+d  
9342 olon güün bidan-u ene jarliq gür=ge=ül=üed  
9343 sonos=uad bü=rün daba=qu+n haran aldal-ta+n bol=tuqay.  
9344 Bidan-tur keşig oro=ul=da=qu+n haran bultari=ju  
9345 ülü bol=qu+n haran bidan-u dergede yabu=quy-ban  
9346 berkeşiye=esü busu-yi oro=ul=ju tere güün-i  
9347 ereüle=jü nidün-ü ecine qolo~ qajar-a ile:=yE kee=n  
9348 jarliq bol=BA. Dotona bidan-u dergede yabu=ju  
9349 sur=ulca=su kee=jü bidan-tur ire=kü+n haran-i~ bu  
9350 idqa=tuqay kee=bAy.  
9359 (§225) C<sup>n</sup>gis qaan-u jarliq bol=uqsa-ar minqa+d-aca  
9360 ilqa=ju jau+d-un harba+d-un noya+d-un köü+d-i mün~ @gü  
9361 jarlig-iyar<sup>906</sup> ilqa=ju qar=qa=ju ire=jü — urida nayan  
9362 kebteül bü=leey — nayman jau+d bol=qa=bAy. Nayman jau+d  
9363 deere minqa düür=ge=tügey kee=bAy. Kebteül-tür  
9364 oro=qu+n-i bu idqa=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA.  
9365 Kebteül-i Yeke\_ neürin aqala=ju minqa mede=jü a=tuqay  
9366 kee=n jarliq bol=BA. Urida dörben jau+d qorci+n  
9367 ilqa=bAy. Ilqa=ju Qorci+n-i Jelme-yin köün  
9368 Yisün\_ tee aqala=ju Tüge-yin köün Bügidey-lüe  
9369 eyetü=ldü=jü a=tuqay kee=BA. Turqa+ud-lua  
9370 qorci+n keşig keşig-tür oro=ldu=run Yisün\_ tee  
9371 niken keşig qorci+n-i aqala=ju oro=tuqay. Bügidey niken keşig  
9372 qorci+n-i aqala=ju oro=tuqay. Horqudaq niken keşig  
9373 qorci+n-i aqala=ju oro=tuqay. Lablaqa niken keşig qorci+n-i  
9374 aqala=ju oro=tuqay. Qor aqsa=quy-a turqa+ud-un keşig  
9375 keşig qorci+n-yan teyin aqala=ju oro=ul=tuqay. Qorci+n-i  
9376 minqan düür=ge=jü Yisün\_ tee aqala=ju a=tuqay kee=n  
9377 jarliq bol=BA.  
9383 (§226) Urida Ögele cerbi-lüe oro=qsa+d turqa+ud  
9384 deere minqan düür=ge=jü Boorcu-yin uruq-aca  
9385 Ögele cerbi mede=tügey kee=bAy. Niken minqan turqa+ud-i  
9386 Muqali-yin uruq-aca Buqa niken minqan turqa+ud-i mede=tügey  
9387 kee=bAy. Iliige-yin uruq-aca Alciday-i niken minqan  
9388 turqa+ud-i mede=tügey kee=bAy. Niken minqan turqa+ud-i

---

906: YCPS jarligiya emended (H62txt.74 et al.) to jarligiyar (i.e. jarligiya[r]). There is extra space in the text for the omitted r.



9389 *Dödey cerbi mede=tügey. Niken minqan turqa+ud-i Doqolqu*  
 9390 *cerbi mede=tügey kee=bAy. Niken minqan turqa+ud-i*  
 9391 *Jürcedey-in uruq-aca Canay mede=tügey. Niken minqan*  
 9392 *turqa+ud-i Alci-yin uruq-aca Aqutay mede=tügey.*  
 9393 *Niken minqan turqa+ud-i Arqay\_ qasar niken minqan*  
 9394 *ilqa=qsan baatu+d-i mede=jü olon üdür turqaq*  
 9395 *bol=tuqay. Qadqulduan üdür urida bayi=ju baatu+d*  
 9396 *bol=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA. Minqa+d minqa+d-aca*  
 9397 *ilqa=ju ire=gse+d nayman minqa+d turqa+ud*  
 9398 *bol=BA. Kebteül qorci+n-lua qoyar @gü minqa+d*  
 9399 *bol=bAy. Tümen kešig-te+n bol=BA. Cırgis qahan*  
 9400 *jarliq bol=urun Bidan-u caada tümen kešig-te+n-i*  
 9401 *bökele=jü yeke qol~ bol=un atuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*  
 9408 (§227) *Basa Cırgis qahan jarliq bol=ju turqa+ud-un dörben*  
 9409 *keši+üd-ün ötögüle=gü+n-i tüši=rün Buqa niken kešig*  
 9410 *kešig-te+n-i mede=jü kešig-te+n-i jasa=ju oro=tuqay.*  
 9411 *Alciday niken kešig kešig-te+n-i mede=jü kešig-te+n-i*  
 9412 *jasa=ju oro=tuqay. Dödey cerbi niken kešig kešig-te+n-i*  
 9413 *mede=jü kešig-te+n-i jasa=ju oro=tuqay. Doqolqu cerbi*  
 9414 *niken kešig kešig-te+n-i mede=jü kešig-te+n-i jasa=ju*  
 9415 *oro=tuqay kee=n dörben keši+üd-ün ötögü+s-i tüši=jü*  
 9416 *kešig oro=quy jarliq turqa=run Kešig oro=run*  
 9417 *kešig-ün noyan öer-tür-iyen kešigle=gse+d*  
 9418 *kešig-te+n-i bügüd=ke=jü kešig oro=ju qurban*  
 9419 *qono=ldu=ju yeüdke=ldü=tügey. Kešig-tü güün kešig*  
 9420 *hoara=asu tere kešig oara=qsan kešig-tü-yi*  
 9421 *qurban berie+s süyi=tügey. Mün kešig-tü basa nököe-te*  
 9422 *kešig hoara=asu doloan berie+s süyi=tügey. Basa*  
 9423 *mün güün beye~ qa+d<sup>907</sup> ebecin ügey kešig-ün noya+d-tur eye*  
 9424 *ügeü basa mün kešig-tü qurban-ta kešig hoara=asu*  
 9425 *qucin doloan berie+s söyü=ed — bidan-tur yabu=quy-ban*  
 9426 *berkešiyen a=juu — ecine qolo qajar-a ile:=yE kee=n*  
 9427 *jarliq bol=BA. Keši+üd-ün ötögü+s qutaar<sup>908</sup> qutaar*  
 9428 *kešig-tür ene jarliq kešig-te+n-e sonos=qa=dqun<sup>909</sup>.*

907: See note in line 9334.

908: This form occurs six times in the SH; the expected qutuar appears only three times.

909: C has no glossing division in this word; PP has one after the d.

- 9429 Ese sonos=qa=asu<sup>910</sup> keši+üd-ün ötögü+s aldal-ta+n  
 9430 bol=tuqay. Jarlıq sonos=uad bü=rün daba=asu jarlıq-un  
 9431 yosu-ar kešig hoara=asu kešig-te+n aldal-ta+n  
 9432 bol=tuqay kee=n jarlıq bol=BA. Keši+üd-ün ötögü+s  
 9433 Aqala=qda=BA @ele' kee=n sacau+n oro=qsa+d min-u  
 9434 kešig-te+n-i na-daca eye ügey bu honcid=udqun<sup>911</sup>. Jasaq<sup>912</sup>  
 9435 könde=esü na-da jia=dqun. Mököri=ül=kü+n yosu-ta+n bö=esü  
 9436 bida mököri=ül=üd<sup>913</sup>~ @je. Niši=qda=qu+n yosu-ta+n bö=esü  
 9437 kebte=ül=jü niši=d~ @je. Aqala=BA @ele' kee=jü sacau+n  
 9438 kešig-te+n-i min-u öer-ün qar~ köl gür=ge=jü  
 9439 beriede=:sü berie-yin qariu berie~ @gü nudurqa-yin qariu  
 9440 nudurqa~ @gü qari=ul=tuqay kee=BA.  
 9449 (§228) Basa Cırgis qahan jarlıq bol=urun Qadana-du+s  
 9450 minqa+d-un noya+d-aca min-u kešig-tü deere~ bu=y~ @je.  
 9451 Qadana-du+s jau+d-un harba+d-un noya+d-aca min-u  
 9452 kešig-tü-yin kötöci+n deere~ bu=y~ @je. Min-u kešig-te+n-tür  
 9453 qadana-du+s minqali+ud sacau+n bol=ju de<sup>n</sup>gece=n min-u  
 9454 kešig-tü-tür kere=ldü=esü minqali+ud-ay güün-i ereüle=yE  
 9455 kee=n jarlıq bol=BA.  
 9458 (§229) Basa Cırgis qahan jarlıq bol=urun kešig keši+üd-ün  
 9459 noya+d-ta jarlıq turqa=run Qorci+n turqa+ud kešig  
 9460 oro=ju üdür-ün yabudal jüg~ jüg mör~ mör-tür-iyen  
 9461 yabu=ju naran-u qal-tay-a kebteül-e jayila=ju qada-na  
 9462 qar=cu qono=tuqay. Bidan-tur söni kebteül qonan~ a=tuqay.  
 9463 Qorci+n qor bawurci+n ayaqa~ saba kebteül-e taul=ju  
 9464 od=tuqay. Qadana qono=qsa+d qorci+n turqa+ud bawurci+n  
 9465 bidan-i šülen ide=tele kirüe-tür sau=ju kebteül-tür  
 9466 kelecile=jü šülen ide=n bara=asu qorci+n qor-tur  
 9467 turqaq saurin-dur-ıyan bawurci+n ayaqa~ saba-dur-ıyan  
 9468 taara=ldu=tuqay. Kešig kešig oro=qu+n mün mün

---

910: C has no glossing division in this word; PP has one before the qa, which probably belonged after that syllable.

911: De Rachewiltz refers (deRr826) to "an obsolete verb honçit- (onjit- in §278) 'to reprimand'", with references to other sources. But line Z457 in §278 actually shows only onjituqay (deR72.170, line 11728), with the ending -tuqay. H62dict.125 had tentatively suggested emendation to onji[d]-tuqay there.

912: The q (present in PP) is missing in C.

913: YCPS mököriülüje emended to mököriülüdje (i.e. mököriülü[d]je). Emendation mine (JCS, by 1997), and that also of Kurib1.452. Cf. the very similar sentence in Z458.

9469 *yosu-ar ene qauli-bar teyin ki=tügey kee=n*  
 9470 *jarliq bol=BA. Naran širge=gsen-ü qoyina ordo-yin*  
 9471 *qoyina-un urida-un ketügelje=n yabu=qu güün-i bari=ju*  
 9472 *kehteül bari=ju qono=ju manaqari kehteül üge+s*  
 9473 *in-u asaq=tuqay. Kebteül kešig yeüdke=ldü=rün*  
 9474 *belge an-u daul=ju oro=ju ire=tügey. Yeüdge=jü*  
 9475 *qar=qu+n kehteül taul=ju @gü qar=cu od=tuqay*  
 9476 *kee=bAy. Kebteül söni ordo horci=n gebte=jü*  
 9477 *eüten daru=ju bayi=qsad kehteül söni oro=qu+n*  
 9478 *haran-i eki+d an-u dalbaru mürü+s an-u bau=tala*  
 9479 *cabci=ju oor=udqun. Yaaral kele-te+n haran söni*  
 9480 *ire=esü kehteül-tür kelele=jü ger-ün ümerekce*  
 9481 *kehteül-lüe qamtu bayi=ju kelele=ül=tügey kee=BA.*  
 9482 *Kebteül-ece deere sauri ken @ber bu sau=tuqay.*  
 9483 *Kebteül-ece kelen ügey~ ken @ber bu oro=tuqay. Kebteül-ün*  
 9484 *dege^ün ken~ @ber bu yabu=tuqay. Kebteül-ün jaqa^un*  
 9485 *yabu=tuqay. Kebteül-ün toa bu asaq=tuqay. Kebteül-ün*  
 9486 *dege^ün yabu=qu+n haran-i kehteül bari=tuqay. Jaqa^un*  
 9487 *yabu=qu+n haran-i kehteül bari=tuqay. Toa asaq=uqsan*  
 9488 *güün-i kehteül tere güün-i tere @gü üdür-ün unu=qsan*  
 9489 *aqta emeel-tü qada:r-tu-yi emüs=ügsen qubcasun*  
 9490 *selte kehteül ab=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*  
 9491 *Eljigedey itegel-tü böe=tele jilda kehteül-ün*  
 9492 *dege^ün yabu=qu bol=un kehteül-e ker bari=qda=laa.*  
 X011 (§230) *Cirgis qahan ügüle=rün <sup>914</sup>Eüle-tey söni {örüge-tey~ ger min-u*  
 X012 *{eere=n kehte=jü {örüg~ nuta unta=ul=ju {ene oron-tur*  
 X013 *gür=ge=gsen {ötögü+s kehteül min-u {hodu-tay~ söni {ordo*  
 X014 *ger min-u {horcin kehte=jü<sup>915</sup> {oron dotora ese oqjad=qa=qsan*  
 X015 *{öljey-tE+n kehteül min-u {ündür<sup>916</sup> oron-tur gür=ge=be.*  
 X016 *{Šiljiri=n bü=küy boroon-a {šilgüd=ke=n bü=küy jüen-e {cidqu=n bü=küy qura-da*

---

914: Kozin continues the poetic passage to the end of the present quotation (adding lines starting with y a o y y), not ending it before X025 (as Pelliot) or Ögöle in X026 (as all other writers) and not, as Ligeti, marking as poetry two lines (starting with y) in X029-30.

915: The b (present in PP) is missing in C, though a space was left for it.

916: YCPS üntür emended (here and in Y206) to ündür (i.e. ün<t>[d]ür); emendation mine (JCS).

X017 {šiltesü-tey ger min-u horci=n {jirim<sup>917</sup> ülü~ ki=n bayi=ju {jirüge  
X018 amu=ul=uqsan {ci~ sedkil-te+n kehteül min-u {jirqala<sup>n</sup> oron-tur  
X019 gür=ge=be. {Ibul=un<sup>918</sup> bü=küy dayisun dotora {irge-tey ger  
X020 min-u horci=n {hirmes ülü~ ki=n idqa=ju bayi=qsa+d  
X021 {itegel-te+n kehteül min-u. {Uyilsun qor ubis  
X022 ki=küy-tür {udal ügey bayidal-ta+n {uriyarqun kehteül  
X023 min-u. {Qutan<sup>919</sup> qor {qubis kiküy-tür {qojid ese  
X024 bayi=qsa+d {qurdun yabudal-ta+n kehteül min-u.  
X025 {Ölley-te+n kehteül min-u {ötögü+s kehteül  
X026 kee=gdün<sup>920</sup>. }Ögöle cerbi-lüe oro=qsa+d dalan  
X027 turqag-t<sup>921</sup> yeke+s turqa+ud kee=gdün<sup>922</sup>. Arqay-in  
X028 baatu+d-i ötögü+s baatu+d kee=dkün. {Yisün \_ tee  
X029 Bügidey-tE+n qorci+n-i {yeke+s qorci+n kee=dkün  
X030 }kee=n jarliq bol=BA.  
X035 (§231) Yeren tabun minqa+d-aca min-u beye~ caada emcüle=n  
X036 ilqa=ju ire=gse+d tümen emcü keşig-te+n-i min-u  
X037 mona qoyina min-u oro~ sau=qsan köü+d uruq-un uruq-a  
X038 min-u e+de keşig-te+n-i geries metü sedki=jü ülü  
X039 gemüri=ül=ün sayi-tur asara=dqun. E+de tümen keşig-te+n-i  
X040 min-u nendü+üd qutuq kee=jü ülü@ü: a=qdu=ay<sup>923</sup>  
X041 kee=BA.

---

917: This word, glossed 'a short rest' seem unattested elsewhere in Mongolian; see deR4.832 for two possible sources.

918: Locus of morpheme division and back harmony merely a guess; see MostSQP.136-37 (= HJAS 14.386-87) for lines X019-X026.

919: The word means 'willow', here translated '[quivers of] willow-wood' (deR4159). For reasons unclear to me H62dict.79 and Kurib1.460 emend qutan (H62txt.77) to hutan.

920: Haenisch (H62txt.77) emended the YCPS keegdün form here and in the next line to keedkün (i.e. kee<gd>[dk]ün), as in two cases just below. MostSQP.136 disagreed, citing the CM. benedictive-imperative in -ytun/-gtün for which see also PoppeGWM 89. The SH does have two clear instances of a =gtüd (in line 2354,) plural of a \*=gtün, so I have tentatively left the present form unemended here (where it is in poetry), and — more tentatively still — in the next line.

921: Referential object; see Street13.14.

922: See note to prior line.

923: De Rachewiltz (deR4.834) says -qdu- is probably a very rare alternate form of the passive -qda-. The Ulan Bator MS. of the AT 75v has aydaqui "an old polite imperative, confirming at the same time that the initial a is followed by a velar stop. (Ozawa had suggested reading l for the q.) So this form is "the nomen imperfecti of the passive of a- (polite imperative)."

X044 (§232) Basa C'ngis qahan ügüle=rün Qrdo-yin cerbi+n  
 X045 öki+d-i ger-ün köü+d temeeci+n-i hükeci+n-i kehteül  
 X046 basaala=ju ordo-yin ger tergen-i asara=tuqay.  
 X047 Tuq güürge do:ro jida kehteül asara=tuqay.  
 X048 Ayaqa~ saba kehteül @gü asara=tuqay. Bidan-u  
 X049 unda:n~ ideen-i kehteül daruqalatuqay. Ödken~ @ber miqan  
 X050 ideen-i kehteül daruqala=ju bol=qa=tuqay. Unda:n ideen-i  
 X051 qor~ qomsa bol=uasu daruqala=qda=qsa+d kehteül-ece  
 X052 eriyE kee=BA. Qorci+n unda:n ideen tükee=rün  
 X053 daruqala=qsa+d kehteül-ece eye ügey~ bu tüke:=tügey.  
 X054 Idee~ tügee=rün urida kehteül-ece teriüle=n~ tügee=tügey  
 X055 kee=BA. Qrdo~ ger-tür oroqu qar=qu-yi kehteül  
 X056 jasa=tuqay eüten-tür kehteül-ün eüdeci+n ger caada  
 X057 bayi=tuqay. Kebteül-ece qoyar oro=ju yeke tüsürge  
 X058 bari=n a=tuqay kee=BA. Kebteül-ece nuntuuci+n yabu=ju  
 X059 ordo ger bawu=:l=tuqay kee=BA. Bidan-i şibawula=quy  
 X060 abala=quy-tur kehteül bidan-lua şibawula=ldu=n  
 X061 abala=ldu=n yabu=tuqay. Tergen-tür jarim+ud-ıyan caqla=ju  
 X062 talbi=tuqay kee=BA.  
 X067 (§233) Basa C'ngis qahan ügüle=rün Bidan-u beye cerig ese  
 X068 qar=uasu kehteül bidan-aca a<sup>n</sup>gi-da cerig bu qar=tuqay  
 X069 kee=BA. Eyin kee=ül=üed jarliq daba=ju kehteül-i  
 X070 nayita=ju cerig qar=qa=qu+n cerig mede=gü cerbi+n  
 X071 aldal-ta+n bol=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA. Kebteül-ün  
 X072 cerig ker ülü qar=qa=qda=muy<sup>924</sup> kee=müy~ @je ta.  
 X073<sup>105</sup> Kebteül@lii min-u altan amin saki=muy. Şibawula=n abala=n  
 X074 yabu=quy-tur jobo=ldu=muy. Qrdo qadaqala=ul=da=ju  
 X075 newü=küy-tür örüg-tür terge asara=muy. Min-u beye  
 X076 saki=ju qono=qu kilbar@u: bu=y. Ger tergen yeke auruq  
 X077 newü=küy-tür sau=quy-tur asara=quy kilbar@u:~ bu=y. Teyin  
 X078 dabqur qaqqas qaqqas yabudal-ta+n' kee=jü Bidan-aca  
 X079 a<sup>n</sup>gi-da öere cerig bu yabu=tuqay' kee=küy teyimü  
 X080 bu=y~ @je kee=jüüy.  
 X084 (§234) Basa jarliq bol=urun Şigi\_ qutuqu-lua jarqu  
 X085 kehteül-ece jarqu sonos=ulca=tuqay kee=bAy.  
 X086 Kebteül-ece qor numu quyaq jebe asara=ju

---

924: Both C and PP have a glossing division before the d; probably it belonged before the mu.

- X087 *tügee=ldü=tügey. Aqta+s-aca asara=ju hooši+n<sup>925</sup>~ aci=ju*
- X088 *yabu=tuqay kee=bAy. Kebteül-ece cerbi+n-lüe*
- X089 *aurasu tügee=ldü=tügey kee=bAy. Qorci+n*
- X090 *turqa+ud-un nuntuq jia=run Yisün\_ tee Bükidey-tE+n qorci+n*
- X091 *Alciday Ögöle Aqutay-ta+n turqa+ud ordo-yin baraun*
- X092 *eteed yabu=tuqay kee=bAy. Buqa Dödey cerbi*
- X093 *Doqolqu cerbi Canay-ta+n turqa+ud ordo-yin jewün*
- X094 *eteed yabu=tuqay kee=bAy. Arqay-in baatu+d*
- X095 *ordo-yin urida yabu=tuqay kee=bAy. Kebteül*
- X096 *ordo ger terge asara=ad ordo-yin derge-de*
- X097 *jewün eteed yabu=tuqay kee=BA. Büri+n kešig-te+n*
- X098 *turqa+ud-i ordo horcin ordo-yin ger-ün köü+d-i*
- X099 *aduuci+n qonici+n teme:ci+n hükeci+n-i ordo darun<sup>926</sup>*
- X100 *Dödey cerbi uqa=ju a=tuqay kee=n tüši=BA. Dödey cerbi*
- X101 *darun a=ju ordo-yin qoyina-ca {qoq~ ide=jü {qomaul*
- X102 *tüle=jü }yabu=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*
- X108 (§235) *Qubilay noyan-i Qarlu+ud-tur caura=ul=BA. Qarlu+ud-un*
- X109 *Arslan qan Qubilay-tur else=n ire=jüüy. Qubilay noyan*
- X110 *Arslan qan-i ab=uad ire=jü Cıngis qahan-tur*
- X111 *aulja=ul=BA. Ese bulqa=BA kee=n Cıngis qahan*
- X112 *Arslan-i soyurqa=ju Öki ög=üye kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*
- X114 (§236) *Sübeetey baatur — temür telege-tü — Merki+d-ün Toqtoa-yin*
- X115 *Qutu Cilaun teriü-te+n köü+d-i in-u neke=n~ caura=ju Cuy müren-e*
- X116 *güyice=jü muqudqa=ju ire=BA.*
- X118 (§237) *Jebe Nayman-u Gücülüğ qan-i neke=jü Sariq qun-a*
- X119 *güyice=jü Gücülüğ-i muqudqa=ju ire=BA.*
- X121 (§238) *Uyu+d-un Iduud<sup>927</sup> Cıngis qahan-tur elci+n ile:=jüü.*
- X122 *Adkiraq Darbay qoyar elci+n-iyer öci=jü ile:=rün*
- X123 *{Eülen aril=ju {eke naran üje=gsen metü {mölsün*
- X124 *aril=ju {müren usun ol=uqsan metü }Cıngis qaan-u*

---

925: For the final syllable C has a poorly written character (with a vertical stroke failing to protrude above the top horizontal), which misled Haensch into writing a'oga (H62dict.8). See de Rachewiltz in *Papers on Far Eastern History* 26.58 (1982), and 2004.840. Ms PP has clearly hoošin. This seems probably a plural form (of what would be written as ögesi in the Uighur script), though not included in Street90. The stem is formed with the derivational suffix <sup>^</sup>ši (cf. ide<sup>^</sup>ši 'food'), from a root found at least in Chuvash *yav-* 'weave, plait' (see Tekin in UAJb 48.234, which includes Turkic forms).

926: Historically this is the converb *daru-n* (found in 5175 and X295, for example), but I tentatively assume the form is an adverb here and in X101. See Cleaves in HJAS 16:1-2.246-8 (1953).

927: For this title of the Uighur ruler see deR4.845.

- X125 nere aldar sonos=cu maši bayas=BA. C'ngis qahan  
X126 soyurqa=asu {altan büse-yin qorgi+d-aca<sup>928</sup> {al~ deel-iin  
X127 hürtesün-ece }ol=uasu dab-tuar köün cin-u  
X128 bol=ju gücü ög=sü kee=n öci=gü ile=jüüy. Tere  
X129 üge-tür C'ngis qahan soyurqa=ju qariu ügüle=jü  
X130 ile=rün Öki @ber ög=üyE. Dab-tuar köün bol=tuqay.  
X131 Altan möngü subu+d tana+s naci+d darda+s<sup>929</sup>  
X132 torqa+d ab=uad Iduud ire=tügey kee=jü ile=besü  
X133 Iduud Soyurqa=qda=BA<sup>930</sup> kee=n bayas=cu altan möngü  
X134 subu+d tana+s torqa+d naci+d darda+s aurasun  
X135 ab=uad Iduud ire=jü C'ngis qahan-tur aulja=BA.  
X136 C'ngis qahan Iduud-i soyurqa=ju Al\_ altan-i  
X137 ög=be.  
X141 (§239) Taulay jil Joci-yi baraun qar-un ceri+üd-iyer hoy-in  
X142 irgen-tür morila=ul=bAy. Buqa qajarcila=ju  
X143 od=BA. Oyira+d-un Quduqa\_ beki Tümen<sup>931</sup> Oyira+d-un  
X144 urida else=n oro=ju ire=be. Ire=jü Joci-yi  
X145 udurid=cu Tümen Oyira+d-dur-yan qajarcila=ju  
X146 Šiqšid-tur<sup>932</sup> oro=ul=ba<sup>933</sup>. Joci Oyira+d Buriya+d  
X147 Barqun Urs+ud<sup>934</sup> Qabqana+s Qa'nqa+s Tuba+s-i  
X148 oro=ul=uad Tümen Kirgis+ud-tur<sup>935</sup> gü=üesü  
X149 Kirgis+ud-un noya+d Yedi Inal Aldi\_ er  
X150 Örebeg\_ digin Kirgis+ud-un noya+d else=n oro=ju

---

928: That the d represents the plural morpheme here is guaranteed by Altan Tobchi Nova 86a γorgi+s-aca (de Rachewiltz, personal communication of 18 April 1997).

929: The singular of this form is listed in Lessing 233.

930: YCPS soyuqaqdaBA emended to soyurqaqdaBA (i.e. soyu[r]qaqdaBA). Emendation made tacitly by H62txt.78 and Ligeti 204; the necessary square brackets were added by Kurbil.472.

931: This word is glossed as a number here and several times below (X143-59), rather than being shown as part of the name. But PP often has the two-word sequence sidelined as a name in X178-X219, and hence I so treat it here (as did de Rachewiltz). Similarly Tümen Kirgisud below.

932: A metathesized form of the Sisgis of 4367, with final d also in place of s (see Rachewiltz 2004.851).

933: This is apparently the sole instance in which the original reading for the b-initial past tense morpheme was written with the two-stroke ba character (Hung, HJAS 14.455 [1951]).

934: For the root and its transcriptions in Chinese sources see Cleaves in HJAS 19.394, fn. 20 (1956).

935: The singular is not found in the SH.

- X151 caqaa+nuud šir̄qo+d caqaa+nuud aqta+s qara+nuud  
 X152 buluqa+d ab=uad ire=jü Joci-da aulja=BA. Šibir  
 X153 Kesdim Bayi+d<sup>936</sup> Tuqa+s Tele<sup>n937</sup> Töeles<sup>938</sup> Tas  
 X154<sup>106</sup> Bajigi+d-aca<sup>939</sup> inaqši hoy-in irgen-i Joci oro=ul=ju  
 X155 Kirgis+ud-un tüme+d-ün minqa+d-un noya+d-i hoy-in irgen-ü  
 X156 noya+d-i ab=uad ire=jü C̄ngis qahan-tur caqaan+uud<sup>940</sup>  
 X157 šir̄qo+d-iyar caqaan+uud aqta+s-iyar qara+nuud  
 X158 buluqa+d-iyar aulja=ul=bAy. Oyira+d-un  
 X159 Quduqa\_ beki-yi uqtu=n<sup>941</sup> Urida elsen Tümen<sup>942</sup> Oyira+d-iyan  
 X160 udurid=un ire=be kee=n soyurqa=ju köün-e in-u  
 X161 Inalci-da Ceceyigen-i ög=BA. Inalci-yin aqa  
 X162 Törölci-de<sup>943</sup> Joci-yin öki Qoluyqan-i ög=be.  
 X163 Alaqa\_ beki-yi Öngü+d-de<sup>944</sup> ög=be. C̄ngis qahan Joci-yi  
 X164 soyurqa=ju ügüle=rün Köü+d-ün min-u aqa ci ger-tece  
 X165 sayi qar=cu mör sayi-tu. Qd=uqsan qajar-a ere  
 X166 aqta-yi ülü širqa=n ülü joba=a=n öljey-tü hoy-in  
 X167 irgen-i oro=ul=ju ire=be ci. Irge cima-da  
 X168 ög=sü kee=n jarliq bol=BA.

---

936: It is merely my guess here (and in the next word) that there is a plural morpheme division here. See deR4.852-54 for many of the tribes here named.

937: YCPS Tenleg emended to Telen (i.e. Te<n>le<g>[ŋ]). This seemingly odd emendation was suggested by Pelliot in Notes sur l'Histoire de la Horde d'Or (Paris 1950; p. 142, note 1) to match the form found in Altan Tobchi and one Chinese text. Note that in the vertical script the forms telen and tenleg would differ only in the vertical placement of the element representing l. As Pelliot points out, the YCPS editors must have worked from a text in the vertical script which was defective at this point.

938: According to Pelliot Notes sure l'Histoire de la Horde d'Or, p. 142, note 2, this is Old Turkic Töläš; so not a plural here.

939: The d here might be part of the stem rather than representing a plural formation, but in line Y495 the form Bajigid is embedded in a series of seven plural ethnonyms. DeR4.853 points out that this word refers to "the Bashgirt, i.e. the modern Bashkir".

940: Our text shows the glossing division before the syllable nu, as would be expected for a morpheme division occurring after a consonant and before a vowel. So in qaranuud below.

941: Equivalent to uqdun (6271, Y153); see note for 6271.

942: Capitalization added.

943: YCPS Törölci-da interpreted as front-harmonic (i.e. Törölci-d<a>[e]).

944: YCPS Öngü+d-da interpreted as front-harmonic (i.e. Öngü+d-d<a>[e]).



X177 (§240) Basa Boroul noyan-i Qori\_ tuma+d irgen-tür  
 X178 caura=ul=BA. Tuma+d irgen-ü noyan Dayduqul\_ soqor-i  
 X179 ükü=esü eme in-u Botoquy\_ tarqun Tuma+d irgen-i  
 X180 mede=jü a=juu. Boroqul noyan gür=cü qurban haran  
 X181 yeke cerig-ece urida yabu=ra od=cu üde~ jilda  
 X182 uqamsar berke hoy-tur horum-iyar yabu=qu+n bol=un  
 X183 qaraul-a an-u qoyina-un de:med=te=jü horum boo=ju  
 X184 Boroqul noyan-i bari=jü ala=juyy. *Tuma+d Boroqul-i*  
 X185 *ala=juyy* kee=n mede=jü C'ngis qahan maši kil'la=jü  
 X186 öesün morila=n tuurbî=asu Boorcu Muqali qoyar  
 X187 C'ngis qaan-i bayi=tala idqa=BA. Jici Dörbe^tey  
 X188 Dörbey\_ doqşin-i tüşi=rün Cerig qata<sup>n</sup>quy-a jasa=ju  
 X189 *mörke te<sup>n</sup>geri-yi jalbari=ju Tuma+d irgen-i oro=ul=un*  
 X190 *sori* kee=n jarliq bol=BA. Dörbey cerig jasa=run  
 X191 urida cerig-ün yabu=qu qaraul-un saki=qu mör horum  
 X192 sübe+s-tür hoqtor=quy erbegelje=ül=jü<sup>945</sup>  
 X193 hulaan~ buqa-yin yabu=qsan mör-iyer ceri+üd-tür  
 X194 jasaqla=run cerig-ün too-tu güün jirüge yada=asu  
 X195 nişi=quy-a<sup>946</sup> ere-tür harban müsü+d ür=ge=ül=jü süke  
 X196 uqali kirüe šiüci ere-yin jer~ jebseg jasa=ul=ju  
 X197 hulaan~ buqa-yin yabu=qsan mör-iyer mör-tür bayi=qsan  
 X198 modu+d hoqtocon cabci=ul=ju kirügede=ül=jü mör  
 X199 bol=qa=ju aula deere qar=uasu Tuma+d  
 X200 irgen-ü erüge deere-ce gene+d qurimla=n  
 X201 sau=quy-tur dawuli=bAy.  
 X208 (§241) Urida Qorci noyan Quduqa\_ beki qoyar Tuma+d-ta  
 X209 bari=qda=ju Botoquy\_ tarqun-tur tende a=juu. Qorci-yin  
 X210 bari=qda=qu yosun *Tuma+d irgen-ü öki+d qoa+s-ta+n*  
 X211 *qucin eme+s ab=tuqay* kee=n jarliq bol=uqsan-tur  
 X212 *Tuma+d irgen-ü öki+d ab=qu* kee=n od=qu bol=un  
 X213 urida else=gse+d irgen jici bulqa bol=ju  
 X214 Qorci noyan-i bari=juyy. *Qorci Tuma+d-da*  
 X215<sup>107</sup> *bari=qda=juu* kee=n C'ngis qahan mede=jü Hoy-in irgen-ü

---

945: For the technical military expression here (a kind of decoy manoeuvre ) see deR4.860-61 and sources there.

946: Morpheme division not in the de Rachewiltz or Ligeti editions. Pelliot (p. 94) queried whether one should consider this word a dative (*nisiquy-a*) or emend it to a front-vowel *nişi-* (presumably a sentence-final voluntative?). The emendation would simplify the syntax, but seems unnecessary.

X216 *yabudal Quduqa mede=mü @je kee=jü ile:=esü*  
 X217 *Quduqa\_ beki basa bari=qda=juu. Tuma+d irgen-i*  
 X218 *oro=u=un bara=asu Boroqul-un yasun-u~ tula jaun*  
 X219 *Tuma+d-i ög=BA. Qorci qucin öki+d-i ab=uBA.*  
 X220 *Quduqa beki-de Botoquy\_ tarqun-i ög=BA.*  
 X226 (§242) *Cıngis qahan jarlıq bol=ju Eke-de köü+d-te deü+ner-e*  
 X227 *irge qubiya=ju ög=üye kee=n ög=ürün Ulus*  
 X228 *quriyaan joba=qsa+d eke bu=yu @je. Köü+d-ün min-u*  
 X229 *aqa Joci bu=y~ @je. Deü+ner-ün min-u nilqa Odcigin*  
 X230 *bu=y~ @je kee=jü eke-de Odcikin-u qubi~ @ki=ed<sup>947</sup> tümen*  
 X231 *irge ög=be. Eke cimad=cu ese do<sup>n</sup>qod=BA.*  
 X232 *Joci-da<sup>948</sup> yisün minqa+d irge ög=be. Caaday-a*  
 X233 *nayman minqa+d irge ög=be. Ögödey-e<sup>949</sup> tabun*  
 X234 *minqa+d irge ög=be. Toluy-a tabun minqa+d*  
 X235 *irge ög=be. Qasar-a dörben minqa+d irge*  
 X236 *ög=be. Alciday-a qoyar minqa+d irge ög=BA.*  
 X237 *Belgütey-e<sup>950</sup> niken minqan tabun jau+d irge ög=be.*  
 X238 *Daaritay Gereyi+d-lua bol=ulca=BA kee=n Nidün-ü*  
 X239 *ecine ecid=ge=yE kee=besü Boorcu Muqali*  
 X240 *Şigi\_ qutuqu qurban ügüle=rün {Qer-ün qal-ıyan*  
 X241 *sönö=e=gü<sup>951</sup> metü. {Qer-ün ger-ıyen ebde=gü metü.*  
 X242 }<sup>952</sup> *Sayin ecige-yin cin-u gerıes qaqca abaqa cin-u*  
 X243 *qocor=cu a=mu. Ker tebci=gü. In-u ese uqa=qsan-tur*  
 X244 ***bü**=tügey. Sayin ecige-yin cin-u nilqa nuntuq huni*  
 X245 ***butara**=ul=ulca=ju<sup>953</sup> a=tuqay kee=gde=jü<sup>954</sup> {**q**abar-aca huni*

---

947: See note to line 2357.

948: YCPS Joci-de interpreted as back-harmonic (i.e. Joci-d<e>[a]).

949: YCPS Ögöday-a interpreted as front-harmonic (i.e. Ögöd<A>[e]y-<A>[e]).

950: YCPS Belgütey-a interpreted as front-harmonic (i.e. Belgütey-<a>[e]).

951: First morpheme division based on CMo. (Lessing 732).

952: Poetic lines are shown in the de Rachewiltz and Cleaves translations (following Kozin). These editions also have poetic lines (not marked by Kozin or Ligeti) at the q-initial forms of in X245-6 below.

953: YCPS butaraulcaju emended to butaraululcaju (i.e. butaraul[ul]caju); emendation mine (JCS). There are three reasons for assuming omission of the second of two identical characters. (1) The verb butara- is intransitive in other SH occurrences, but translators agree that the form here must be transitive. (2) If left unemended, this is the sole SH instance of the allomorph ulca after a vowel: elsewhere we find ulca after a

- X246 {qa<sup>n</sup>ši=tala {qaqas kelele=gde=jü } Je~ *teli*<sup>955</sup> kee=n sayin
- X247 ecige-yi sedki=jü Boorcu Muqali Šigi\_ qutuqu
- X248 qurban-u kelen-tür amurli=BA @je.
- X255 (§243) Bi eke-de Odcikin-a<sup>956</sup> tümen irge ög=cü noya+d-aca Gücü
- X256 *Kököcü Ju<sup>n</sup>say Qorqasun dörben-i tüši=be. Joci-da*
- X257 *Qunan Mö<sup>n</sup>keür Kete qurban-i tüši=be. Caaday-tur*
- X258 *Qaracar Mö<sup>n</sup>ke Idoquday qurban-i tüši=be. Basa C<sup>n</sup>gis*
- X259 qahan ügüle=rün *Caaday keceü bu=yu. Narin aburi-tu~ bu=yu. Köke\_ cos*
- X260 *üde manaqar derge-de aju sedki=gse-iyen kelele=n*
- X261 *a=tuqay kee=n jarliq bo=BA. Ögödey-tür Ilüge*
- X262 *Degey qoyar-i tüši=be. Toluy-tur Jedey Bala qoyar-i*
- X263 *tüši=be. Qasar-tur Jebke-yi tüši=be. Alciday-tur*
- X264 *Caurqay-i tüši=be*<sup>957</sup>.
- X269 (§244) *Qo<sup>n</sup>qota^day Mö<sup>n</sup>lig ecie-yin köü+d doloan bü=leey.*
- X270 Doloan-u dumda-du Kököcü Teb\_ te<sup>n</sup>geri bü=lee. Te+de
- X271 *doloan Qo<sup>n</sup>qota+n Qasar-i öme:re=jü janci=juuy.*
- X272 *Qasar Doloan Qo<sup>n</sup>qota+n-a öme:re=jü janci=qda=a*
- X273 *kee=n C<sup>n</sup>gis qaan-a sögöd=üesü C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan*
- X274 *busu+d-tur kil<sup>n</sup>la=ju a=quy dumda kelele=gü bo=un*
- X275 *C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan kil<sup>n</sup>-dur-ıyan Qasar-i ügüle=rün Ami-tu-da*
- X276 *ülü ilaq=da=qu-aca bü=lee ci. Ker ilaq=da=a ci*
- X277 *kee=gde=jü Qasar nilbusu alda=ad bos=cu*
- X278 *yorci=ju Qasar mauyla=ju qurban üdür ese*
- X279 *ire=be. Tende Teb\_ te<sup>n</sup>geri C<sup>n</sup>gis qaan-a ügüle=rün*
- X280 *Mö<sup>n</sup>ke te<sup>n</sup>geri-yin jarliq qan jaari+d ügüle=mü. Niken-te*
- X281 *Temüjin ulus bari=tuqay' kee=mü. Niken-te ~Qasar-i*
- X282 *kee=mü. Qasar-i ese nende=esü medee ügey~ bu=y~ @je*
- X283 *kee=gde=jü C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan mün söni morila=ju Qasar-i*

---

consonant, ldu after a vowel (Street 1957.65). (3) C (but not PP) has a glossing division here: butaraul-caju. This is very odd. It was for reasons (1) and (2) that I suggested this emendation in 1957 (fn. 154 on p. 88); the odd bracketing in C may perhaps strengthen the argument for this.

954: Not marked as poetry by Kozin of Ligeti.

955: YCPS teli emended to deli (i.e. <d>[t]eli); emendation mine (JCS). This is the only instance of the d form in the SH.

956: For otcigin-a (for which word cf. de Rachewiltz 2004.288 et passim).

957: A unique note here states that this and the last three instances of this same word were earlier written -be.

X284 bari=ra od=uasu Gücü Kökücü qoyar *Qasar-i*  
 X285 bari=ra od=BA kee=n eke-de jaa=juu. Eke  
 X286 mede=ed söni bö=ed udaara=n caqaan temeen  
 X287 köl=jü qarau-tay terge-tey söni-de düli=n yorci=ju  
 X288 naran urqu=quy-lua gür=üesü C'ngis qahan  
 X289 Qasar-un qancu+d huya=ju maqalay büse in-u ab=cu  
 X290 üge in-u asaq=un bü=küy-tür eke-de gür=te=jü C'ngis  
 X291 qahan geyeg=cü eke-dece emie=BA. Eke aurla=ju  
 X292 gür=cü tergen-ece bawu=ad eke öesün Qasar-un  
 X293 huya=qsa+d qancu+d dal=ju talbi=ad maqalay büse  
 X294 in-u Qasar-a ög=cü eke kil'la=ju aur-ıyan  
 X295 daru=n yada=n jabila=n sau=ju qoyar kökö+d-ıyen qar=qa=ju  
 X296 qoyar ebüdüg dege-ün bisari=ul=ju ügüle=rün  
 X297 Üje=bey@ü.<sup>958</sup> Kökö=gšen köken tan-u ene~ bu=y. E+de qadalun<sup>959</sup>  
 X298 daun<sup>960</sup> qarbisu-an qaja=qsa+d küy-ıyen tasul=uqsa+d<sup>961</sup>.  
 X299 *Qasar yeki=be*<sup>962</sup>. *Temüjin ene niken kökö min-u bara=qu*  
 X300 *bü=lee. Qaciun Odcigin qoyaula bol=ju niken kökö*  
 X301 *ülü bara=qu bü=lee. Qasar bü=rün qoyar büri kökö+d*  
 X302 *min-u bara=ju ceeji min-u auy bol=tala amurli=ul=ju*  
 X303 *ceeji auy bol=qa=qu bü=lee. Teü-ber erdem-tü*  
 X304 *Temüjin min-u ceeji erdem-tü. Qasar min-u*  
 X305 *qabu~ gücü erdem-tü tula {qarbuca=ju qar=uqsan-i*  
 X306 *{qarbu=ju oro=ul=qu bü=lee. {Qqjad=cu qar=uqsan-i*  
 X307 *{hontuca=ju oro=ul=qu bü=lee. } Edöe dayisun~<sup>963</sup> güün-i*  
 X308 *muqudqa=bAy' kee=jü Qasar-i üje=n yada=muy~ ta*  
 X309 kee=be. Eke-yi amurli=ul=un bara=ju  
 X310 C'ngis qahan ügüle=rün Eke-yi kil'la=qda=ju

---

958: See note to line 2155. The be here is written with the 7-stroke be character, rather than than by the 15-stroke bÄ character plus a note; so in X299.

959: See note to next word.

960: There seems to be some error here: the words qadalun daun do not fit into their context. Various possibilities are discussed by deR4.874-76.

961: The last six words are shown as poetic lines by de Rachewiltz, but not by Cleaves, Pelliot, Ligeti, or Kozin.

962: See first note to line X297.

963: Emended from daysun (i.e. day[i]sun; emendation mine). See notes to line 4377 and 1010, and H62dict.31.

X311 {ayu=n~ @ba ayu=BA. {Hice=n @ba hice=be bi } kee=jü  
 X312 Icu=ya bida kee=jü icu=bAy. Eke-de ülü mede=ül=ün  
 X313 ecine-ün Qasar-un irge in-u ab=cu Qasar-a mingan<sup>964</sup>  
 X314 dörben jau+d irge ög=be. Eke mede=jü  
 X315 tere sedkil-tür ötör dötöle=gseñ yosun  
 X316 teyimü. Jalayir^tay Jebke tende qulaji=ju  
 X317 Barqujin oron buruud=BA.  
 X330 (§245) Teün-ü qoyina yisün kele-te+n irgen Teb\_ teñgeri-tür  
 X331 quri=ju Cñgis qaan-u kirüe-dece olon  
 X332<sup>108</sup> Teb\_ teñgeri-tür quri=qu+n bol=bAy. Teyin quri=quy-tur  
 X333<sup>109</sup> Temüge\_ odcigin-a qariya-ta+n irgen Teb\_ teñgeri-tür  
 X334 od=cuuy. Odcigin noyan od=uqsan irge-ben  
 X335 quyira Soqor nere-tü elci-yen ile:=jüüy. Teb\_ teñgeri<sup>965</sup>  
 X336 Soqor elci-de ügüle=rün *Odcigin ta jirin*  
 X337 aci-ta+n<sup>966</sup> bol=juuy kee=jü Soqor elci-yi in-u  
 X338 aşgi=ju yabuqan emeel in-u ür=ge=jü  
 X339 qari=ul=juuy. Odcigin Soqor elci-yen aşgi=ju  
 X340 yabuqan ile:=gde=jü manaqarşi Odcigin öesün  
 X341 Teb\_ teñgeri-tür od=cu ügüle=rün *Soqor elci-yen*  
 X342 ile:=esü aşgi=ju yabuqan ile:=jüü. Edöe bi  
 X343 irge-ben quyi=ra ire=be kee=gde=jü doloan  
 X344 Qoñqota+n Odcigin-i ende-ce tende-ce qaa=ju *Soqor*  
 X345 elci-yen ile:=gü cin-u jöb bu=y kee=jü bari=qu-aca  
 X346 tus=qu-aca ki=gde=rün ayu=ju Odcigin noyan ügüle=rün  
 X347 Elci ile:=gü min-u-ay buruu kee=jüü. Doloan  
 X348 Qoñqota+n ügüle=rün *Buruu bö=esü namancila=n*  
 X349 sögöd kee=jü Teb\_ teñgeri-yin qoyina-ca  
 X350<sup>110</sup> sögöd=ge=jüüy. Irge-ben @ba ese ög=te=jü Odcigin  
 X351 manaqarşi erte Cñgis qaan-i bos=uay üdüüy-e  
 X352 oron datora bü=küy-tür oro=ju uyila=ad sögöd=cü  
 X353 ügüle=rün *Yisün kele-te+n irgen Teb\_ teñgeri-tür*  
 X354 ciu=lda=ju na-da qariya-ta+n irge-ben Teb\_ teñgeri-dece

---

964: Pelliot 96 queried a possible emendation of this YCPS mingan to minqan (i.e. minj[q]an). DeR72.265a (following H62dict.109) simply indicates that the two forms are equivalent.

965: The b (present in PP) is missing in C.

966: YCPS elciten emended to acitan (i.e. <e>[a]citen). The emendation was suggested by Mostaert on the basis of Altan Tobchi acitan (deR4.880).

X355 quyu=ra Soqor nere-tü elci ile:=lüe. Soqor  
 X356 elci-yi min-u aşgi=ju yabuqan emeel ü:r=ge=jü  
 X357 ile:=gde=jü bi öesün quyi=ra od=uasu doloan  
 X358 Qo<sup>n</sup>qota+n-a ende-ce tende-ce qaa=ju namancila=ul=ju  
 X359 Teb\_ te<sup>n</sup>geri-yin qoyina-ca sögöd=ke=ül=de=BA ke:=ed  
 X360 uyila=BA. C<sup>r</sup>gis qaan-i do<sup>n</sup>qod=uay üdüüy-e  
 X361 Börte\_ üjin oron ditora ö<sup>n</sup>deyi=jü sau=ju könjile-yi-yen  
 X362 jaqa-bar ebceü-ben tüyid=cü Odcikin-u uyila=qu-yi  
 X363 üje=jü nilbusu alda=ad ügüle=rün Yeki=gse+d  
 X364 Qo<sup>n</sup>qota+n te+de. Öcigen Qasar-i ömö:re=jü janci=ju  
 X365 @gü bü=leey. Edöe basa ene Odcigin-i yeki=n  
 X366 qoyina-ca-an sögöd=ge=müy. Yambar yosun bol=umuy.  
 X367 Bel e+de cigö+d nara+d metü+s deü+ner-i cin-u eyin  
 X368 oyisula=ldu=muy. Ünen-ber<sup>967</sup> mono qoyina {<sup>968</sup>neüle metü  
 X369 beye cin-u {negüs od=uasu {nedkel metü ulus  
 X370 cin-u {ken-e mede=ül=kü+n te+de. {Tulu metü beye cin-u  
 X371 {tulbas od=uasu {tuyal metü ulus cin-u  
 X372 {ken-e mede=ül=kü+n te+de. }Cigö+d<sup>969</sup> nara+d<sup>970</sup> metü  
 X373 deü+ner-i cin-u eyin oyisulad=qu+n haran min-u  
 X374 qurban dörben ücü:ge+d mawu+n mandu=tala min-u  
 X375 yau mede=ül=kü+n te+de. Yeki=gse+d Qo<sup>n</sup>qota+n bü=lee  
 X376 te+de. Deü+ner-iyen te+den-e teyin ki=ül=jü ker üje=jü  
 X377 a=mu ci kee=ed Börte\_ üjin nilbusun alda=BA.  
 X378 Börte\_ üjin-ü ene üge-tür C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan Odcigin-a  
 X379 ügüle=rün Teb\_ te<sup>n</sup>geri edöe ire=gü. Cida=quy-aca  
 X380 ker~ @ba üyiled=üesü<sup>971</sup> ci mede kee=be.  
 X381 Teün-tür Odcigin bos=uad nilbusu-an arcı=ad  
 X382 qar=cu qurban bökö+s-i beled=cü bayi=BA. Qurum+ud  
 X383 a=tala Mö<sup>n</sup>lig ecige doloan köü+d-lüe-ben  
 X384 ire=jü doloan büri oro=ju Teb\_ te<sup>n</sup>geri tüsürge-yin

---

967: YCPS wrongly glosses this as the particle rather than the instrumental.

968: Cleaves, following Ligeti, excludes from poetry the k-initial lines starting in X370 and X372, and Pelliot does not mark the alliteration; De Rachewiltz, following Kozin, includes these. Nearly identical lines appear in Y210-13.

969: Plural of cigörsün

970: Plural of CMo. narasun

971: YCPS üyiledüesü emended to üyiledüesü (i.e. üyile<d>düesü); emendation mine (JCS).

X385 baraun eteed sau=quy-lua Odcigin Teb\_ te<sup>n</sup>geri-yin  
 X386 jaqa in-u bari=ju Öcigen üdür nama-yi namancila=*n*  
 X387 bü=lee ci. Şori=ldu=ya kee=jü jaqa in-u bari=ju  
 X388 eüten~ jüg cir=BA. Teb\_ te<sup>n</sup>geri Odcikin-u  
 X389 esergü jaqa bari=ju bari=ldu=BA. Teb\_ te<sup>n</sup>geri-yin<sup>972</sup>  
 X390 maqalay bari=ldu=quy-tur qolumta<sup>973</sup> teriün-e  
 X391 una=BA. Mö<sup>n</sup>lig ecige maqalay in-u ab=cu  
 X392 hünüs=cü ebür-tür-iyen talbi=BA. C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan  
 X393 ügüle=rün Qar=cu bökö gücü temece=ldü=dkün kee=be.  
 X394 Odcigin Teb\_ te<sup>n</sup>geri-yi cir=cü qar=urun eüten  
 X395 bosoqa jaura urida beled=ügsen qurban bökö+s  
 X396 esergü Teb\_ te<sup>n</sup>geri-yi bari=ad cir=cü qar=cu niruu  
 X397 in-u ququl=ju jewün eteed-ün terge+d-ün üjüür-e  
 X398 or=cu<sup>974</sup> Odcigin oro=ju ügüle=rün Teb\_ te<sup>n</sup>geri nama-yi  
 X399 namancila=*n* bü=lee. Şori=ldu=ya' ke:=esü ülü bol=*un*  
 X400 arqala=ju gebte=mü. Caq-tu nökö a=juu ke:=esü  
 X401 Mö<sup>n</sup>lig<sup>975</sup> ecige uqa=ju nilbusu alda=ad ügüle=rün  
 X402 {<sup>976</sup> Dayir etügen-i {da<sup>n</sup>lasun-u tedüy bü=küy-ece {*dalay*  
 X403 müren-i qoroqan-u tedüy bü=küy-ece }nököce=*be bi*  
 X404 kee=küy-lüe jirqoan Qo<sup>n</sup>qota+n köü+d in-u eüten  
 X405 boso=ju<sup>977</sup> qolumta toori=n bayi=ju qancu+d-iyen  
 X406 şimalıqa=qda=run C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan gere=ju şıqa=qda=ju  
 X407 Jayıla; qar=uya kee=ed qar=qu-lua C<sup>n</sup>gis qaan-i  
 X408 horci=n<sup>978</sup> qorci+n turqa+ud toori=n bayi=bAy.  
 X409 Teb\_ te<sup>n</sup>geri-yi terge+d-ün üjüür-e niruu ququl=ju

---

972: The b (present in PP) is missing in C. And the -yin of this word is repeated at the start of the next line in C; in PP the two occurrences of this ending occur within a single column. (I don't remember any other instance of such diplography in the YCPS.)

973: YCPS qoluta emended (by Haensch and Pelliot et al.) to qolumta (i.e. qolu[m]ta).

974: A long vowel is required here, and noted by Kurib1.498 and de Rachewiltz' 1997 "Additions and corrections".

975: Lines X401-X413 are discussed in detail by MostSQP.160-164 (= HJAS 15.290-294).

976: Cleaves (following Pelliot) shows two poetic lines here, Ligeti three (each with d initial), Kozin and de Rachewiltz four (d d d q).

977: Perhaps read bösöjü; see note to 8133.

978: I take horcin to be a converb here; elsewhere it is not really clear whether it functions as a converb or a postposition.

- X410 oor=uqsan-i C'ngis qahan üje=jü qoyituul-aca  
X411 niken boro qoşiliq abcira=ul=ju Teb\_ te'ngeri-yin deere  
X412 in-u talbi=ul=ju Kölge oro=ul=udqun; newü=yE  
X413 kee=jü tende-ce newü=bAy.  
X429 (§246) Teb-i<sup>979</sup> talbi=qsan qoşiliq-un erüge tül=jü eüten  
X430 daru=ju hara saki=ul=uasu qutuar söni üdür  
X431 şira-da ger-ün erüge nee=jü beye selte qar=cuu.  
X432 Bolqa:=asu<sup>980</sup> maqad Teb in-u tende bolqa:=qda=BA.  
X433 C'ngis qahan ügüle=rün *Teb\_ te'ngeri deü+ner-tür min-u*  
X434 *qar köl gür=ge=gse-ü tula deü+ner-ün min-u jaura*  
X435 *oro ügey j'ngü=gü-yin tula te'ngeri-de ese*  
X436 *taala=qda=ju ami-yan beye selte ab=cu od=da=BA~ @je*  
X437 kee=be. C'ngis qahan Mönlig ecige-yi tende  
X438 do'qod=urun Köü+d-ü-en aburi ülü idqa=n de'gece=n  
X439 *sedki=kü+n bol=un Teb\_ te'ngeri-yin teriün-tür gür=bAy*  
X440 *ta. Tan-u teyimü aburi uqa=qsan bö=esü Jamuqa*  
X441 *Altan Qucar-ta+n-u yosu-ta+n bol=qa=qda=qu+n<sup>981</sup>*  
X442 *bü=leey ta kee=jü Mönlig ecige-yi do'qod=cu*  
X443 do'qod=un bara=ju Jici {<sup>982</sup>}manaqaru ügüle=gse-i üdeşi  
X444 *hudaru=asu üde-yin ügüle=gse-i manaqar*  
X445 *hudaru=asu hice=re maqa kee=gde=gü @ele. Urida*  
X446 *üge bara=qda=lua. Je teli kee=n soyurqa=ju*  
X447 *jici jalira=BA. Alus aburi-yan tata=qsan*  
X448 *bö=esü Mönlig ecige-yin uruq-tur ken de'gece=kü+n*  
X449 *bü=leey kee=be. Teb\_ te'ngeri-yi ügey bol=qa=ad*  
X450 Qo'qota+n ciray jibtura=juuy~ @je.  
Y011 (§247) Teün-ü qoyina C'ngis qahan qonin jil Kita+d  
Y012 irgen-tür morila=bAy. Vijyu-yi ab=cu  
Y013 Hünegen<sup>983</sup> daba:-ar daba=ju Söndeyvu-yi ab=cu Jebe  
Y014 Güyigüneg baatur qoyar-i ma'lay ile:=bAy.

---

979: Lines X429-X450 are discussed in detail by MostSQP.164-175 (= HJAS 15.294-305).

980: The verb bolqaa- ~ bolqa:- (with voiced velar in Kalmuck and Ordos) is 'to examine carefully' (MostSQP.169 = HJAS 15.299 [1952]).

981: YCPS bolqaqtaqun emended to bolqaqdaqun (i.e. bolqaq<t>[d]aqun); emendation mine (JCS).

982: Only Kozin indicates -- perhaps correctly -- five poetic lines in X443-45 (ending with ele), with line-initial m ü ü m h.

983: Capitalization added; literally 'Fox Ridge' (deR4.890).



Y015 Cabciyal gür=cü Cabciyal dabaan-i bekile=gde=jü  
 Y016 tende Jebe ügüle=rün An-i udu=ju gödöl=ge=jü  
 Y017 ire=ül=ün tende sori=ya kee=jü qari=bAy. Qari=qda=ju  
 Y018 Kita+d-un ceri+üd Neke=ye kee=n jölke<sup>984</sup> aula  
 Y019 büte=tele neke=jü ayış=i. Söndeyvu-yin qoşıun-a gür=cü  
 Y020 Jebe qoyina-qşı hur=BA. Tata=ju dobtul=ju  
 Y021 sundur=cu ayisu=qu+n dayin-i daru=BA. C'ngis qahan  
 Y022 qol cerig daruca=ju Kita+d-i gödöl=ge=jü Qara\_ kida+d-un  
 Y023 Jürce+d-ün Jüyi+n-ü<sup>985</sup> erekü+n omoqu+n ceri+üd-i daru=ju  
 Y024 Cabciyal-a gür=tele hünjüü bayi=tala kidu=ju Cabciyal-un  
 Y025 qaalqa Jebe ab=cu dabaa+d buli=ju daba=ju  
 Y026 C'ngis qahan Şira\_ degtür bawu=bAy. Ju<sup>n</sup>du-yi  
 Y027 eere=jü qoto+d qoto+d balaqa+d-tur ceri+üd  
 Y028 ile=jü eere=ül=BA. Jebe-yi Du<sup>n</sup>ca<sup>n</sup> balaqasun  
 Y029 eere=ül=ün ile:=be. Du<sup>n</sup>ca<sup>n</sup> balaqasun-tur gür=cü  
 Y030 eere=jü ab=un yada=ju qari=ju jirqoan qonoq qajar-a  
 Y031 gür=cü gened=ge=jü jici qari=n tata=ad qar~ kötöl-te+n  
 Y032 söni düllilge=jü<sup>986</sup> gene+d bü=küy-tür gür=cü Du<sup>n</sup>ca<sup>n</sup> balaqasu  
 Y033 ab=uay.  
 Y040 (§248) Jebe Du<sup>n</sup>ca<sup>n</sup> balaqasun-i ab=cu qariju ire=jü  
 Y041 C'ngis qahan-tur neyile=bAy. Ju<sup>n</sup>du-yi eere=gde=rün  
 Y042 altan qan-u yeke noyan O<sup>n</sup>gi<sup>n</sup>\_ c'rsa<sup>n</sup> altan qan-a  
 Y043 durad=qa=run Te<sup>n</sup>geri qajar-un jayaan caq. Yeke oro  
 Y044 yeüdge=küy caq@uu~ gür=be. Mo<sup>n</sup>qol maşi gücü-tey-e  
 Y045 ire=jü bidan-u erekü+n~ omoqu+n Qara\_ kita+d-un  
 Y046 Jürce+d-ün Jüyi+n-ü erki+d ceri+üd-i daru=ju  
 Y047 bürel=tele kidu=juuy. Itegel-tü Cabciyal-i @ber  
 Y048 buli=ju ab=cuuy. Edöe bida basa ceri+üd jasa=ju  
 Y049 qar=qa=asu basa Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-a daru=qda=asu qalaar<sup>987</sup>  
 Y050 balaqa+d balaqa+d-dur-ıyan butara=qu+n te+de. Jici

---

984: Haenisch and Pelliot wrote jölke here, but cölke is also a possibility. DeR4.892, citing MostSQP.98-99, fn. 94, states simply, "The value of the first consonant is still not clear", adding that the word refers to "a valley with a river in the middle",

985: For discussion of this term (plus Kitad, Qara kitad, and Jürced) see deR4.893-94.

986: YCPS düllilgejü emended to düllilgejü (i.e. düllil<i>gejü); see note to 6506.

987: For this word ('certainly, no doubt'), and its occurrences elsewhere in early Mongolian, see deR4.897.

Y051 *bidan-a qura=ul=uasu ülü bol=un bidan-tur dayisun bol=ju*  
 Y052 *üülü nököce=kü+n te+de. Altan qan-i soyurqa=asu*  
 Y053 *Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-un~ qan-tur edöe+d-tür else=n eyetü=ye.*  
 Y054 *Eye-tür oro=ju Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-i icu=asu icu=qa=qsan-u*  
 Y055 *qoyina basa busu sedkil bida tende eyetü=ldü=d~ @je.*  
 Y056 *Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-un @ba ere aqta qajar heüšiye=jü*  
 Y057 *kölcirge=müy<sup>988</sup> kee=gde=müy. Qan-a in-u öki ög=üye.*  
 Y058 *Altan mö<sup>n</sup>gün aurasu+d~ ed cerig-ün güün-e kündü-te*  
 Y059 *qar=qa=ju ög=üye. Ene eye-tür man-u oro=qu*  
 Y060 *üülü@ü:-y<sup>989</sup> ker mede=gde=gü kee=n durad=qa=asu*  
 Y061 *altan qan O<sup>n</sup>g<sup>n</sup> c<sup>n</sup>sa<sup>n</sup>-un ene üge jöbšiye=jü Eyin*  
 Y062 *bö=ed bol=tuqay kee=n else=n C<sup>n</sup>gis qaan-a*  
 Y063 *g<sup>n</sup>jü nere-tey öki qar=qa=ju altan mö<sup>n</sup>gün aurasun*  
 Y064 *ed~ tabar cerig-ün güün-e gücün-e mede=ül=ün*  
 Y065 *daa=quy-aca Ju<sup>n</sup>du-aca qar=qa=ju C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan-tur*  
 Y066 *O<sup>n</sup>g<sup>n</sup> c<sup>n</sup>sa<sup>n</sup> gür=ge=jü ire=bAy. Elsen ire=gde=jü*  
 Y067 *C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan eye-tür an-u oro=ju qota+d*  
 Y068 *qota+d-tur eere=d bawu=qsa+d ceri+üd-i*  
 Y069 *qari=ul=ju icu=bAy. O<sup>n</sup>g<sup>n</sup> c<sup>n</sup>sa<sup>n</sup> Moju \_ vujyu nere-tü*  
 Y070 *qošiun-a gür=tele C<sup>n</sup>gis qaan-i hüde=jü qari=BA.*  
 Y071 *Aurasun ed bidan-u ceri+üd daa=quy-aca aci=ju*  
 Y072 *kib+uud-iyar<sup>990</sup> acia-ban tata=ju yabu=bAy.*  
 Y080 (§249) *Tere morila=qsa-ar Qaši+n irge-tür yorci=BA.*  
 Y081 *Jori=ju gür=üesü Qaši+n irgen-ü Burqan else=n Baraun*  
 Y082 *qar cin-u bol=ju gücü ög=sü kee=n Caqa nere-tey*  
 Y083 *öki C<sup>n</sup>gis qaan-a qar=qa=ju ög=be. Basa*  
 Y084 *Burqan\_ qan ügüle=rün C<sup>n</sup>gis qaan-u nere aldar*  
 Y085 *sonos=cu ayu=ju a=laay ba. Edöe sülder-tü*  
 Y086 *beye cin-u gür=cü ire=gde=jü sülder-ece ayu=BA.*  
 Y087 *Ayu=ju ba Ta<sup>n</sup>ud irgen Baraun qar cin-u bol=ju*

---

988: For this and the prior verb see deR4.897.

989: De Rachewiltz (2004.176) translates, 'Who knows whether they will [or will] not agree to our proposal?'; this is "a rhetorical question implying that they would surely agree, as they in fact did" (deR4.898). This is the only one of 23 SH instances of ülü<sup>o</sup>ü (e.g. 3492, 4949) which is followed by the accusative ending.

990: For the form, referring to a kind of silk fabric, see deR4.902, and Cleaves in HJAS 13.445-46 (1950). Both writers assume a root kib, though the ud plural of that should not have a long vowel, (or a second so-called "union vowel"); cf. Street90.266.

- Y088 *gücü ög=sü' kee=bAy. Gücü ög=ürün {<sup>991</sup>nunji*
- Y089 *nuntuq-ta+n {nödü=gsen balaqasu-ta+n }bu=y~ @je. Nököce=jü*
- Y090 *{<sup>992</sup>qurdun aya ayala=quy-tur {qurca bulqa*
- Y091 *bulqa=ldu=quy-tur {qurdun ayan-tur güyice=n~ @je yada=muy~ @je.*
- Y092 *{Qurca bulqa-tur bulqa=ldu=n~ @je yada=muy~ @je ba.*
- Y093 *{C<sup>r</sup>ngis qaan-i soyurqa=asu ba Ta<sup>n</sup>ud<sup>993</sup> irgen {<sup>994</sup>ündür*
- Y094 *deresün-ü nemüre-te ös=ge=jü {olon temee+d*
- Y095 *qar=qa=ju {qa bol=qa=ju ög=sü. {Örmege neke=jü*
- Y096 *aurasun bol=qa=ju ög=sü. {Qor=qu şibawun*
- Y097 *sur=qa=ju qura=ul=ju }sayi+d-i in-u gür=ge=ül=ün*
- Y098 *a=suqay kee=n öci=bAy. Ügüle=jü üge-dür-iyen*
- Y099 *gür=ün Ta<sup>n</sup>ud irgen-ece-en temee+d qubci=ju*
- Y100 *tawu=n yada=tala abcira=ju ög=bAy.*
- Y105 (§250) *C<sup>r</sup>ngis qahan tere morila=qsan-tur Kita+d irgen-ü*
- Y106 *altan qaan-i else=ül=jü olon aurasun ab=cu*
- Y107 *Qaşı+n irgen-ü Burqan-i else=ül=jü olon*
- Y108 *temee+d ab=cu C<sup>r</sup>ngis qahan qonin jil tere*
- Y109 *morila=qsan-tur Kita+d irgen-ü Aqutay nere-tü*
- Y110 *altan qan-i else=ül=jü Ta<sup>n</sup>ud irgen-ü*
- Y111 *Iluqu\_ burqan-i else=ül=jü qari=ju Saari\_ keer-i*
- Y112 *bawu=bAy.*
- Y115 (§251) *Basa teün-ü qoyina Jewgon-tur else=n ile:=gse+d*
- Y116 *Jubqan teriü-te+n olon elci+n-iyen Kita+d irgen-ü*
- Y117 *Aqutay altan qaan-a jedgü=gde=jü C<sup>r</sup>ngis qahan*
- Y118 *noqay jil Kita+d irgen-tür basa morila=bAy.*
- Y119 *Else=n bara=ju Jewgon-tur ile:=gse+d elci+n-i yeki=n*
- Y120 *jedkü=n bü=legey kee=n morila=run C<sup>r</sup>ngis qahan Tu<sup>n</sup>gon amasar*
- Y121 *jori=ju Jebe-yi Cabciyal-iyar bol=qa=BA. «C<sup>r</sup>ngis qaan-i*
- Y122 *Tu<sup>n</sup>gon amasar-iyar bol=BA» kee=n altan qan mede=jü*
- Y123 *Ile Qada Höbögetür qurban-a ceri+üd mede=ül=jü*

---

991: Poetry marked by all except Pelliot. Note recurrence of these lines in reverse order in lines Z023-24 below.

992: Only Ligeti (following Pelliot) ends the poetry after only two lines; all others continue it, as shown here.

993: The d (present in PP) is missing from C.

994: Only Cleaves fails to indicate poetry here. Kozin extends the poetry to include an s-initial line at the end of the quotation, and (unlike Ligeti, but as in the de Rachewiltz translation) marks qa as starting a poetic line.

- Y124 Cerig bögle=jü Hulaan\_ degele+n-i ma<sup>n</sup>layla=n jasa=ju  
 Y125 Tu<sup>n</sup>gon amasar-i temece=n dabaa bu daba=ul=udqun kee=n  
 Y126 Ile Qada Höbögetür qurban-i ceri+üd qurduyla=n  
 Y127 ile=jüüy. Tu<sup>n</sup>gon amasar-a gür=üesü Kita+d-un ceri+üd  
 Y128 Qajar kee=n daa=ju ire=bAy. C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan  
 Y129 Ile Qada Höbögetür qurban-lua bayi=ldu=ju  
 Y130 Ile Qada-yi gödöl=ge=bAy. Toluy Cügü gürigen  
 Y131 qoyar köndelen-ece dobtul=ju Hulaan\_ degele+n-i icu=a=ju  
 Y132 gür=cü Ile Qada-yi gödöl=ge=jü daru=ju Kita+d-i  
 Y133 hünjüü bayi=tala kidu=bAy. «<sup>995</sup>Kita+d ceri+üd-i-yen kidu=ju  
 Y134 bara=qda=BA» kee=n altan qan mede=jü Ju<sup>n</sup>du-daca  
 Y135 qar=cu buruud=un Namgir<sup>n</sup> balaqasu oro=juuy. Hüle=gse+d  
 Y136 ceri+üd an-u turu=ju ükü=rün öer~ jaura güün-ü miqa  
 Y137 ide=ldü=jüüy. Toluy Cügü gürigen qoyar sayi-tur  
 Y138 üyiled=bAy kee=n C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan Toluy Cügü gürigen  
 Y139 qoyar-i maši soyurqa=BA.  
 Y145 (§252) C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan Qošivu-yi bawu=ad Ju<sup>n</sup>du-yin Šira\_ keer  
 Y146 bawu=bAy<sup>996</sup>. Jebe Cabciyal-un qa:lqa ebde=jü Cabciyal-i  
 Y147 bari=qsa+d ceri+üd-i gödöl=ge=jü ire=jü  
 Y148 C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan-tur neyile=bAy. Altan qan Ju<sup>n</sup>du-daca  
 Y149 qar=urun Ju<sup>n</sup>du dотора Qada-yi lyušyu bol=qa=n tüši=jü  
 Y150 od=uqsan a=juu. C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan Ju<sup>n</sup>du-yin altan möngün  
 Y151 ed aurasun yau~ ke in-u toola=ul=urun Öngür bawurci  
 Y152 Arqay\_ qasar Šigi\_ qutuqu qurban-i ile:=bAy.  
 Y153 «E+de qurban-i ayis=ay» kee=n Qada esergü~ uqdu=n<sup>997</sup>  
 Y154 alta-tay har-tay aurasu bari=ad Ju<sup>n</sup>du dотора-ca  
 Y155 qar=cu esergü ire=bAy. Qada-da Šigi\_ qutuqu  
 Y156 ügüle=rün Urida ene Ju<sup>n</sup>du-yin ed mün Ju<sup>n</sup>du altan  
 Y157 qan-u-ay a=juu~ @je. Edöe Ju<sup>n</sup>du C<sup>n</sup>gis qaan-u-ay  
 Y158 bu=y @je. C<sup>n</sup>gis qaan-u ed aurasu ecine^ün  
 Y159 yeki=n qulaq=cu abcira=ju ög=ümü ci. Bi ülü ab=qu  
 Y160 kee=jü Šigi\_ qutuqu ese ab=ua. Öngür bawurci  
 Y161 Arqay qoyar ab=bAy. E+de qurban Ju<sup>n</sup>du-yin  
 Y162 ed~ yau~ ke toola=ju ire=BA. Ttende C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan Öngür

---

995: Street13.61, 64.

996: C has bawube, PP bawubAy; for once PP seems preferable.

997: See note to 6271.

Y163 Arqay Qutuqu qurban-aca *Qada yau* ög=BA kee=n  
 Y164 asaq=BA. Šigi\_ qutuqu ügüle=rün Alta-tay har-tay  
 Y165 aurasu abcira=ju ög=ülüe. Bi ügüle=rün Urida  
 Y166 ene Jır̄du altan qan-u-ay a=juu~ @je. Edöe  
 Y167 Cır̄gis qaan-u-ay bol=BA~ @je. Ci Qada Cır̄gis qaan-u  
 Y168 ed ecine^ün qulaq=cu yeki=n ög=ümü ci' kee=jü  
 Y169 bi ese ab=uBA. Öngür Arqay qoyar ög=ügse+d-i  
 Y170 in-u ab=ulaa kee=be. Cır̄gis qahan tende Öngür  
 Y171 Arqay qoyar-i maši doṅqod=BA. Šigi\_ qutuqu-yi<sup>998</sup> Yeke  
 Y172 yosu sedki=jüü ci kee=n maši soyurqa=ju {<sup>999</sup>Üje=gü-yin  
 Y173 min-u nidün {sonos=qu-yin min-u cikin }bol=ju  
 Y174 ülü@ü:~ aqu ci kee=n jarliq bol=BA.  
 Y180 (§253) Altan qan Namgr̄n oro=ju öer-iyen elsen mürgü=jü  
 Y181 Teṅgeri nere-tü köü-ben jaun nökö+d-tü-yi Cır̄gis qahan-tur  
 Y182 Turqaq bol=tuqay kee=n ile:=jüü. Ima-da else=gde=jü  
 Y183 Cır̄gis qahan Icu=ya kee=n Cabciyal-iyar tende icu=run  
 Y184 Qasar-i jewün qar-un ceri+üd-iyer dalay gij̄i=n<sup>1000</sup> ile:=rün  
 Y185 Beygr̄n balaqasu bawu=dqun. Beygr̄n balaqasun-i else=ül=jü  
 Y186 cinana Jürce+d-ün Vuqanu-yi daari=n od=cu Vuqanu bulqa  
 Y187 sedki=esü haul=udqun. Else=esü in-u gij̄iar<sup>1001</sup>  
 Y188 balaqa+d an-u daari=n Ula Nau müre+d giji=n od=cu  
 Y189 Tawur müren öede daba=ju yeke auruq-tur  
 Y190 neyile=n ire=dkün kee=jü ile:=be. Qasar-lua  
 Y191 noya+d-aca Jürcedey Alci Tolun cerbi qurban-i  
 Y192 ile:=ldü=bAy. Qasar Beygr̄n balaqasun oro=ul=ju  
 Y193 Jürce+d-ün Vuqanu-yi else=ül=jü mör-e~ bü=kü+n balaqasun-i  
 Y194 oro=ul=uad Qasar Tawur müren öede ire=jü  
 Y195 yeke auruq-tur bawu=ju ire=bAy.

---

998: Either direct object of soyurqa-, or referential object.

999: Only Ligeti fails to mark the poetry here. (Pelliot had no alliteration to mark.)

1000: De Rachewiltz translates 'along', but this is probably a converb of a gij̄i 'following along (a road, etc.)'. Kuribayashi 2001 regularly shows a morpheme division in this form. See note to Y187 below.

1001: kij̄iar balaqa+d 'border towns' occurs in Y379 (cf. kij̄iar irgen in Y523), a dative kij̄iar-a in 4031, 8361; cf. CMo. kij̄ayar 'border'. But Haenisch (H62dict.50) lists the present form as instrumental of a noun \*gij̄i (CMo. kija, also 'border'). Note also what is probably a converb gij̄i-n 'along' in Y184 and Y188, equivalent to the kij̄i-n in 7326. For remarks on these forms and their Chinese glosses see deR4.921.

Y200 (§254) Teiin-ü qoyina C'ngis qahan Sartaul<sup>1002</sup> irgen-e  
 Y201 Uquna teriü-te+n jaun elci+n-iyen jedgü=jü ala=qda=ju  
 Y202 C'ngis qahan ügüle=rün Altan arqamji-yan Sartaul  
 Y203 irgen-e ker~ tasul=da=n bü=leey kee=n Uquna teriü-te+n  
 Y204 jaun elci+n-ü-en {<sup>1003</sup>ösöl ösö=n {kisal kisa=n } Sartaul  
 Y205 irgen-tür morila=ya kee=n morila=quy-tur tende Yisüy  
 Y206 qadun C'ngis qaan-a durad=qa=n öci=rün<sup>1004</sup> Qahan {<sup>1005</sup>ündür<sup>1006</sup> dabaa  
 Y207 daba=n {örgen müre+d ketül=ün {urtu caur caura=n  
 Y208 {olon ulus-iyen jibšier=ün sedki=bAy.  
 Y209 }Töre=gsen @ele ami-ta+n-tur mönke ügey a=juu.  
 Y210 {<sup>1007</sup>Neüle metü beye cin-u {negüs od=uasu {nedkel  
 Y211 metü ulus-iyen {ken-e ge:=mü. {Tulu metü beye cin-u  
 Y212 {tulbas od=uasu {tuyal metü ulus-iyen {ken-e  
 Y213 ge:=mü. }Töre=gsen dörben külü+üd köü+d-ü-en ken-i in-u  
 Y214 kee=mü. Köü+d-te deü+ner-e olon qaracu+s-a man-a @ber  
 Y215 mawu+n-a uqa=ju a=quy-a uqa=qsan-iyen durad=qa=qsan  
 Y216 bol=BA. Jarliq mede=tügey kee=n öci=esü  
 Y217 C'ngis qahan jarliq bol=urun Qadun @ber güün  
 Y218 bö=esü Yisüy-in üge jöb-ece jöb. Ke+d @ber deü+ner  
 Y219 köü+d ta @ber Boorcu Muqali-ta+n eyin ese  
 Y220 durad=qa=bAy. Bi @ber {<sup>1008</sup>uridu+s-i ülü udaara=quy-aca  
 Y221 {umarta=ju a=juu. {Üküle<sup>n</sup>-e ülü erüs=te=güy-ece

---

1002: See note to 5142.

1003: See note to 1401; poetry here marked by Ligeti but not Kozin.

1004: De Rachewiltz (2004.922-23) believes that sections 254 and 255 were later additions, made after Möngke's accession to the throne in 1251. His remarks include the following. "The dialogue [between Chinggis and his wife Yisüy], is almost certainly a later interpolation reflecting the views of that section of the Mongol court and nobility which was opposed to the claims of the lines of Jochi and Cha'adai - the two eldest sons of Chinggis. The episode continues, with definite political overtones, in the following section (§255), in which Ögödei's claim to succession is upheld, but in such a way as to foreshadow the eventual replacement of his line by that of Tolui, as indeed happened...".

1005: Kozin and Ligeti continue the poetry to the end of the sentence, the former starting a new poetic line two words from the end.

1006: YCPS üntür emended (here and in X015) to ündür (i.e. ün<t>[d]ür); emendation mine (JCS).

1007: Poetry indicated by all five writers; de Rachewiltz follows Kozin marking two additional poetic lines with initial k, Cleaves follows Ligeti who here includes those words in the prior line. Nearly identical lines appear in X368-72.

1008: Poetic lines indicated by de Rachewiltz and Ligeti (following Kozin), but not Cleaves or Pelliot.

Y222 {untara=ju a=juu } kee=ed Köü+d-ün min-u aqa  
 Y223 Joci bu=y~ @je. Yau kee=mü ci. Kelele kee=BA. Joci-yi  
 Y224 do<sup>n</sup>qod=qu-yin urida Caaday ügüle=rün «Joci-yi  
 Y225 kelele» kee=rün Joci-yu@u<sup>1009</sup> tüši=n ügüle=müy. Ene  
 Y226 Merki<sup>^</sup>dey~ cul~ uljaur-a ker mede=ül=kü+n bida  
 Y227 kee=küy-lie Joci bos=uad Caaday-in jaqa-tur  
 Y228 tus=cu ügüle=rün Qan ecige-de busu ese kee=gde=lüe.  
 Y229 Ci nama-yi ker ilqa=muy. Yambar erdem-iyer hüleü~ ci.  
 Y230 Qaqca kecewü-ber-iyen maqa hüleü @ele ci. Hontuca=ju  
 Y231 cima-da qar=da=asu heregey-en hoqtol=ju oor=suqay.  
 Y232 Aba=ldu=ju cima-da ilaq=da=asu una=qsan qajar-aca  
 Y233 bu bos=suqay. Qan ecige-yin jarliq mede=tügey kee=be.  
 Y234 Joci<sup>1010</sup> Caaday qoyar jaqa-ca bari=ldu=ju bayi=n bü=küy-tür  
 Y235 Joci-yin qar-aca Boorcu tata=ju Caaday-in qar-aca  
 Y236 Muqali tata=ju bü=küy-tür C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan sonos=cu  
 Y237 sem~ sau=n~ bu=y. Tende Kökö\_ cos jewün eteed bayi=ju  
 Y238 ügüle=rün Caaday yeki=n yaara=yu ci. Qan ecige cin-u  
 Y239 köü+d-ün dотора cima-daca ere=jü bü=lee. Tan-i töre=gü-yin  
 Y240 urida {<sup>1011</sup> hodu-tay te<sup>n</sup>geri {horci=ju bü=lee. {Qlon ulus  
 Y241 bulqa bü=lee. {Qron-dur-iyen ülü oro=n {oljala=ldu=n  
 Y242 bü=lee. {Körisü-tey etügen {körbe=jü bü=lee.<sup>1012</sup> {Gür ulus  
 Y243 bulqa bü=lee. {Könjile-de-en ülü gebte=n {görüle=ldü=n bü=lee.  
 Y244 Teyimü caq-tur {güse=jü ese yabu=BA~ @je.  
 Y245 {Gür=ülce=küy-tür bol=BA~ @je. {Buruud=cu ese yabu=BA.  
 Y246 {Bulqa=ldu=quy-tur bol=BA~ @je. {Amara=ju ese yabu=BA~ @je.  
 Y247 {Ala=ldu=quy-tur bol=BA~ @je. }Boqda qadun eke-yü-en  
 Y248 tosun duran qoru=ul=ju sün jürügen eede=ül=jü ügüle=müy

---

1009: This is apparently Joci-yu-ü (Street 2010.48, 55), with the two Chinese characters after the name representing the accusative ending (in the allomorph -yu [Street 1957.29-30]) plus the interrogative particle.

1010: Lines Y234-Y273 are discussed by MostSQP.185-208 (= HJAS 15.315-338).

1011: Kozin treats as poetry all the residue of §254 except the final keebe; some of his poetic lines are shorter than Ligeti et al. Other writers break up that passage as shown here. A few of the lines in Cleaves translation are shorter than those in deR4.183-84.

1012: C bülejü, PP bülee. Both Haenisch and Pelliot preferred the latter form.

Y249 ci. {<sup>1013</sup>Büleen-ece {büled<sup>1014</sup>~ mün keeli-dece ese@ü: töre=leey  
 Y250 ta. {Qalaun-aca {qalad qaqa {qaqunaq-aca ese@ü:  
 Y251 {qar=ulaa~ ta. {Jürügen-ece töre=gse eke-yü-en {cimad=qa=asu  
 Y252 {cinar in-u {jekir=cü {jalira=ul=uasu ülü bol=i.  
 Y253 {Keeli-dece töre=gse eke-yü-en {gemüri=ül=üesü  
 Y254 {genüer in-u {ges=ge=esü<sup>1015</sup> ülü bol=i. {Qan ecige tan-u  
 Y255 {qamuq ulus-i bayi=ul=urun {qara teriü-ben qanjuqala=ju  
 Y256 {qara cisu-ban nambuqala=ju {qara nidü-ben hirmes  
 Y257 ülü ki=n~ {qabtaqay<sup>1016</sup> ciki-ben dere-tür ülü talbi=n {qancu-ban  
 Y258 derele=jü {qormay-ban debüs=cü {šilüsün-iyen unda:la=ju  
 Y259 {šigi-yen~ qonaqla=ju {<sup>1017</sup>ma<sup>n</sup>lay-in kölesün {ula-tur güer=tele  
 Y260 {ula-yin kölesün {ma<sup>n</sup>lay-tur qar=tala }öhümle=n kicie=n  
 Y261 yabu=quy caq-tur eke tan-u qamtu-bar jobo=ldu=run  
 Y262 {<sup>1018</sup>horay=tala boqtala=ju {hooji=tala büsele=jü {niyyitay=tala  
 Y263 boqtola=ju<sup>1019</sup> {nidura=tala büsele=jü {tan-i-yan<sup>1020</sup> ös=ge=rün  
 Y264 {jalgi=quy jaura {jarim-iyen ög=cü {qoolay-an {quci=ju  
 Y265 {qotola-iyen ög=cü {qoosun yabu=quy bü=leey. {Egem-ece  
 Y266 tan-u tata=ju — {Ere-lüe sacau+n ken-e<sup>1021</sup> bol=qa=qu' —  
 Y267 {güjüün-ece tan-u tata=ju — {Güün-lüe sacau+n ken-e bol=qa=qu'

---

1013: For Kozin, see note to Y240. Line divisions here are from Ligeti; Cleaves follows his markings more closely than de Rachewiltz (whose divisions are often brief'er, like those of Kozin).

1014: I find this form (glossed as 'suddenly') rather puzzling, but my sources do not seem to have discussed it. Haenisch transcribed it bulot (H62dict.22); in Hattori's transcription system it would be romanized as bü-lei-d; Pelliot has bülät; Ligeti and de Rachewiltz write bület (= büled in my transcription and that of MostSQP.318).

1015: First morpheme division based on CMo.

1016: The b (present in PP) is missing in C.

1017: Cleaves and Ligeti (following Pelliot) do not take the next few lines as poetic.

1018: For Kozin, see note to Y240. Line divisions here are from Ligeti; Cleaves follows his markings more closely than de Rachewiltz (whose divisions are often brief'er, like those of Kozin).

1019: Elsewhere the verb is spelled boqtala-

1020: DeR72.151 shows only the first morpheme division here, Ligeti 227 and MostSQP.318 only the second. Cf. the form in Y318.

1021: Both Cleaves and de Rachewiltz (following MostSQP.337) translate kene here and in the next line as 'how?', though of course it is literally 'for whom?'



Y268 *kee=jü {buyi<sup>1022</sup> tan-u arilqa=ju {burbuy tan-u ergü=ül=jü*  
 Y269 *{ere-yin egem-tür {aqta-yin qarqam-tur gü=ge=jü*  
 Y270 *{edöe tan-u-a+n sayi üje=sü kee=n sedki=jü*  
 Y271 *ese@ü: a=muy. Boqta qadun bidan-u {<sup>1023</sup>naran metü gegeen*  
 Y272 *{naur metü delger }sedkil-tü bü=lee*  
 Y273 *kee=be.*  
 Y284 (§255) *Tende-ce Cırgis qan ügüle=rün Joci-yi<sup>1024</sup> yeki=n teyin kee=müy~ ta.*  
 Y285 *Köö+d-ün min-u aqa Joci ülü@ü:~ bu=y. Qoyina teyin bu*  
 Y286 *kee=dkün kee=n jarlıq bol=BA. Ene üge-tür Caaday*  
 Y287 *mücilje=jü ügüle=rün Joci-yin gücü-tü-yi erdem-ün*  
 Y288 *qariu ülü ügüle=n {<sup>1025</sup>ama-ar ala=qsan {aci=asu ülü*  
 Y289 *bol=i. {Üge-er ükü=ül=ügsen {übcı=esü ülü bol=i.*  
 Y290 *{Köö+d-ün aqa Joci ba qoyar bu=y~ @je. Qan ecige-de*  
 Y291 *qolba:ra=n<sup>1026</sup> gücün ög=sü. {<sup>1027</sup>Daldari=qsan-ıyan {dalbaru*  
 Y292 *cabci=ldu=su. {Qojida=qsan-ıyan {borbin-ıyan kırgürü*  
 Y293 *cabci=ldu=su. }Ögödey@lü örüg~ bu=y. Ögödey-i*  
 Y294 *kee=ldü=ye. Ögödey qan ecige-yin dergede a=ju*  
 Y295 *baraa yeke maqalay-in bawliya tani=ul=uasu bol=u~ @je*  
 Y296 *kee=be. Ene üge-tür Cırgis qahan ügüle=rün*  
 Y297 *Joci yau kee=mü. Kelele kee=be. Joci*  
 Y298 *ügüle=rün {<sup>1028</sup>Caaday@lu ügüle=be. Caaday ba qoyar*  
 Y299 *qolbaara=n gücü ög=sü. Ögödey-i kee=ldü=ye*  
 Y300 *kee=be. Cırgis qahan jarlıq bol=urun {<sup>1029</sup>Qolbaara=tala*

---

1022: This word "is not glossed in the interlinear translation and is otherwise unknown [in Mongolian]" (deR4.930); it is left untranslated by MostSQP.206, 208 and C182. But de Rachewiltz there cites sources showing that the word turns out to be Tkc. boi, "i.e. buy ~ boy/bod `body; the (whole) figure, stature, length'.

1023: For Kozin, see note to Y240. Ligeti, like Kozin (but not Cleaves or de Rachewiltz), includes the last two words of the quotation in the final poetic line.

1024: Referential object: `How can you speak thus about Joci" (Street13.13).

1025: Kozin takes the whole quoted sequence to be poetry. Other writers treat the passage as shown here.

1026: Long vowel marked by Kurib1.532 but not shown in deR72.151, 294; cf. lines Y299-300.

1027: De Rachewiltz and Kozin (see note to Y288) indicate the four poetic lines here, but not Ligeti or Cleaves.

1028: Only Kozin treats the next two sentences as poetry.

1029: Only Kozin treats all of lines Y300-Y310 as poetry.

Y301 *yaun~ bu=y. Ötögen eke auy~ bu=y. Müre+d usu+d olon~ bu=y.*

Y302 *Şal=qu şitü<sup>1030</sup> nuntuq audki=n qari daru=ul=un*

Y303 *sal=qa=ya kee=ed Joci Caaday qoyar*

Y304<sup>111</sup> *üge+s-tür-iyen gür=ülce=dkün. {<sup>1031</sup>Irgen-e bu inee=ül=üdkün.*

Y305 *{Haran-a bu habqari=ul=udqun. }Erte Altan Qucar*

Y306 *qoyar ene metü üge bara=ldu=ju jici*

Y307<sup>112</sup> *üge+s-tür-iyen ülü gür=gü-yin tula ker ki=gde=lüey.*

Y308 *Yambar bol=qa=qda=luay. Edöe Altan Qucar*

Y309 *qoyar-un uru+ud-aca tan-lua sal=qa=ldu=ya. Te+den-i*

Y310 *üje=jü yau osolda=qu+n ta kee=ed Ögödey*

Y311 *yau kee=mü. Kelege kee=be. Ögödey ügüle=rün*

Y312 *{<sup>1032</sup>Qahan ece: soyurqa=ju Ügüle' kee=gde=esü yau-ban*

Y313 *ügüle=gü. Bi ülü cida=qu' kee=n ker ügüle=gü.*

Y314 *Cida=quy-bar qatauci=suqay @gü' kee=mü @je. Mona qoyina*

Y315 *maqa uruq-tur min-u {<sup>1033</sup>öle<sup>n</sup>-tür quci=asu {hüker-e*

Y316 *ülü ide=gde=gü {eükün-tür quci=asu {noqay-a*

Y317 *ülü ide=gde=gü }töre=esü qandaqay ketüs*

Y318 *quluqana cöles alda=quy@uu. Edüy-yü-en<sup>1034</sup> @je*

Y319 *kee=mü. Busu yau ügüle=gü bi kee=be.*

Y320 *Ene üge-tür C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan jarliq bol=urun Ögödey*

Y321 *eyimü+n üge+s ügüle=gü bö=esü bol=u~ @je kee=be.*

Y322 *Basa Toluy yau kee=mü. Kelege kee=be. Toluy*

Y323 *ügüle=rün Bi~ {<sup>1035</sup>qahan ecige-yin nereyid=ügsen aqa-yu-an*

Y324 *dergede aju {umarta=qsan-i durad=qa=ju {untara=qsan-i*

Y325 *seri=ül=jü {je-yin~ nökör {jeerde-yin minaa bol=ju*

Y326 *{je-dece ülü~ qojida=n {jerge-dece ülü colayita=n {urtu*

---

1030: Şalqu şitü is apparently 'easily divisible' or the like. Cf. ügey şitü in 5364 ('as if non-existent'). It is not clear to me what this second element is. (Interpreting the final vowel as ü rather than u assumes that the second element here is an independent word rather than a suffix.)

1031: See note to Y298. All writers treat the next six words as poetry: Cleaves as four lines, Ligeti (like deR4.187) as two.

1032: Kozin treats all of this quotation as poetry, other writers only the parts noted below.

1033: Ligeti and Cleaves take this to be two lines of poetry, de Rachewiltz (like Kozin; see note to Y312) as four.

1034: A most unexpected form; cf. the note to tan-i-yan in line Y263.

1035: Kozin treats as poetry all the residue of the present quotation (Y323-27), other only the portion here marked.

Y327 *caur caura=ju {oqor bolqa bol=qa=ju ög=sü } kee=n*  
 Y328 *ügüle=esü C'ngis qahan jöbšiye=n jarliq bol=urun*  
 Y329 *{<sup>1036</sup>}Qasar-un uruq niken-iyen mede=ül. Alciday-in*  
 Y330 *uruq niken-iyen mede=ül. Odcigin-u uruq niken-iyen*  
 Y331 *mede=ül. Belgütey-in uruq niken-iyen mede=ül.*  
 Y332 *Teyin sedki=jü min-u urug-i niken-i mede=ül=jü min-u*  
 Y333 *jarliq busu ülü bol=qa=n ese hutaru=asu ülü*  
 Y334 *ende=kü+n ülü alda=qu+n<sup>1037</sup>~ ta. Ögödey-in urug-i {<sup>1038</sup>öle<sup>n</sup>-tür*  
 Y335 *quci=asu hüker-e ülü ide=gde=gü {öükün-tür*  
 Y336 *quci=asu noqay-a ülü ide=gde=gü }töre=esü min-u*  
 Y337 *uruq-tur niken@üü sayin ülü töre=gü a=juu kee=n*  
 Y338 *jarliq bol=uad*  
 Y350 (§256) *C'ngis qahan morila=run Ta<sup>n</sup>ud irgen-ü Burqan-tur*  
 Y351 *elci+n ile:=rün Baraun qar cin-u bol=su' kee=lüe*  
 Y352 *ci. Sartaul irgen-e altan arqamji-yan*  
 Y353 *tasul=da=ju ol=ulca=n morila=BA bi. Baraun qar*  
 Y354 *bol=un morila kee=jü ile:=esü Burqan-i do<sup>n</sup>qod=uay*  
 Y355 *üdüüy-e<sup>1039</sup> urida Aša\_ gambu ügüle=rün Gücü yada=n böe=tele*  
 Y356 *qan bol=tala yaun kee=jü cerig ülü neme=n*  
 Y357 *yeke üge ügüle=jü ile:=jüü. Tende C'ngis qahan*  
 Y358 *ügüle=rün Aša\_ gambu-da ker eyin ügüle=gde=n bü=leey*  
 Y359 *kee=n Arqa-ca an-dur @bö=ed<sup>1040</sup> kelbes<sup>1041</sup> jori=ju*  
 Y360 *ile:=esü yaun berke-tü bü=leey. Öere maqa*  
 Y361 *güün-tür jori=ju bü=küy-tür @je teli. Mö<sup>n</sup>ke te<sup>n</sup>geri-de*  
 Y362 *ihee=gde=esü altan jiloa batu-da tata=ju*  
 Y363 *ire=esü tende maqa bol=tuqay teli kee=jü*  
 Y368 (§257) *tawlay jil Sartaul irgen-tür Aray-iyar<sup>1042</sup> daba=n*  
 Y369 *morila=run C'ngis qahan qatun-aca Qulan qatun-i ab=un*

---

1036: Kozin takes all of the present quotation as poetry.

1037: YCPS alqun emended (H62txt.89) to aldaqun (i.e. al[da]qun).

1038: All writers treat these poetic lines exactly as in Y315-17 above.

1039: YCPS üdüüy-a interpreted as front-harmonic (i.e. üdüüy-<a>[e]).

1040: See note to 3081; here de Rachewiltz translates 'at once'.

1041: For kelbes see de Rachewiltz 2004.938.

1042: See note to line 8022.

Y370 ayala=run dei+ner-ece Odcigin noyan-i yeke auruq-tur  
 Y371 tüši=jü morila=bAy. Jebe-yi ma<sup>n</sup>lay ile:=bAy.  
 Y372 Jebe-yin gejige Sübeetey-i ile:=bAy. Sübeetey-in  
 Y373 gejige Toqucar-i ile:=be. E+de qurban-i ile:=rün  
 Y374 Qadaun od=cu Sultan-u cinana qar=cu bidan-i  
 Y375 gür=ge=ül=ün qamsa=dqun kee=jü ile:=be. Jebe tere  
 Y376 od=cu qan Melig-ün balaqa+d daari=ju ülü könde=n  
 Y377 qadaun nögc=jüü. Teün-ü qoyina-ca Sübeetey mün  
 Y378 yosu-ar ülü könde=n nögc=jüü. Teün-ü qoyina-ca  
 Y379 Toqucar qan Melig-ün kijiar balaqa+d haul=ju  
 Y380 tariyaci+n-i<sup>1043</sup> in-u dawuli=juuy. Qan Melig *balaqa+d-iyān*  
 Y381 *haul=da=a* kee=n dayji=n gödöl=jü Jalaldin<sup>1044</sup>  
 Y382<sup>113</sup> soltan-tur neyile=jüü. Jalaldin soltan qan Melig qoyar  
 Y383 C<sup>n</sup>gis qaan-u esergü morila=juuy. C<sup>n</sup>gis qaan-u  
 Y384 urida Šigi\_ qutuqu ma<sup>n</sup>lay yabu=juuy. Šigi\_ qutuqu-lua  
 Y385 bayi=ldu=ju Jalaldin soltan qan Melig qoyar  
 Y386 Šigi\_ qutuqu-yi daru=ju C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan-tur gür=tele  
 Y387 daru=ju ayisu=quy-tur Jebe Sübeetey Toqucar  
 Y388 qurban Jalaldin soltan qan Melig qoyar-un qoyina-ca  
 Y389 oro=ju jici ani daru=ju kidu=ad Buqar Semisgen<sup>1045</sup>  
 Y390 Udarar balaqasun-tur ani ülü neyile=ül=ün  
 Y391 daru=ju Šin müren-e gür=tele hülde=jü yabu=qda=run  
 Y392 Šin müren-tür cübtüs=cü oro=qu+n bol=un olon  
 Y393 Sartaul-iyān tende Šin müren-tür söe=BA~ @je. Jalaldin  
 Y394 soltan qan Melig qoyar ami-yan qoroq=un Šin müren  
 Y395 öede tutaa=BA. C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan Šin müren öede  
 Y396 yorci=ju Badkesen-i dawli=ju od=cu Eke\_ qoroqan

---

1043: YCPS *tariyajin-i* emended to *tariyacin-i* (i.e. *tariya<j>[c]in-i*); emendation mine (JCS). The *ci* singular form is found in the Hua-i i-yü (Most/deR77.99, Kuribayashi 2003.35 [p. 1:14a4 of original]), and the ending here is clearly not the *-jin* suffix of tribal affiliation (e.g. SH 1228-29). The nasal plural (deR4.190 translates 'peasents') should be added to the list of such *-ci-n* forms in Street90.353-54.

1044: Note that the YCPS text here and throughout this chapter actually has *Jalaldin* for this name (by what Ligeti, pp. 14-17, calls "phonetic substitution" of a character properly representing *din* for the Mongolian syllable *din*). De Rachewiltz's system of transcription permitted him to write *Jalaldin<g>* for this form in the text; I write simply *Jalaldin* here and below.

1045: YCPS *Semisgab* emended, here and in lines Y429-30 to *Semisgen* (i.e. *Semisg<ab>[en]*). So also in Y429, Y430; while Y508 has properly *Semisgen*. De Rachewiltz explains as follows (deR4.943): "Semisgab'...is a corruption of 'Semisgen', the Mongol name of Samarkand..., which derives from Turkish Semizkänd, lit. 'Fat (= Rich) City'. The distortion has occurred as a result of an incorrect reading of the word Semisgen in Uighur-Mongol script." (The correction was originally made by Pelliot.)

Y397 Geün\_ qoroqan gür=cü Baruan\_ keer-i bawu=ju Jalayir<sup>1046</sup>  
 Y398 Bala-yi Jalaldin soltan qan Melig qoyar-i neke=ül=ün  
 Y399 ile:=jü Jebe Sübeetey qoyar-i maši soyurqa=ju *Jebe ci*  
 Y400 *Jirqoaday nere-tü bü=lee. Tayiciu+d-aca<sup>1047</sup> ire=jü*  
 Y401 *Jebe bol=BA @je ci. Toqucar-i<sup>1048</sup> Qan Melig-ün kijaar*  
 Y402 *balaqa+d öer-ün dura-ar haul=ju qan Melig-i*  
 Y403 *dayiji=ul=BA. Jasaq bol=qa=n mököri=ül=üyE kee=n*  
 Y404 bara=ju jici ülü mököri=ül=ün maši do<sup>n</sup>qod=cu cerig  
 Y405 mede=gü-dece in-u ereüle=jü bawu=:f=bAy.  
 Y414 (§258) Tedüy C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan Barula keer-ece qari=ju Joci  
 Y415 Caaday Ögödey qurban köü+d-i Baraun qar-un ceri+üd-iyer  
 Y416 *Amuy müren ketül=jü Ürü<sup>n</sup>geci balaqasu bawu=dqun kee=n*  
 Y417 ile:=be. Toluy-i Iru Isebür terüi-te+n olon  
 Y418 *balaqa+d bawu=dqun kee=n ile:=bAy. C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan*  
 Y419 öesün Udirar balaqasu bawu=BA. Joci Caaday  
 Y420 Ögödey qurban köü+d öci=jü ile:rün Ceri+üd man-u  
 Y421 *bügüd=be. Ürü<sup>n</sup>geci balaqasu gür=BA. Ken-ü-en*  
 Y422 *üge-er yabu=qu+n ba~ kee=n öci=jü ile:=esü*  
 Y423 C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan jarliq bol=urun Ögödey-ü-en üge-er  
 Y424 *yabu=dqun kee=jü ile:=be.*  
 Y428 (§259) Tedüy C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan Udurar balaqasu oro=ul=ju  
 Y429 Udurar balaqasun-aca gödöl=jü Semisgen<sup>1049</sup> balaqasu  
 Y430 bawu=BA. Semisgen balaqasun-aca gödöl=jü Buqar balaqasu  
 Y431 bawu=BA. Tende C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan Bala-yi gülice=n Altan\_ qorqan-u  
 Y432 niriun soltan-u jusala<sup>n</sup> jusa=ju Toluy-tur elci+n  
 Y433 ile:=be. Hon qalaun bol=BA. Busu+d ceri+üd bawu=d~ @je.  
 Y434 Ci bidan-tur neyile kee=jü ile:=esü Toluy  
 Y435<sup>114</sup> Iru\_ isebür-tE+n balaqa+d ab=cu Sisten balaqasu ebde=jü Cuqceren

---

1046: YCPS Jaliyartay emended to Jalayirtay (i.e. Jal<i>[a]y<a>[i]rtay). The emendation was made by Pelliot, and carried over into other versions of the text without indication that an emendation is involved.

1047: YCPS Tayiciud-aca emended to Tayiciud-aca (i.e. Tayic<u>[i]ud-aca); emendation mine (JCS). But note that I have not corrected the Tayjiud forms of 2050 and 4378.

1048: Assuming that this is a referential object, and that the word stands outside the prior quoted sequence (which translators take to continue up to keen).

1049: YCPS Semisgab emended to Semisgen (i.e. Semisg<ab>[en]); so in next line. See note in line Y389.

Y436 balaqasu<sup>1050</sup> ebde=n bü=küy-tür elci+n ene kelen  
 Y437 gür=ge=esü Toluy Cuqceren balaqasu ebde=ed  
 Y438 qari=n bawu=ju ire=ed C'ngis qahan-tur neyile=bAy.  
 Y442 (§260) Joci Caaday Ögödey qurban köü+d Örü'geci balaqasu  
 Y443 oro=ul=ju qurbaula balaqa+d irgen qubiya=ldu=ju  
 Y444 C'ngis qaan-a qubi ese qar=qa=juu. E+de qurban  
 Y445 köü+d-i bawu=ju ire=esü C'ngis qahan Joci Caaday  
 Y446 Ögödey qurban köü+d-i cimad=cu qurban üdür ese  
 Y447 aulja=ul=BA. Tende Boorcu Muqali Šigi\_ quduqu  
 Y448 qurban öci=rün Öci=n~ melje=n a=qsa+d Sartaul  
 Y449 irgen-ü soltan-i doroyida=ul=ju balaqa+d  
 Y450 irge an-u ab=uay bida. Qubiya=ju ab=da=qu Örü'geci  
 Y451 balaqasun qubiya=ldu=ju ab=qu+n köü+d bügüde  
 Y452 C'ngis qaan-u-ay bu=y. Te'geri qajar-a gücü neme=gde=jü  
 Y453 Sartaul irgen-i edüy doroyita=ul=uqsan-tur  
 Y454 ba olon ere aqta cin-u bayas=cu maqay=ju<sup>1051</sup>  
 Y455 a=muy. Qahan yeki=n eyin kil'la=ju a=mu. Köü+d  
 Y456 buruu-yan uqa=ju ayu=BA @je. Qoyici-yu-an sur=tuqay.  
 Y457 Köü+d aburi-yan alqasa=ujay. Soyurqa=asu  
 Y458 aulja=ul=uasu bol=quy@u: kee=n öci=esü  
 Y459 C'ngis qahan jalira=ju Joci Caaday Ögödey qurban  
 Y460 köü+d-i aulja=ul=ju do'nqod=urun {<sup>1052</sup>ötögü+s üge+s  
 Y461 orkid=cu {qaucin üge+s qadal=ju {bayi=qsan qajar-a  
 Y462 {baqta~ alda=tala {ma'nlay-in kölesün {arci=n yada=tala  
 Y463 } badarki=ju<sup>1053</sup> cimal-iar<sup>1054</sup> söyüer duul=qa=n bü=küy-tür  
 Y464 Qo'nqay qorci Qo'nqar qorci Cormaqan qorci —<sup>1055</sup> e+de

---

1050: Pelliot's edition inadvertently omitted nine words at this point.

1051: The verb is not attested elsewhere, and is here left unglossed (Cleaves 1982.201). See the lengthy discussion in deR4.952-53.

1052: De Rachewiltz follows Kozin in marking the poetic lines as shown here; Cleaves similarly, without separating the lines starting with baqta and arcin. Ligeti recognizes as poetry only the lines marked as alliterative by Pelliot.

1053: Perhaps read badar ki-ju as H62dict.11 (contra 1962txt.91).

1054: Emending the r of text's cimar ('reproach, rebuke) to l, i.e. cima<r>[l]iar; cf. SH cimaliqay üge 'resentful words' (Z576), CMo. cimala- 'be dissatisfied'. The passage is discussed by de Rachewiltz 2004.954, who translates the phrase as 'At the moment when he was causing [them] to hear reprimands and admonitions'.

1055: There is a clear major space at this point.

Y465 qurban qorci+n — C'ngis qaan-a öci=rün Boro šibawun  
 Y466 bawliya-tur sayi oro=qu metü köü+d sayi edüy ayala=n  
 Y467 sur=un~ bü=küy-tür köü+d-i š'ntal=un<sup>1056</sup> mene metü yeki=n  
 Y468 eyin do<sup>n</sup>qod=umu. Köü+d ayu=ju sedkil-iyen alqasa=ujay.  
 Y469 Naran š'inge=gü-ece urqu=qu-da gür=tele dayin irgen~ bu=y.  
 Y470 Man-i töbö<sup>d</sup>+üd noqo+d-iyen<sup>1057</sup> tukir=cu ile:=esü dayin  
 Y471 irgen-i ba te<sup>n</sup>geri qajar-a gücü neme=gde=jü altan  
 Y472 mö<sup>n</sup>gü aurasun tabar irgen orqan cima-da  
 Y473 abcira=suqay. `Ali irgen' kee=esü `Ene höröne  
 Y474 Baqtad irgen-ü Qalibay soltan kee=gü~ bu=y'  
 Y475 kee=müy. Teün-tür ba ayala=suqay kee=n öci=esü  
 Y476 qahan soora=ju e+de üge+s-tür jalira=ju  
 Y477 C'ngis qahan jöbš'ye=jü jarliq bo<sup>f</sup>urun — Qo<sup>n</sup>qay  
 Y478 Qo<sup>n</sup>taqar Cormaqan qurban qorci+n-i soyurqa=ju —  
 Y479 Adargi<sup>^</sup>day Qo<sup>n</sup>qay Dolo<sup>n</sup>gir<sup>^</sup>day Qo<sup>n</sup>taqar qoyar-i  
 Y480 min-u dergede a=tuqay. Ötege<sup>^</sup>dey Cormaqan-i Baqtad  
 Y481 irgen-tür Qalibay soltan-tur ayala=ul=bAy.  
 Y490 (§261) Basa Hindu+s<sup>1058</sup> irgen Baqtad irgen qoyar-un jaura  
 Y491 Aru Maru Madasari irgen-ü Abtu balaqasun-tur  
 Y492 Dörbetey Dörbey doqš'in-i<sup>1059</sup> ayala=ul=bAy.  
 Y494 (§262) Basa Sübeetey baatur-i ümegši Qa<sup>n</sup>li+n<sup>1060</sup> Kibca+ud

---

1056: Locus of morpheme division based on CM. sintala- 'make blunt; discourage' (Lessing 713), of which de Rachewiltz assumes this is a variant (Papers on Far Eastern History 30.153).

1057: NB 'dogs', not 'ducks'!!

1058: See Cleaves in HJAS 12.93-4; the singular Indu occurs in an inscription of 1335 (line 37).

1059: PP has Dörbey~ doqš'in-i, which was probably what was in the Urtext.

1060: Morpheme division hypothetical. For all the names here see Pelliot Notes sur l'histoire de la Horde d'Or 128-29, notes to CL82.203, and deR4.959-61.

Y495 Bajigi+d<sup>1061</sup> Orus+ud Majar+ad<sup>1062</sup> As+ud<sup>1063</sup> Sas+ud<sup>1064</sup> Serkes+üd<sup>1065</sup>

Y496 Kešimir Bolar Kerel<sup>1066</sup> e+de harban niken ayımaq

Y497 qari+n irgen-tür gür=tele Idil Jayaq usu-ta+n

Y498 müre+d ketül=ün Kiwa Menkermen<sup>1067</sup> balaqasun-tur

Y499 gür=tele Sübeetey baatur-i ayala=ul=bAy.

Y501 (§263) Basa Sartaul irgen-i ab=un bara=ju C'ngis qahan

Y502 jarlıq bol=urun balaqa+d balaqa+d-tur daruqaci+n

Y503 talbi=ju Ürü'nceci balaqasun-aca Yalawaci Masqud

Y504 nere-te+n ecige köü+d qoyar Qurumši<sup>1068</sup> oboq-ta+n

Y505 Sartaul ire=jü balaqasun-u yosu dörö C'ngis qaan-a

Y506 ügüle=jü yosun-tur adali mede=n kelele=gde=jü

Y507 köü+d-i in-u Masqud Qurumši-yi bidan-u

Y508<sup>115</sup> daruqa+s-lua Buqar Semisgen<sup>1069</sup> Ürü'nceci Udan Kisqar

Y509 Uriya<sup>n</sup> Güsen\_ daril teriü-te+n balaqa+d-i mede=ül=ün

Y510 tüši=jü ecige-yi in-u Yalawaci-yi abcira=ju Kita+d-un

Y511 Ju<sup>n</sup>du balaqasu mede=ül=ün abcira=bAy. Sartaqtay<sup>1070</sup>

Y512 güün-ece Yalawaci Masqud qoyar-un balaqasun-u

Y513 törö yosun cida=qu-yin tula Kita+d irgen-i mede=ül=ün

Y514 daruqa+s-lua tüši=bAy.

---

1061: Morpheme division hypothetical; cf. deR4.959.

1062: Morpheme division hypothetical. A parallel passage in Z159 has simply Majar, which must be the singular of the present form – which should therefore perhaps be emended to Maja+d. (Normally one would assume that the singular of Majarad was \*Majaran.)

1063: Rubruk (writing in Latin) says the Mongols called the Alans "Aas" (Gerhard Doerfer Türkische und Mongolische Elemente im Neupersischen 2.221).

1064: Morpheme division hypothetical; cf. deR4.959. YCPS twice has Sesüd below.

1065: Morpheme division hypothetical; cf. deR4.959.

1066: YCPS Raral emended by Pelliot to Kerel (i.e. <Ra>[Ke]r<a>[e]l), on the basis of the Kerel in Z159, and Keler in a MS of the Altan Tobchi (Pelliot Notes sur l'histoire... 121, fn.2). But de Rachewiltz 2004.959-60 lists much new bibliography on the possible reference of this name.

1067: YCPS Kiwamen Kermen emended to Kiwa Menkermen (i.e. Kiwa[ ]Men< >kermen). (Men-kärmän was the Turkish name for Kiev [deR4.960]). In Z161 we find Keyibe as equivalent to Kiwa.

1068: Metathesized form of a \*Qurusmi reflecting Khvārazmī 'the Khwārazmian' (deR4.962) citing articles of Pelliot and Cleaves).

1069: This whole passage is discussed in detail by Cleaves in HJAS 16.243.

1070: See note to 5142.



- Y518 (§264) Sartaul<sup>1071</sup> irgen-tür doloan~ ho+d<sup>1072</sup> yabu=ju tende
- Y519 Jalayir^tay Bala-yi gülice=jü bü=küy-tür Bala Šin müren-i
- Y520 ketül=jü Jalaldin soltan qan Melig qoyar-i Hindu+s-un
- Y521 qajar-a gür=tele neke=jü Jalaldin soltan qan Melig
- Y522 qoyar-i jabqa=ju Hindu+s-un dumda gür=tele eri=jü
- Y523 yada=ju qari=ju Hindu+s-un kijjar irgen-i dawli=ad
- Y524 olon temee+d olon serke+s-i<sup>1073</sup> ab=uad ire=jüüy.
- Y525 Tende Cʳgis qahan qari=ju jaura Erdiš-i jusa=ju
- Y526 dolo-duar hon takiya jil namur Tu:la-yin qara~ tün-e<sup>1074</sup>
- Y527 ordo+s-tur bawu=bAy.
- Z011 (§265) Tere übül übülje=jü *Taʳud irgen-tür morila=ya*
- Z012 kee=n šini~ toa toula=ju noqay jil namur
- Z013 Cʳgis qahan Taʳud irgen-tür morila=bAy.
- Z014 Qadu+d-aca<sup>1075</sup> Yisüy qadun-i ab=cu od=BA. Jaura übül
- Z015 Arbuqa-yin olon qula+d-i abala=asu — Cʳgis qahan
- Z016 Josotu\_ boro-yi unu=ju bü=lee — qula+d daari=ju
- Z017 ire=esü Josotu\_ boro ürgü=jü Cʳgis qahan-i
- Z018 morin-aca una=asu mariya-ban maši ebed=cü
- Z019 Coorqa+d<sup>1076</sup> bawu=bAy. Tere söni qono=asu manaqar
- Z020 Yisüy qadun ügüle=rün Köü+d noya+d kelele=ldü=dkün.
- Z021 Qahan söni mariya qalaun qono=BA kee=bAy. Tende
- Z022 köü+d noya+d qura=asu Qoʳqota^day Tolun\_ cerbi
- Z023 durad=qa=n ügüle=rün *Taʳud irgen* {<sup>1077</sup>nödü=gšen balaqasu-ta+n
- Z024 {*nunji nuntuq-ta+n~ bu=y. {Nödü=gšen balaqasu-ban üür=cü ülü*
- Z025 *od=qu+n te+de. {Nnunji nuntug-iyen ge:=jü ülü od=qu+n te+de.*

---

1071: See note to 5142.

1072: YCPS hond interpreted as hod (i.e. ho<n>d; cf. Most99.251, fn.61).

1073: Singular serke 'castrated goat' found in CMo. (Lessing 691a).

1074: YCPS tün-e interpreted as front-harmonic (i.e. tün-<a>[e]).

1075: YCPS qadundaca interpreted as qadudaca (i.e. qadu<n>daca).

1076: DeR4.967 says this plural of \*coorqan means 'The Locks', and cites Pelliot as stating that it may have applied figuratively to some specific strong position mentioned in other texts (and there discussed).

1077: The first two lines here occurred in reverse order in Y088-89 above. Cleaves and de Rachewiltz (following Kozin) show additional poetic lines starting at the n-initial words in Z024-5; not so Ligeti.

- Z026 }Bida icu=ju qahan-u maraa seriüd=<sup>1078</sup>üesü basa
- Z027 jici morila=d~ @je bida kee=esü büri+n köü+d noya+d
- Z028 ene üge jöbšiye=jü Cɾgis qahan-a öci=esü
- Z029 Cɾgis qahan ügüle=rün Ta<sup>n</sup>ud irgen «<sup>1079</sup>bidan-i jürüge
- Z030 yada=ju qari=bAy» kee=kü+n. Bida elci+n maqa ile:=jü
- Z031 ebecin-i<sup>1080</sup> mün ene Coorqa+d-ta sobila=ju üge an-u
- Z032 uqa=ju icu=asu bol=u~ @je kee=jü tende elci+n-e
- Z033 dau~ bari=ul=ju ile:=rün Nidöni Burqan ci ügüle=rün
- Z034 Ba Ta<sup>n</sup>ud irgen baraun qar cin-u bol=su' kee=lüe.
- Z035 Cima-da teyin kee=gde=jü `Sartaul irgen-e
- Z036 eye-dür-iyen ese oro=qda=ju morila=su' kee=n
- Z037 quyu=ju ile:=esü ci Burqan üge-dür-iyen ülü gür=ün
- Z038 cerig~ @ba ülü ög=ün üge-er daari=ju ire=jü
- Z039 bü=lee. Qere jori=qsan-tur Qoyina ol=ulca=su' kee=n
- Z040 Sartaul irgen-tür morila=ju mö<sup>n</sup>ke te<sup>n</sup>geri-de
- Z041 ihee=gde=jü Sartaul irgen-i jüg-tür oro=ul=ju
- Z042 Edöe Burqan-tur üge ol=ulca=su' kee=n ayis=ay
- Z043 kee=jü ile:=esü Burqan ügüle=rün Daari<sup>n</sup>qu üge
- Z044 bi ese ügüle=lüe kee=jüüy. Aša \_ gambu ügüle=rün
- Z045 Daari<sup>n</sup>qu üge+s bi ügüle=lüe. Edöe @ber
- Z046 bö=esü ta Mo<sup>n</sup>qol qadquldua sur=cu `Qadqu=ldu=su'
- Z047 kee=esü — bi bü=rün Alašay nuntuq-tu {<sup>1081</sup>terme ger-tü
- Z048 }temeen acia-tu }bu=yu — Alašay jori=ju na-dur ire=dkün.
- Z049 Tende qadqu=ldu=ya. Altan mö<sup>n</sup>gün aurasun tabar
- Z050 kereg-tü bö=esü Eri\_ qaya Eri\_ jeü-yi jori=dqun
- Z051 kee=jü ile:=jüüy. Ene üge-yi Cɾgis qahan-a gür=ge=esü
- Z052 Cɾgis qahan mariya qalaun a=run ügüle=rün Je teli.
- Z053 Eyimü yeke üge ügüle=ül=jü ker icu=qda=quy.
- Z054 Ükü=rün yeke üge-tür šiqqa=n yabu=ya kee=jü Mö<sup>n</sup>ke
- Z055 te<sup>n</sup>geri ci mede kee=n Cɾgis qahan Alašay jori=ju

---

1078: Location of morpheme division based on CMo. serigüd- 'to cool off, become fresh' (Lessing 691a).

1079: See Street13.47, 61.

1080: YCPS elcini emended to ebecini (i.e. e<|>[be]cini). For this emendation (suggested by MostSQP.218 [= HJAS 15.348]) see deR4.968.

1081: These two poetic lines are indicated by Ligeti and de Rachewiltz (following Kozin), but not by Cleaves. The lines are repeated in Z058 below, and with one difference in Z075-76.

Z056 güir=cü Aša\_gambu-lua<sup>1082</sup> qadqu=ldu=ju Aša\_gambu-yi daru=ju  
 Z057 Alaşay deere qorqola=ul=ju Aša\_gambu-yi ab=cu  
 Z058 {<sup>1083</sup>terme ger-tü {temeen acia-tu } irgen-i in-u  
 Z059 hünesü-er heyis=tele tala=ul=bAy. Erekü+n~ omoqu+n  
 Z060 erebi+n sayi+d Ta<sup>n</sup>ud+ud-i kidu=ju eyimü+n teyimü+n Ta<sup>n</sup>ud+ud-i  
 Z061 ceri+üd güün-e bari=qsa-ar ol=uqsa-ar ab=udqun  
 Z062 kee=n jarliq bol=BA.  
 Z074 (§266) Cırgis qahan Casutu deere jusa=ju Aša\_gambu-lua<sup>1084</sup>  
 Z075 aulala=qsa+d dayji=qsa+d {<sup>1085</sup>terme ger-te+n {temeen  
 Z076 acia-ta+n } Ta<sup>n</sup>ud+ud-i ceri+üd ile:=jü ono=qsa-ar<sup>1086</sup>  
 Z077 ülid=tele tala=ul=bAy. Tende-ce Boorcu Muqali  
 Z078 qoyar-a soyurqa=run Gücün-e mede=tele ab=tuqay kee=n  
 Z079 jarliq bol=BA. Basa Cırgis qahan jarliq bol=urun  
 Z080 Boorcu Muqali qoyar-a soyurqal ög=ürün `Kita+d  
 Z081 irgen-ece ese ög=ülee' kee=n Kita+d irgen-ü Jüyi+n-i  
 Z082 ta qoyar sacau qubiya=ldu=ju ab=udqun. Sayi+d  
 Z083 köü+d-i an-u şibawu-ban bari=ul=ju daqa=ul=ju yabu=dqun.  
 Z084 Sayi+d öki+d-i an-u ös=ge=jü eme+s-i-yen<sup>1087</sup> qormay  
 Z085 jasa=ul=udqun. Kita+d irgen-ü altan qan-u itegel-te+n  
 Z086 ina+ud Mo<sup>n</sup>qol-un ebüge+s ecige+s-i bara=qsan  
 Z087 Qara\_kita+d Jüyi+n irgen a=juuy~ @je. Edöe min-u  
 Z088 itegel-te+n ina+ud Boorcu Muqali ta qoyar bu=yu @je  
 Z089 kee=n jarliq bol=BA.  
 Z094 (§267) Cırgis qahan Casutu-aca gödöl=jü Uraqay balaqasu  
 Z095 bawu=ju Uraqay balaqasun-aca gödöl=jü Dörmegey balaqasu  
 Z096 ebde=n bü=küy-tür Burqan Cırgis qahan-a aulja=ra  
 Z097 ire=be. Tende Burqan aulja=run altan süme+s

---

1082: YCPS Aša\_gambu-lue interpreted as back-harmonic (i.e. Aša\_gambu-lu<e>[a]).

1083: See note to Z047.

1084: YCPS Aša\_gambu-lue interpreted as back-harmonic (i.e. Aša\_gambu-lu<e>[a]).

1085: See note to Z047.

1086: DeR4.198 translates 'He caused [his troops] to plunder them as planned until they were utterly destroyed'. The 'as planned' is "onoγsa'ar, conv[verbum] abt[empore] of ono- 'to reckon, consider', lit. 'by the reckoning'" (2004.971-72, with rejection of an interpretation suggested by Mostaert (CL82.207, fn. 15).

1087: Apparently a genitive form (and so translated by Cleaves and de Rachewiltz. Cf. tabun quruu+d-i-yan kimul 'the nails of the five fingers' in 1336 (Street57.37, with fn. 118).

- Z098 teriüle=n altan möngün ayaqa~ saba yisün yisü+d nuu+d  
 Z099 öki+d yisün yisü+d aqta+s temee+d yisün yisü+d  
 Z100 eldeb-iyer yisün yisü+d jisüle=jü aulja=quy-tur  
 Z101 Burqan-i eüte=n büteüy-e<sup>1088</sup> aulja=ul=BA. Tere  
 Z102<sup>116</sup> aulja=quy-tur C'ngis qahan ditora dura~ bulqa=BA. Qutaar  
 Z103 üdür C'ngis qahan jarliq bo=urun — Iluqu\_ burqan-a  
 Z104 Šidurqu nere ög=cü Iluqu\_ burqan Šidurqu-yi  
 Z105 ire=gde=jü — tende C'ngis qahan *Iluqu-yi nögci=ye=dkün*  
 Z106 kee=n Tolun\_ cerbi qarda=ju nögci=e=tügey kee=n  
 Z107 jarliq bo=BA. Tende Tolun\_ cerbi *Iluqu-yi qarda=ju*  
 Z108 *bütee=be* kee=n öci=esü C'ngis qahan jarliq  
 Z109 bo=urun *Ta'ud irgen-tür üge ol=ulca=n ayisu=quy-tur*  
 Z110 *jaura Arbuqa-yin qula+d abala=asu ebed=ügsen mariya*  
 Z111 min-u Ana=tuqay' kee=n amin beye min-u qayirala=ju  
 Z112 *üge durad=qa=qsan Tolun bu=y~ @je. Nökör güün-ü qoron*  
 Z113 *üge-tür ire=jü mönke te'geri-de gücü~ neme=gde=jü*  
 Z114 *qar-dur-iyen oro=ul=ju öš-iyen ab=uay~ @je bida. Iluqu-yin*  
 Z115 *ene ab=cu ire=gsen newü=gü qarši ayaqa~ saba selte*  
 Z116 *Tolun ab=tuqay kee=n jarliq bo=BA.*  
 Z122 (§268) Ta'ud irgen-i dawuli=ju Iluqu\_ burqan-i Šidurqu  
 Z123 bo=qa=ju ima-yi bütee=jü Ta'ud irgen-ü eke ecige-yi  
 Z124 uruq-un uruq-a gür=tele muquli<sup>1089</sup> musquli-yi<sup>1090</sup> ügey bo=qa=n  
 Z125 Idee ide=küy jaura Muquli musquli ügey' kee=n  
 Z126 *ükü=ül=ün ecid=ge=n<sup>1091</sup> kelele=n a=dqun kee=n jarliq*  
 Z127 bo=BA. Ta'ud irgen üge ügüle=jü üge-tür ülü  
 Z128 gür=gü-yin tula Ta'ud irgen-tür C'ngis qahan  
 Z129 nököe-te ayala=ju Ta'ud irgen-i muqudqa=ju  
 Z130 ire=jü qaqa~ jil C'ngis qahan te'geri-tür qar=BA.  
 Z131 Qar=uqsan-u qoyina Yisüy qadun-a Ta'ud irgen-ece  
 Z132 maši ög=be.

---

1088: YCPS seemingly buteuno, which Haenisch read buteuna and interpreted as a dative-locative büteün-a (H62dict.24). Pelliot assumed a small error in the Chinese character used for the last syllable, and emended to the equivalent of büteüy-e. MostSQP.224 states that the stem is in effect CMo. bitegüü 'closed'.

1089: For a lengthy discussion of the puzzling expression muquli musquli see deR4.977-79; there it is rendered 'maiming and taming'.

1090: See note to prior word.

1091: YCPS ecidken emended to ecidgen (i.e. ecid<k>[g]En), as the verb in X239.

Z136 (§269) Quluqana jil Caaday Batu teriü-te+n baraun qar-un köü+d

Z137 Odcigin noyan Yegü Yisü<sup>n</sup>e teriü-te+n jewün qar-un köü+d

Z138 Toluy teriü-te+n qol köü+d öki+d gürege+d tüme+d-ün

Z139 minqa+d-un noya+d büri+n bol=ju Kelüren-ü Ködeü\_ aral-a

Z140 gür-iyer quri=ju C'ngis qahan-u nereyid=ügsen mün

Z141 jarlig-iyar Ögödey qahan-i qan ergü=bAy.

Z142 Caaday aqa Ögödey qahan-i deü-yü-en qan ergüjü

Z143 C'ngis qahan ecige-yü-en altan amin saki=n~ a=qsa+d

Z144 kebteül<sup>1092</sup> qorci+n nayman minqa+d turqa+ud qan ecige-yin

Z145 min-u<sup>1093</sup> beye caada yabu=n a=qsa+d emcü tümen kešig-te+n-i

Z146 in-u Caaday aqa Toluy qoyar Ögödey qahan-a

Z147 tawul=bAy. Qol-un ulus-i mün yosu-ar tawul=bAy.

Z151 (§270) Ögödey qahan ör-iyen qan ergü=ül=jü dotona yabu=qu+n

Z152 tümen kešig-te+n-i qol-un ulus-i öer-dür-iyen

Z153 bol=qa=ul=un bara=ju urida Caaday aqa-tur eyetü=jü

Z154 C'ngis qahan ecige-yü-en dorqu+d<sup>1094</sup> talbi=qsa+d irgen-ü

Z155 Baqtad irgen-ü Qalibay soltan-tur ayala=qsan

Z156 Cormaqan qorci-yin gejjige Oqotur Möngetü qoyar-i

Z157 ayala=ul=bAy. Basa urida Sübeetey baatur-i

Z158 Ka<sup>n</sup>li+n Kibca+ud Bajigi+d Orus+ud As+ud Ses+üd

Z159 Majar Kešimir Serges+üd Buqar<sup>1095</sup> Kerel<sup>1096</sup>

Z160<sup>117</sup> irgen-tür gür=tele Adil\_ jayaq usu-ta+n müre+d ketül=ün

Z161 Meked Menkermen<sup>1097</sup> Keyibe<sup>1098</sup> teriü-te+n balaqa+d-tur

Z162 ayala=qsan Sübeetey baatur te+de irgen-e

---

1092: YCPS keteül emended (by H62txt.94, 233) to kebteül (i.e. ke[b]teül).

1093: Cleaves would emend minu to inu; but see discussion in deR4.987-88. The unemended minu might be taken as evidence that Ögödey was the author of the SH; see deR13.2-5.

1094: I assume (with deR4.989) that this is plural of dorqun (= CMo. doryun 'lacking, incomplete, insufficient'. PP has dorqud here, C erroneously dorqul).

1095: C buqar, the Mongol name for Bukhara, is an error for Bolar (as Y496) = Bolyar, i.e. the Volga Bulgars (deR4.991, with references there). The whole word is missing from PP.

1096: C has Kerel, PP Kere.

1097: YCPS Mekedmen Kermen emended to Meked Menkermen (i.e. Meked[ ]Men< >kermen; see note to Y498 above.

1098: See note to Y498 above.

- Z163 berke=ldü=gde=jü<sup>1099</sup> Sübeetey-in gejige Batu Büri Güyüg
- Z164 Mö<sup>n</sup>ge teriü-te+n olon köü+d-i morila=ul=bAy. E+de
- Z165 ayala=qsa+d büri+n köü+d-i Batu aqala=tuqay kee=n
- Z166 jarliq bol=BA. Qol-aca qar=uqsa+d-i Güyüg aqala=tuqay
- Z167 kee=n jarliq bol=BA. E+de ayala=qu+n-i ulus
- Z168 mede=kü+n köü+d köü+d-ü-en @gü yeke köü ayala=ul=tuqay.
- Z169 Ulus @ba ülü mede=kü+n köü+d tüme+d-ün minqa+d-un
- Z170 jau+d-un harba+d-un noya+d olon güün ken~ @ber bö=esü
- Z171 köü+d-ü-en aqa-yi ayala=ul=tuqay. Qki+d gürige+d mün
- Z172 yosu-ar köü+d-ü-en @gü aqa-yi ayala=ul=tuqay kee=n
- Z173 jarliq bol=uad basa Ögödey qahan ügüle=rün Ene @ba
- Z174 köü+d-ün aqa-yi ayala=ul=qu yosun Caaday aqa-aca
- Z175 bol=juu~ @je. Caaday aqa ügüle=jü ire=rün `Sübeetey-in
- Z176 gejige köü+d-ü-en aqa Büri-yi ayala=ul=umu. Köü+d-ün aqa
- Z177 ayala=asu cerig arbin<sup>1100</sup>. Qar=qu cerig olon
- Z178 bol=uasu ciray deere gücü-tey-e yabu=yu. Cinadu
- Z179 dayisun güün olon qari+n~ bu=y. Tere üjüür-e keceü+n
- Z180 irgen te+de. Kil<sup>n</sup>la=asu öer-ün mese-dür-iyen ükü=kü+n
- Z181 irgen te+de. <sup>1101</sup>"Mese+s qurca-ta+n" kee=gde=müy' kee=jü
- Z182 ire=jüüy. Ögödey qahan ügüle=rün Tere üge-tür
- Z183 bidan-u @ber Caaday aqa-yin kicie<sup>n</sup>gü gücü-er
- Z184 köü+d-ün aqa-yi qar=qa=ya kee=n jüg jüg tur<sup>n</sup>qaa=ju
- Z185 Batu Büri Güyüg Mö<sup>n</sup>ge teriü-te+n köü+d-i
- Z186 ayala=ul=quy yosun eyimü bu=y~ @je.
- Z194 (§271) Basa Ögödey qahan Caaday aqa-tur etetü=jü ile:=rün
- Z195 C<sup>r</sup>gis qahan ecige-yü-en belen-tür sau=BA. Yambar
- Z196 erdem-iyer sau=BA' kee=n ügüle=gde=güy@ü: bi.
- Z197 Caaday aqa-yi jöbšiyе=esü — qahan ecige bidan-u Kita+d
- Z198 irgen-ü Altan qan-i dorqu+d talbi=lua — edöe
- Z199 bi Kita+d irgen-tür morila=su kee=n etetü=jü
- Z200 ile:=esü Caaday aqa jöbšiyе=jü Yau alja=qu.
- Z201 Auruq-tur sayin güün tüši=jü morila=dqun. Bi

---

1099: YCPS berkeldügdejü perhaps to be emended (H62dict.15) to berkedügdejü (i.e. berke<↳dügdejü), with some stem related to CMo. (Lessing 100) berked- `be[come] difficult...'. The meaning here is apparently `being put in a difficult situation' (cf. deR4.201).

1100: See note to 8189.

1101: For the potential ambiguity of the next three words, see Street13.79.

Z202 *ende-ce*<sup>1102</sup> *ceri+üd qar=qa=ju ile:=sü kee=jü ile:=jüüy.*  
 Z203 Yeke+s ordo+s-tur *Oldaqar qorci-yi tüši=jü*  
 Z207 (§272) *tawlay jil Ögödey qahan Kita+d irgen-tür morila=ju*  
 Z208 *Jebe-yi ma<sup>n</sup>lay ile:=bAy. T*edüy *Kita+d-un ceri+üd-i*  
 Z209 *daru=ju hünjüü bayi=tala kidu=ad Cabciyal-i daba=ju*  
 Z210 *jüg jüg qoto+d balaqa+d an-u eere=ül=ün ceri+üd yabu=ul=ju*  
 Z211 *Ögödey qahan Šira\_ degtür bawu=BA. T*ende<sup>1103</sup> *Ögödey qahan*  
 Z212 *ebedcin gür=te=jü aman kelen jabqa=n alja=qda=run*  
 Z213 *böe+s böe+s tölgeci+n-e tülgele=ül=üesü Kita+d irgen-ü*  
 Z214 *qajar usun-u eje+d qa+d*<sup>1104</sup> *irgen orqo-ban dawuli=qda=run*  
 Z215 *balaqa+d qoto+d-iyān ebde=gde=rün türgün-e adala=muy.*  
 Z216 *I*rgen *orqa altan mö<sup>n</sup>gün aduusun ideen jolia*  
 Z217 *ög=üye*<sup>1105</sup> *kee=n abidla=asu ülü talbira=n düled*  
 Z218 *türgün-e adala=muy. U*ruq-un *güün-ece bol=quy@u: kee=n*  
 Z219 *abidla=asu qahan nidün-e*<sup>n1106</sup> *nee=jü usun quy=ju*  
 Z220 *uu=ju Yaun bol=bi kee=n asaqa=ta=ju böe+s*  
 Z221 *öci=rün Kita+d irgen-ü qajar usun-u eje+d qa+d*<sup>1107</sup>  
 Z222 *qajar usun-iyān ebde=gde=rün irgen orqa-ban*  
 Z223 *dawuli=qda=run türgün-e adala=muy. B*usu *yaun @ber jolia*  
 Z224 *ög=üye' kee=n abidla=asu düled türgen-e*  
 Z225 *jiürmede=müy. U*ruq-un *güün-ece bol=quy@u:' kee=esü*  
 Z226 *talbira=muy. E*döe *jarliq mede=mü @je kee=n*  
 Z227 *öci=esü jarliq bol=urun D*erge-de *köü+d-ece*  
 Z228 *ken~ bu=y ke:=esü Toluy köün derge-de bü=lee. Ü*güle=rün

---

1102: YCPS has glossing division before rather than after the de.

1103: Lines Z211-Z226 are discussed by MostSQP.225-233 (HJAS 15.355-363).

1104: YCPS qand interpreted as qad (i.e. qa<n>d).

1105: YCPS öggüye emended (H62txt.96, 122, Ligeti 245, et al.) to ögüye (i.e. ö<g>güye). The actually occurring form was accidentally carried over into deR72.163, 277, despite the occurrence of ögüye in Z224.

1106: Written with characters dun-en for the second and third syllables. While no glossing division is shown by C or PP, the unexpected syllabification probably implies a morpheme division here, as also in the juger-esu of Z243. (I think that these two writings are unique in the YCPS.) We would expect nidün-iyen here, as in 7267, and perhaps we should emend to nidün-[i]yen. But instead, deR72.163 marks the 3rd-syllable vowel as long; I have here tentatively adopted that solution. (Note that de Rachewiltz regularly writes a short vowel when the final character of the present form occurs after a vowel: köün-ü-en in my line 5444, morin-u-an in 4031, etc..)

1107: YCPS qand interpreted as qad (i.e. qa<n>d).

Z229 {<sup>1108</sup>}Sutu C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan ecige bidan-u deere aqa+nar  
 Z230 do:ro deü+ner böe=tele qahan aqa-yi cima-yi aqta  
 Z231 metü so<sup>n</sup>qu=ju irge metü bili=jü yeke oro-ban  
 Z232 beye-tür cin-u cucu=ju olon ulus-i deere cin-u  
 Z233 aci=ju ög=BA~ @je. Nama-yi bü=rün<sup>1109</sup> Qahan aqa-yin derge-de  
 Z234 aju {umarta=qsan-i durad=qa=ju {untara=qsan-i  
 Z235 seri=ül=jü }yabu' kee=gde=lüe. Edöe qahan aqa-yan  
 Z236 cima-yi alda=asu bi. {<sup>1110</sup>Ken-ü umarta=qsan-i durad=qa=qu;  
 Z237 {ken-ü untara=qsan-i seriülgü. }Ünen-ber<sup>1111</sup> qahan aqa min-u  
 Z238 jöb<sup>1112</sup> ese bol=uasu {<sup>1113</sup>olon Mo<sup>n</sup>qol ulus {önecire=kü+n  
 Z239 {Kita+d irgen {kib<sup>1114</sup>~ qa<sup>n</sup>=qu+n. }Qahan aqa-yu-an orun-a bi bol=su.  
 Z240 {<sup>1115</sup>Tulu-yin niruun bi tulbal=BA. {Kileme-yin niruun bi  
 Z241 ki<sup>n</sup>gül=be. {Ile-yi bi ilaq=BA. {Qada:-yi bi qadqu=BA.  
 Z242 {Niur qoa niruun urtu bi @gü bu=y~ @je. }Böe+s  
 Z243 arba=dqun jüger=üdkün kee=jü böe+s jüger=esü<sup>1116</sup>  
 Z244 jügergen<sup>1117</sup> usu Toluy köün uu=bAy. Qorom sau=ju  
 Z245 ügüle=rün Soqta=BA bi. Soqta=qu-yi min-u sergü=tele

---

1108: Only Kozin treats all of the following quoted sequence (to Z243) as poetry. Others mark poetry as shown below.

1109: Occurrence of bürün after an accusative form here (and in line Z237) clearly indicate that it was felt as a particle rather than a converb. See note to 3076.

1110: Ligeti does not mark these two lines as poetry.

1111: YCPS wrongly glosses this ber as the particle, not the instrumental.

1112: YCPS jö emended to jöb (i.e. jö[b]); in C, but not PP, unfilled space was left for the small character representing the consonant.

1113: Cleaves and de Rachewiltz follow Kozin in showing four poetic lines here; Ligeti has only two (o K).

1114: De Rachewiltz (2004.997) suggests that the kib of kibqanqun is a borrowing of Uighur Turkic qiv 'good fortune, luck'; and that kib qan- would mean 'rejoice at one's own good fortune'.

1115: Line divisions here shown as in Ligeti; Cleaves and de Rachewiltz follow Kozin in starting poetic also at each instance of bi. Note that Kozin has continued poetry all the way to the end of this quoted sequence.

1116: YCPS writes the gere here with characters ge-r-e, perhaps under the influence of the immediately following word. Probably this writing implies the morpheme division. (See note to line Z219.)

1117: I assume this is a denominal form, from jüger- 'make incantations' (for which see deR4.998-99).



Z246 *öneci+d ücü.ge+d deü+ner-iyen belbisün beri-yen Berüde*<sup>1118</sup>  
 Z247 *oyin-a gür=tele asara=qu-yi qahan aqa mede=tügey.*  
 Z248 *Ali @ber üge-ben ügüle=lee bi. Soqta=bAy kee=ed*  
 Z249 *qar=cu od=cu jöb ese bo=uqsan yosun teyimü.*  
 Z259 (§273) *Tedüy altan qan-i muqudqa=ju seüse nere ög=cü*  
 Z260 *altan möngün alta-tay har-tu aurasun tabar alaša+s*<sup>1119</sup>  
 Z261 *seüse+s-i an-u dawuli=ju alginci tammacı+n talbi=ju*  
 Z262 *Namgır Ju<sup>n</sup>du jüg jüg-tür balaqasun-tur daruqacı+n*  
 Z263 *talbi=ju tübšin~ tükel qarı=ju Qara\_ qorum-a bawu=bAy.*  
 Z266 (§274) *Cormaqañ\_ qorci Baqtad irgen-i else=ül=jüü. Tere*  
 Z267 *qajar sayin ed sayin kee=gde=müy kee=n mede=jü*  
 Z268 *Ögödey qahan jarliq bo=urun Cormaqañ qorci-yi*<sup>1120</sup> *Mün*  
 Z269 *tende tamma sau=ju šira altan širamal alta-ta+n*  
 Z270 *naq+ud*<sup>1121</sup> *nacid+ud darda+s subu+d*<sup>1122</sup> *tana+s güjüü urtu+s*  
 Z271 *köl~ ündür tobica+ud gür<sup>n</sup>~ elöü+d*<sup>1123</sup> *dausi kici+d+ud*<sup>1124</sup>  
 Z272 *acian-a qaci+d+ud*<sup>1125</sup> *lawsa+s+ud*<sup>1126</sup> *hon-tur gür=ge=ül=jü*  
 Z273 *ile:=n a=dqun kee=bAy. Sübeetey baatur-un gejige*  
 Z274 *ayala=qsa+d Batu Büri Güyüg Mö<sup>n</sup>ge teriü-te+n olon*  
 Z275 *köü+d Qa<sup>n</sup>li+n Kibca+ud-i Bajigi+d-i oro=ul=ju Ejil*  
 Z276 *Jayaq Meged balaqasu ebde=jü Orus+ud-i kidu=ju*

---

1118: Capitalization added; in C the form has no gloss or bracket or sideline; PP shows a bracket rather than a sideline.

1119: Singular not attested in SH; see CL82.214, fn. 46, and deR4.1002. The latter opines that the word "designated a particular type of piebald horse, possibly a small one". (That the word was a Turkic loanword was probably first stated by Poppe on p. 38 of The Turkic loanwords in Middle Mongolian, CAJ 1.36-42 [1955].)

1120: Presumably this is a referential object.

1121: See deR4.1007, CL82.214, with references there cited; this form is the plural of a base borrowed from Persian n(a)x 'a kind of gold brocade'.

1122: Functional plural of CMO subusun (Lessing 734a, 733b) .

1123: These two words and the next two designate different kinds of camels, according to the interlinear glosses (deR4.1008, with discussion).

1124: Double plural of a \*kicir (CL82.214, fn.54). So deR4.1008 (mentioning that the word occurs in an Alashan dialect), with discussion of all the forms here.

1125: Double plural of base qacir 'kind of mule' (deR4.1009, with sources).

1126: CL82.214-15, fn. 55 states that Mostaert thought this a double plural of a \*lausa possibly from Chinese, and possibly indicating "especially the mules destined to be mounted"..

Z277 *ülüd=tele tala=bAy. As+ud Ses+üd Bolar*  
Z278<sup>118</sup> *Menkermen~ Kiwa<sup>1127</sup> teriü-te+n balaqa+d-un irgen-i dawuli=ju*  
Z279 *else=ül=jü daruqaci+n tammaci+n-i talbi=ju qari=BA.*  
Z280 *Urida Jürce+d Sola<sup>n</sup>qa+s-tur ayala=qsan*  
Z281 *Jalayirtay qorci-yin gejjige Yisüder qorci-yi*  
Z282 *ayala=u=bAy. Tamma sau=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*  
Z288 (§275) *Batu Kibcaqcin ayan deere-ce Ögödey qahan-a elci+n-ece*  
Z289 *öci=jü ile:=rün Mönke te<sup>n</sup>geri-yin gücün-tür qahan abaqa-yin*  
Z290 *su-tur Meged balaqasun ebde=jü Orus+ud irgen-i*  
Z291 *dawuli=ju harban<sup>1128</sup> niken qari+n irgen-i jüg-tür*  
Z292 *oro=ul=ju altan jilua icu=n~ tata=ju Şal=ulca=quy*  
Z293 *qurim qurimla=ya' kee=ldü=jü yeke cacir bos=qa=ju*  
Z294 *qurimla=quy-tur Bi e+de bükü+n köü+d-ün aqaqan bol=uqsan*  
Z295 *bol=ju niken qoyar ayaqa ötög urida uu=BA' kee=n*  
Z296 *na-dur Büri Güyüg qoyar mawuyla=ju qurim ülü*  
Z297 *qurimlan morila=qda=BA. Morilaju Büri ügüle=rün Batu*  
Z298 *saca bö=ed bol=ju urida ker uu=qu+n bü=lee.*  
Z299 <sup>1129</sup> *Şaqal-ta+n emege+d sacau+n bol=ju ösöge-iyer*  
Z300 *türi=jü öلمي-iyer gecikile=küy<sup>1130</sup> } kee=jüü. Güyüg*  
Z301 *ügüle=rün Te+de qor-ta+n emege+d-i ebceü+d an-u*  
Z302 *jorqa=lda=ya~ @ci bida te+de@er-i' kee=jüüy. Eljigidey-in*  
Z303 *köün Harqasun ügüle=rün Modun~ seül jübci=yE te+den-i'*  
Z304 *kee=jüüy. Ba bü=rün busu helige-tü bulqa irgen-tür*  
Z305 *morila=ul=da=ju Jöb@i tab@i<sup>1131</sup> bol=qu bol=BA' kee=jü*  
Z306 *bü=küy-tür Büri Güyüg qoyar-a eyin kee=gde=ed eye*  
Z307 *ügey tarqa=qda=BA. Edöe qahan abaqa-yin jarliq*  
Z308 *mede=tügey kee=n öci=jü ile:=jüüy.*  
Z315 (§276) *Batu-yin ene üge-tür qahan maşi kilir<sup>la</sup>=ju Güyüg-i*

1127: Both C and PP have Bolarman at the end of one line and Kermankiwa at the start of the next, each with its own gloss.

1128: YCPS qarban, glossed `10', emended to harban (i.e. <q>[h]arban); such an error is less common than the reverse, where the small diacritic distinguishing q from h was accidentally omitted. The emendation is made in all the editions used for the present text, but only H62txt.97, 123 actually lets a reader know that this is not the actual YCPS form.

1129: All writers agree on the poetic lines here.

1130: See note to line 7097.

1131: This and the immediately prior word contain the only two instances of an interrogative -i in the SH.

- Z316 ülü aulja=ul=un ügüle=rün Ene dörmegey ken-ü  
Z317 üge+s-tür dölüs<sup>g</sup>ü=jü aqa güün-i aman düüren  
Z318 ügüle=yü. Qaqca öndegen hüü=tügey. Mün aqa güün-ü  
Z319 ebceün-tür<sup>1132</sup> dayisurqa=n a=juu. {<sup>1133</sup> Alginci talbi=ju  
Z320 {harban quruu+d-un kimul~ in-u haud=tala<sup>1134</sup> {aula+s metü  
Z321 balaqa+d-tur abari=ul=uya. {Tamma talbi=ju {tabun quruu+d-un  
Z322 kimul in-u tamu=tala {dabtamal qata<sup>n</sup>qu balaqa+d-tur  
Z323 abari=ul=uya. }Ci beter mawuy dörmegey Harqasun  
Z324 ken-i e<sup>n</sup>gešige=jü bidan-u uruq-tur aman düüren  
Z325 yeke üge ügüle=n bü=lee. Güyüg Harqasun qoyar-i  
Z326 qamtu ile:=ye. Harqasun-i mököri=ül=de=gü bü=lee.  
Z327 Alaqcila=BA' kee=kü+n ta. Büri-yi bü=rün<sup>1135'</sup> kee=esü  
Z328 Batu-da ügüle. Caaday aqa-da ügüle=jü ile:=tügey.  
Z329 Caaday aqa mede=tügey kee=be.  
Z334 (§277) Köü+d-ece Möngey noya+d-aca Alciday Qonqortay<sup>1136</sup> Jan<sup>n</sup>gi  
Z335 teriü-te+n noya+d durad=qa=n öcirün C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan ecige-yin  
Z336 cin-u jarliq {<sup>1137</sup>} Keer-ün üyile kee-e~ @gü noyala=qu  
Z337 bü=lee. Ger-ün üyile ger-tür~ @gü noyala=qu bü=lee.'  
Z338 Qahan-i soyurqa=asu — qahan Güyüg-tür kil<sup>n</sup>la=ju a=mu —  
Z339 kee-ün üyile bu=yu. Batu-da tüši=jü ile:=esü  
Z340 bol=quy@u: kee=n öci=esü ene üge-yi qahan jöbš<sup>n</sup>ye=n  
Z341 jalira=ju Güyüg-i aulja=ul=ju söyüer üge do<sup>n</sup>qod=urun  
Z342 ayala=ju od=urun jaura {<sup>1138</sup> Bögse-tü güün-ü {bögse in-u

---

1132: YCPS eceün-tür emended to ebceün-tür (i.e. e[b]ceün-tür). Emendation made in H62txt.97, 123, Pelliot 114, Ligeti 249 (without the square brackets added in Kurib1.588), deR72.166.

1133: Only Kozin marks new poetic lines at all points marked as alliterative by Pelliot, and also before both cases of abariuluya (only the first of which starts a new line in Ligeti). Others divide the line as shown here.

1134: YCPS hautala emended to haudtala (i.e. hau[d]tala). This emendation was merely suggested by H62txt.123 (with other possibilities) but made firmly by Pelliot 114 (both with reference to §53 [line 137], and deR72.166; but not Ligeti or Kurib1.588.

1135: See note to Z233.

1136: Length added here and below, as deR4.207ff, 1016: an equivalent ending in taqay occurs in §278, and in two Arab sources.

1137: Only Kozin marks four poetic lines here, with initial k k g g.

1138: Only Kozin shows both instances of keedemü ci as poetic lines.

Z343 *ese hüle=gde=BA<sup>1139</sup> }kee=gde=mü ci. {`C̣erig-ün haran-u {ciray*  
 Z344 *ququl=ju od=BA' }kee=gde=mü ci. Orus+ud irgen-i*  
 Z345 *tere cin-u aur kilin-dur ayu=ju ora=qda=qsan-a*  
 Z346 *bol=qa=n a=quy@u: ci. Orus+ud irgen-i qaqca-ar*  
 Z347 *oro=ul=uqsan metü sedki=jü omoq~ dura bari=ju aqa~*  
 Z348<sup>119</sup> *güün-tür dayisurqa=n ayis=u~ ci. C̣ingis qahan ecige-yin*  
 Z349 *bidan-u jarliq-tur~ bu=y. {<sup>1140</sup>Q̣lon ayu=ul=i {gün ükü=ül=i'*  
 Z350 *}kee=gü ese@ü: bü=lee. Q̣aqca-ar tuni=qsan metü Sübeetey*  
 Z351 *Büjeg qoyar-un dalda-da yabu=ju olo-ar büri-yer*  
 Z352 *qamsa=ju Orus+ud Kibca+ud-i oro=ul=ju niken qoyar*  
 Z353 *Orus+ud Kibca+ud-i olju ešige-yin šiira ol=uay*  
 Z354 *jöe=ey üdüüy-e eremši=jü niken-te ger-tece qar=cu*  
 Z355 *yau @ber qaqca-ar tuni=qsan metü üge dawu ulis=cu<sup>1141</sup>*  
 Z356 *ire=jü ci Möng̣ey Alciday Qo<sup>n</sup>qorta:y Ja<sup>n</sup>gi-ta+n-a {<sup>1142</sup>degde=g̣sen*  
 Z357 *jürügen-i {derge nökör bol=ju töde=e=jü<sup>1143</sup> {debül=küy*  
 Z358 *toqoan-i {delegety šinaqa bol=ju amurli=ul=da=ju~ — }J̣e*  
 Z359 *teli; keer-ün üyile. Batu-yi kee=leey. Güyüg Harqasun*  
 Z360 *qoyar-i Batu mede=tügey kee=jü ile=be. Büri-yi*  
 Z361 *Caaday aqa mede=tügey kee=be.*  
 Z368 (§278) *Ḅasa Ögödey qahan jarliq bol=urun C̣ingis qahan*  
 Z369<sup>120</sup> *ecige-tür min-u yabu=qsa+d kehteül qorci+n turqa+ud*  
 Z370 *büri+n kešig-te+n-ü yabudal~ tu<sup>n</sup>qu=n duul=qa=quy<sup>1144</sup> jarliq*  
 Z371 *tu<sup>n</sup>qaa=run `Q̣ahan ecige-yin jarlig-iyar urida ker*  
 Z372 *yabu=qu+n bü=leey. Ẹdöe mün yosu-ar yabu=tuqay' kee=n*  
 Z373 *jarliq bol=urun qorci+n turqa+ud uridu yosu-ar*  
 Z374 *üdür mör mör-dür-iyen yabu=ju nara-tay-a kehteül-e*

---

1139: YCPS hüledēBA emended to hülegdeBA (i.e. hüle[g]deBA); H62txt.98 has the shorter form, but the emended shape was listed in H62dict.78 as a possibility. The translation of CL82.218 implies acceptance of the emendation; and deR82.75 shows only the emended form, without bracketing the g. Pelliot 115, Ligeti 250, and Kurib1.590 maintain the short form.

1140: Poetic lines not marked by Ligeti.

1141: For discussion of this verb, 'to provoke', which did not survive as such in the later language, see deR4.1019.

1142: All writers agree on the poetry here.

1143: First morpheme division on the basis of CMo. tüde- and tüdege- (Lessing 849, 'to tarry' and 'delay').

1144: First morpheme division on the basis of CMo. duyul- 'hear, listen' (Lessing 271).

Z375 *jayila=ju qadana qono=tuqay kee=n jarliq bol=BA.*  
 Z376 *Ṣöni bidan-tur kebteül qono=tuqay eüten-tür*  
 Z377 *ger-ün qorci+n kebteül bayi=tuqay. Qrdo-yin qoyina^un*  
 Z378 *urida^un kebteül muquri=tuqay. Naran šn̄ge=gšen-ü qoyina*  
 Z379 *söni yabu=qu+n haran kebteül bari=ju qono=tuqay. Qlon*  
 Z380 *tarqa=qsan-u qoyina qono=qsa+d kebteül-ece busu+d dotoqši*  
 Z381 *jörice=n oro=qu+n haran-i bari=qsa+d kebteül eki+d an-u*  
 Z382 *dalbaru cabci=ju oor=tuqay. Ṣöni yaaral kele-tü*  
 Z383 *güün ire=esü kebteül-tür kelele=jü ger-ün ümerekce*  
 Z384 *kebteül-lüe qamtu bayi=ju kelele=ldü=tügey. Qrdo*  
 Z385 *ger-tür oro=qu qar=qu-yi Qo<sup>n</sup>qorta:y Širaqan-ta+n jasaul*  
 Z386 *kebteül-lüe qamtu jasa=tuqay. `Eljigidey itegel-tü*  
 Z387 *böe=tele jilda kebteül-ün dege^ün yabu=qu bol=un*  
 Z388 *kebteül-e bari=qda=laa' kee=n jarliq busu ülü bol=qa=qu*  
 Z389 *kebteül itegel-tü bu=y~ @je kee=n jarliq bol=ju*  
 Z390 *Ḳebteül-ün toa bu asaqq=tuqay. Ḳebteül-ün saurin dege^ün*  
 Z391 *bu yabu=tuqay. Ḳebteül-ün jaqa^un bu yabu=tuqay. Ḳebteül-ün*  
 Z392 *dege^ün yabu=qu+n jaqa^un yabu=qu+n haran-i kebteül*  
 Z393 *bari=tuqay. Ḳebteül-ün toa asaqq=qu<sup>1145</sup> güün-ü tere üdür-ün*  
 Z394 *unu=qsan aqta emeel-tü qadaar-tu-yi emüs=ügsen*  
 Z395 *qubcasun sElte kebteül ab=tuqay. Ḳebteül-ün saurin-u*  
 Z396 *deere ken @ber bu sau=tuqay. Ḳebteül tuq keürge*  
 Z397 *do:ro jida ayaqa~ saba asara=tuqay. Unda:n ideen-i*  
 Z398 *ödken miqa kebteül daruqala=tuqay kee=n jarliq*  
 Z399 *bol=BA. Qrdo ger tergen kebteül asara=tuqay.*  
 Z400 *Bidan-u beye cerig ese qar=uasü bidan-aca a<sup>n</sup>gi-da*  
 Z401 *öere kebteül cerig bu qar=tuqay. Bidan-i šibawula=quy*  
 Z402 *abala=quy-tur jarim+ud-iyan ordo ger tergen-tür caqla=ju*  
 Z403 *talbi=ju bidan-lua jarim kebteül yabu=tuqay. Ḳebteül-ece*  
 Z404 *nuntuuci+n yabu=ju ordo bawu=:l=tuqay. Eüten caada*  
 Z405 *kebteül eüdeci+n bayi=tuqay. Büri+n kebteül Qadaan*  
 Z406 *minqa mede=tügey kee=n jarliq bol=BA. Basa kebteül-ün*  
 Z407 *kešig kešig-ün noya+d<sup>1146</sup> tüşi=rün Qadaan Bulaqadar qoyar*

---

1145: YCPS *asaqu* emended to *asaqqu* (i.e. *asa[q]qu*); emendation mine (JCS), though suggested by H62txt.123. The expected form with *qq* occurs in 1182.

1146: YCPS *noya* emended (by H62txt.99, 123, Pelliot 116, and Ligeti 253) to *noyad* (i.e. *noya[d]*). Kurib1.596 emended rather to *noyad-i* (i.e. *noya[di]*), one of two further possibilities mentioned for this passage by H62txt.123.

Z408 niken kešig bol=ju eyetü=ldü=jü niken kešig oro=ju  
 Z409 ordo-yin baraun jewün eteed qaqaq sau=ju  
 Z410 jasa=tuqay. Amal Canar qoyar eyetü=ldü=jü niken  
 Z411 kešig bol=ju kešig oro=ju ordo-yin baraun jewün  
 Z412 eteed qaqaq sau=ju<sup>1147</sup> jasa=tuqay. Qaday Qori\_ qacar qoyar  
 Z413 eyetü=ldü=jü niken kešig oro=ju ordo-yin baraun  
 Z414 jewün eteed qaqaq sau=ju jasa=tuqay. Yalbaq  
 Z415 Qaraudar qoyar eyetü=ldü=jü niken kešig bol=ju  
 Z416 kešig oro=ju ordo-yin baraun<sup>1148</sup> jewün eteed qaqaq sau=ju  
 Z417 jasa=tuqay. Basa Qadaan Bulqadar-un kešig Amal  
 Z418 Canar-un kešig e+de jirin keši+üd ordo-yin jewün  
 Z419 eteed nuntuqla=ju kešig oro=tuqay. Qaday Qori\_ qacar  
 Z420 qoyar-un kešig Yalbaq Qaraudar qoyar-un kešig  
 Z421 e+de jirin keši+üd ordo-yin baraun eteed  
 Z422 nuntuqla=ju kešig oro=tuqay kee=bAy. E+de dörben  
 Z423 kešig kešteül Qadaan mede=tügey. Basa kešteül  
 Z424 min-u beye caada ordo horci=n bayi=ju eüten  
 Z425 daru=ju kešte=tügey. Kešteül-ece ordo-tur  
 Z426 oro=ju qoyar haran tösürge bari=tuqay kee=n  
 Z427 jarliq bol=BA. Basa Qorci+n-i<sup>1149</sup> Yisün\_ töe Bükidey  
 Z428 Horqudaq Labalqa dörben kešig kešig bol=un  
 Z429 qor aqsa=quy-a turqa+ud-un dörben kešig kešig-tür  
 Z430 aci+d-un<sup>1150</sup> qorci+n-iyar jasa=ju oro=ldu=tuqay kee=n jarliq  
 Z431 bol=BA. Basa turqa+ud-un keši+üd-ün ötögü+s-i urida  
 Z432 mede=n a=qsa+d-un uruq-aca tüši=rün Urida mede=n~ a=qsan  
 Z433 Alciday Qo<sup>n</sup>qortaqaq qoyar eyetü=ldü=jü niken kešig  
 Z434 turqa+ud-i jasa=ju oro=tuqay. Temüder Jegü qoyar  
 Z435 eyetü=ldü=jü niken kešig turqa+ud-i jasa=ju oro=tuqay.  
 Z436 Ma<sup>n</sup>qutay gejegeleül-i mede=ed niken kešig turqa+ud-i  
 Z437 jasa=ju oro=tuqay. Basa qahan jarliq bol=urun Büri+n

---

1147: YCPS qaqaq jasatuqay emended (by Pelliot) by the addition of [sauju] between these two words, on the basis of parallelism with lines Z414, Z416. This addition is shown in Kurib1.598, and seemingly accepted by de Rachewiltz (deR4.211).

1148: YCPS ordo-yin jewün emended (Haenisch and Pelliot) by the addition of [baraun] between these two words, on the basis of parallelism with lines Z411, Z413.

1149: Referential object; see note to 1126, and Street13.14.

1150: Plural of aci 'bodyguard', for which see references in deR4.1023.

- Z438 *noya+d Eljigidey-i aqala=ju Eljigidey-in üge-er*
- Z439 *yabu=dqun kee=ed basa jarliq bol=urun Kešig-tü*
- Z440 *güün kešig oro=quy-tur hoara=asu uridu jarliq-un*
- Z441 *yosu-ar qurban berie+s süyü=tügey. Mün kešig-tü*
- Z442 *güün basa nököe-te kešig hoara=asu doloan berie+s*
- Z443 *söyü=tügey. Basa mün güün ebedcin šiltaa ügey kešig-ün*
- Z444 *ötögü-tür eye ügey qutaar-ta kešig hoara=asu*
- Z445 *bidan-tur yabu=quy-an berkešiyen a=juu. Qucin doloan*
- Z446 *berie+s söyü=ed qola qajar-a nidün-ü ecine ile:=ye.*
- Z447 *Basa keši+üd-ün ötögü+s kešigle=gsen kešig-te+n-i ülü*
- Z448 *bügüd=ke=n kešig hoara=asu keši+üd-ün ötögü+s-i*
- Z449 *ereüle=ye. Basa keši+üd-ün ötögü+s qutaar qutaar*
- Z450 *kešig oro=quy-tur yeüdke=ldü=küy-tür ene jarliq*
- Z451 *kešig-te+n-e sonos=qa=tuqay. Jarliq sonos=uad bü=rün*
- Z452 *kešig-te+n kešig hoara=asu jarliq-un yosu-ar*
- Z453 *ereüle=ye. Ene jarliq kešig-te+n-e ese sonos=qa=asu*
- Z454 *keši+üd-ün ötögü+s aldal-ta+n bol=tuqay. Basa*
- Z455 *keši+üd-ün ötögü+s sacau+n oro=qsa+d min-u kešig-tü-yi*
- Z456 *bidan-aca eye ügey `Aqala=qda=bAy @ele' kee=n bu*
- Z457 *onji=tuqay<sup>1151</sup>. Jasaq könte=esü bidan-a jaa=tuqay. Ükü=ül=de=gü*
- Z458 *yosu-tu bö=esü bida mököri=ül=üd~ @je. Kese=e=gde=gü*
- Z459 *yosu-tu bö=esü bida söyü=d~ @je. `Aqala=qda=bAy' kee=n*
- Z460 *bidan-a ülü jaa=n öesü+d qar~ köl gür=ge=esü*
- Z461 *nudurqa-yin qariu nudurqa beriye-yin qariu beriye*
- Z462 *qari=ul=tuqay kee=bAy. Basa Qadana-du+s minqa+d-un*
- Z463 *noya+d-aca min-u kešig-te+n deere bu=y~ @je. Qadana^du+s*
- Z464 *jau+d-un harba+d-un noya+d-aca min-u kešig-te+n-ü kötöci+n*
- Z465 *deere bu=y~ @je. Qadana-du+s minqali+ud min-u*
- Z466<sup>121</sup> *kešig-te+n-tür kere=ldü=esü minqali+ud-ay-i ereüle=ye kee=n*
- Z467 *jarliq bol=BA.*
- Z469 (§279) *Basa Ögödey qahan ügüle=rün C<sup>n</sup>gis qahan ecige-yü-en*
- Z470 *joba=n bayi=ul=uqsan ulus-i bu jobo=a=ya. {<sup>1152</sup>Köl an-u köser-e*
- Z471 *{qar an-u qajar-a }talbi=ul=ju jirqa=ul=uya. Qahan*
- Z472 *ecige-yü-en belen-tür sau=ju irge ülü jobo=a=n*

---

1151: For the emendation see note to 9434.

1152: Poetry marked by all writers and repeated in Z558. Only Ligeti includes the following converb in the second poetic line.

Z473 *šülen-e*<sup>1153</sup> *e+de ulus-aca sürüg-ün niken šilegü qonin*  
 Z474 *hon hon-tur ög=tügey. J̄aun qoni+d-aca niken qonin qar=qa=ju*  
 Z475 *mün jaura ügeün duta^u+n-a ög=tügey. B̄asa aqa deü*  
 Z476 *olon ere aqta kešig-te+n ciul=uasu unda:n tere*  
 Z477 *tutum irgen-ece ker qubci=qda=quy. J̄üg jüg-ün minqa+d*  
 Z478 *minqa+d-aca geü+d qar=qa=ju saa=ad saalinci+n-ta+n-i*<sup>1154</sup>  
 Z479 *aduula=ad nuntu.ci-ta+n-i*<sup>1155</sup> *oroši=n töled qar=qa=ju*  
 Z480 *unuquci+n bol=tuqay. B̄asa aqa deü ciul=uasu öglige*  
 Z481 *soyurqal ög=üye. Āurasun süke+s*<sup>1156</sup> *qo+d numu+d quyaq*  
 Z482 *jebe sa^n+ud tüsür=cü balaqa+d saki=ul=uya. J̄üg jüg-ece*  
 Z483 *balaqaci+n amuci+n ilqaju saki=ul=tuqay. B̄asa ulus*  
 Z484 *irgen-e nuntuq usu qubiya=ju ög=üye. N̄untuq*  
 Z485 *nuntuqla=ul=quy-a*<sup>1157</sup> *minqa+d minqa+d-aca nuntuuci+n ilqa=ju*  
 Z486 *qar=qa=asu bol=quy@u:. B̄asa Cöl qajar-a göröesün-ece*  
 Z487 *busu ülü a=muy. Īrger-e auy-a~ saqud Canay Uyrur^tay*  
 Z488 *qoyar nuntuuci+n-i teriüle=jü Cöl-ün qudu+ud eri=ül=jü*  
 Z489 *qaši=tuqay. B̄asa bida elci+n haul=urun ulus bitü=ül=ün*  
 Z490 *haul=qa=muy. H̄aul=qu+n elci+n-ü ba yabudal udaan~ bu=y.*  
 Z491 *Ūlus irgen-e @ba jobola^n~ bu=y. Ēdöe bida oqoa-ta*<sup>1158</sup>  
 Z492 *oroši=ul=un jüg jüg-ün minqa+d minqa+d-aca jamuci+n ulaaci+n*  
 Z493 *qar=qa=ju sauri+d sauri+d jam talbi=ju elci+n-i qadaqa*  
 Z494 *ügey ulus-iyar ülü bitü=ül=ün jam-iyar haul=qa=asu*  
 Z495 *bol=quy@u:. Ē+de üyile+s-i Canay Bolqadar qoyar*  
 Z496 *uqa=ju bidan-a durad=qa=asu J̄öb~ a=quy@u.' kee=n sedki=jü*  
 Z497 *`Caaday aqa mede=tügey. Ē+de ügüle=gde=kü+n üyile+s*  
 Z498 *joki=quy bö=esü jöbšiyе=esü Caaday aqa-ca bol=tuqay'*  
 Z499 *kee=jü ile:=esü Caaday aqa asaқ=cu ile:=gsen*  
 Z500 *Ē+de @ele üyile+s-i bügüde-yi jöbšiyе=jü teyin*

---

1153: For 'soup' = 'sustenance, support [of the qaγan]', see deR4.1024 and references there.

1154: See note to Z540. Perhaps one should read this word without the first n.

1155: Cf. the nuntuucin of lines X058, Z404, Z485, Z488, and deR4.838. Earlier editors added a q after tu, as in the verb nuntu[q]la= of lines Z485

1156: Here '[gold and silver] ingots', but literally 'axes' (deR4.1026).

1157: YCPS nuntulaulquy-a emended (Pelliot 118, Ligeti 256, etc.) to nuntuqlaulquy-a (i.e. nuntu[q]laulquy-a).

1158: For this word see Most/Cl.576 (HJAS 1952).



Z501 bö=ed ki=tügey kee=jü ire=jüüy. Basa Caaday aqa  
Z502 ügüle=jü ire=rün Bi ende-ce jam+ud esergü  
Z503 bari=ldu=ul=suqay. Basa ende-ce<sup>1159</sup> Batu-tur elci+n  
Z504 ile:=sügey. Batu @ber esergü jam+ud-iyān  
Z505<sup>122</sup> bari=ldu=ul=tuqay ke:=ed basa ügüle=jü ire=rün Bügüden-ece  
Z506 jam+ud talbi=ul=qu üyile jöb-ece<sup>1160</sup> jöb  
Z507 durad=qa=juuy kee=jü ire=jüüy.  
Z519 (§280) Tende-ce Ögödey qahan ügüle=rün Caaday aqa Batu teriü-te+n  
Z520 baraun qar-un köü+d aqa+nar deü+ner büri+n Odcigin  
Z521 noyan Yegü teriü-te+n jewün qar-un aqa+nar deü+ner büri+n  
Z522 köü+d qol-un öki+d gürige+d tüme+d-ün minqa+d-un jau+d-un  
Z523 harba+d-un noya+d büri-yer jöbšiyе=jüüy. Jöbšiyе=rün  
Z524 Dalay-in qahan-u šülen-e hon-tur sürüg-ün niken šilegü  
Z525 irge qar=qa=asu yaun~ bu=y. Jaun qoni+d-aca niken jusaq  
Z526 qar=qa=ju ügeün duta^u+n-a ög=küy<sup>1161</sup> sayin~ bu=y. Jam talbi=ul=ju  
Z527 jamuci+n ulaaci+n qar=qa=asu olon ulus-a amuqula<sup>n</sup>  
Z528 elci+n-e @ber yabu=quy-a ilübbe bu=y' kee=esü  
Z529 büri-yer @ele jöbšiyе=jüüy kee=n qahan-u jarliq  
Z530 Caaday aqa-tur eyetü=jü Caaday aqa-da jöbšiyе=gde=jü  
Z531 büri+n ulus-aca jüg jüg-ün minqa+d minqa+d-aca qahan-u  
Z532 jarlig-iyar hon hon-tur šülen-e sürüg-ece niken~ šilegü  
Z533 irge jaun qoni+d-aca niken jusaq~ qonin qar=qa=ul=bAy.  
Z534 Geü+d qar=qa=ul=ju unuquci+n sau=:f=bAy. Unuquci+n  
Z535 balaqaci+n amuci+n qar=qa=ul=bAy. Jamuci+n ulaaci+n-i  
Z536 qar=qa=ulju saurin sauri+d-un qajar caqla=ul=ju jam  
Z537 talbi=ul=urun Aracan<sup>1162</sup> Toqucar qoyar-i jasa=ul=ju jam  
Z538 niken saurin-tur qorin ulaaci+n bol=qa=BA. Saurin  
Z539<sup>123</sup> tutum-tur qoriad ulaaci+n bol=qa=bAy. Ulaan-u aqta+s  
Z540 šüüsün-ü qoni+d saali+n<sup>1163</sup> geü+d telegen-tür köl=gü

---

1159: YCPS has glossing division before rather than after the de.

1160: YCPS jöbece emended to jöbece (i.e. jöb<e>ece). Ligeti tacitly made this emendation; deR72.172 shows it with <e>.

1161: YCPS öküy emended (by Haenisch and Pelliot) to ökgüy (i.e. ö[g]küy).

1162: The final syllable here is written by a character nowhere else occurring in the SH; it could represent either can or jan in Mongolian. See discussion in deR4.1030-31.

1163: Editions of Haenisch, Pelliot, Ligeti, and de Rachewiltz all erroneously show saarin here, though both C and PP have the l. Shiratori's edition romanizes correctly, as does Kurib1.610. In CMo. it is sayali.

Z541 *hüker terge+d ende-ce bidan-aca kemle=gšen*  
 Z542 *kem-ece* {<sup>1164</sup>*oqor bugi duta=ul=uasu* }*orqol-iyar*  
 Z543 *qaqas aldal-ta+n bol=tuqay*. {Q*albuqa kekesün duta=ul=uasu*  
 Z544 {*qabar qaqas aldal-ta+n bol=tuqay* }*kee=n jarliq bol=BA*.  
 Z549 (§281) Ögödey qahan ügüle=rün E*cige-yü-en yeke oron-tur sau=ju*  
 Z550 *qahan ecige-yin qoyina üyiled=ügsen min-u Jaqu+d-un*  
 Z551 *irgen-tür ayala=ju Jaqu+d irgen muqudqa=BA bi*.  
 Z552 N*ököe üyile min-u elci+n bidan-u jaura öterle=n*  
 Z553 *haul=quy basa kereg~ jarag-iyar jöe=ül=güy-e jam+ud*  
 Z554 *talbi=ul=BA*. B*asa nököe üyile usu ügey qajar-a*  
 Z555 *qudu+ud eri=ül=jü qar=qa=ul=ju ulus irgen*  
 Z556 *usun ebesün-e gür=ge=ül=BA*. B*asa jüg jüg balaqa+d-un*  
 Z557 *irgen-tür alginci+n tammaci+n talbi=ju ulus irgen-ü*  
 Z558 {<sup>1165</sup>*köl köser-e* }*qar qajar-a* }*talbi=ul=ju a=ul=BA bi*.  
 Z559 Q*ahan ecige-yü-en qoyina dörben üyile+s*<sup>1166</sup> *neme=BA~ @je*.  
 Z560 B*asa qahan ecige-de-en yeke~ oro @ba sau=lda=ju olon*  
 Z561 *ulus-iyar deere min-u aci=ju od=ta=ju bö=ed*<sup>1167</sup> *bor*  
 Z562 *darusun-a ilaq=da=qu min-u buruu bol=BA*. N*iken buruu*  
 Z563 *min-u ene bol=BA~ @je*. N*ököe buruu yosu ügey*  
 Z564 *eme~ güün-ü üge-tür oro=ju Odcigin abaqa-yin*  
 Z565 *ulus-un öki+d abcira=ul=qu aljias bol=BA~ @je*. U*lus-un*  
 Z566 *ejen qahan böe=tele yosu ügey aljias üyile-tür*  
 Z567 *döles=ge=gü min-u niken buruu ene bol=BA~ @je*. B*asa*  
 Z568 *Doqolqu-yi kegesüle=gü niken buruu*. 'K*er buruu*' *ke:=esü*  
 Z569 *qan ecige-yin min-u tus-u-an emüne ölümlle=gü Doqolqu-yi*  
 Z570 *kegesüle=gü buruu aljias*. E*döe min-u emüne*  
 Z571 *ken teyin ölümlle=jü ög=gü*. Q*ahan ecige-yin min-u büri+n-ü*  
 Z572 *emüne dörö kiciye=gü güün-i ülü uqa=n*  
 Z573<sup>124</sup> *öyisüled=ügsen-iyen*<sup>1168</sup> *öer-iyen buruuşiyA=BA bi*. B*asa* 'T*e*<sup>n</sup>*geri qajar-aca*

---

not saari, which is 'milch animal'. (For the suffix li of deverbal nouns, see PoppeGWM §162, p. 47.)

1164: Kozin (and following him, de Rachewitz) distinguishes two shorter poetic lines here starting with a.

1165: Repeated from Z470.

1166: YCPS üyis emended (by Haenisch and Pelliot) to üyiles (i.e. üyil[le]s).

1167: See note to 3081.

1168: For this verb, 'to secretly harm', and related forms (some with back harmony) see deR4.1036-37.

- Z574 jayaa-tu törö=gšen göröesün-i aqa deü jüg od=uuji'  
Z575 kee=n qaramla=ju qurua yourqa nödü=ül=jü jedgü=jü  
Z576 a=qu~ bol=un aqa deü-dece cimaliqay üge sonos=BA bi.  
Z577 Buruu~ @gü bol=BA. Qahan ecige-yü-en qoyina dörben  
Z578 üyile+s neme=be~ @je bi. Dörben üyile+s buruu  
Z579 bol=juuy~ @je kee=be.  
Z584 (§282) Yeke qurilta qurı=ju quluqana jil quran sara-da  
Z585 Kelüren-ü Ködee\_ aral-un Dolban<sup>1169</sup> boldaq-a Šilginceg<sup>1170</sup>  
Z586 qoyar jaura ordo+s bawu=ju bü=küy-tür bici=jü dawus=BA.

---

1169: Capitalization added.

1170: There is a lacuna here; for this entire section, see MostSQP.258-65 (= HJAS 15.388-95), deR4.1039-43 and sources there cited.

ENDNOTES:

1. C 1095 görü|esünü, with improperly located column-break.
2. C 1104 boluqsa|nu, with improperly located column-break.
3. C 1184 asaul|caqu, with improperly located column-break.
4. C 1195 ümere|ece,
5. C 1358 olu|yi
6. C 1439 üje|ülümü, with odd location of column-break at a point where PP has incorrectly a supra-normal space.
7. C 1468 eüten|tür
8. C 1492 oyisulaq|daa, with improperly located column-break, at a point where PP has a (misplaced?) glossing division.
9. C 2123 ügey|tür
10. C 2137 qorqo|laju, with improperly located column-break; PP has a single bracket for the whole form, within a single column.
11. C 2142 duta|aju, with improperly located column-break.
12. C 2170 irgen|düriyen
13. C 2178 qarki|tur
14. C 2257 qulaqci|ni, with incorrectly located column-break. PP has this sequence in a single column, but with a space between the parts.
15. C 2266 oro|ju, with improperly located column-break.
16. C 2427 derbelü|müy, with incorrectly located column-break; PP has the same sequence within a column, with added space between the parts.
17. C 2474 qoyina|ca
18. C 2491 keel|däjü, with incorrectly located column-break.
19. C 3084 qur|duniyan, with improperly located column-break in both C and PP.
20. C 3154 irgen|tür
21. C 3176 beki|yin
22. C 3179 quciulquy|tur
23. C 3183 toqurau|ni, with what is probably an improperly placed column-break. (PP has the whole sequence within a single line, with no glossing division.)
24. C 3252 Huliyatu|subcid, with an improperly located column-break inside the name.
25. C 3357 Qaralday|toquraun, with improperly located column-break.

26. C 3348 Jelme|tür. PP has the whole sequence within a single line, with no glossing division.
27. C 3388 terge|ürriyer, with an improperly located column break; PP has the whole sequence in one column, but with a space between the parts that are separated in C.
28. C 3401 keleleg|seni, with improperly located column-break; PP has the same sequence in a single column with a glossing division after the g.
29. C 3463 teü|reülsü, with an improperly located column break; PP has the whole sequence in one column, but with a space between the parts that are separated in C.
30. C 3496 ölje|ten; PP has the whole sequence in one column, but with a space between the parts that are separated in C.
31. C 4016 büküy|tür
32. C 4065 ö:r|türiyen
33. C 4074 aşgig|daju with what I take to be an improperly located column-break; PP has the sequence within a single column, but erroneously added a space between the would-be parts of the word. Such writings (found also at lines 4315-6, 4387-8, 4396-7, 4461-2, 4491-2) probably indicate a bad column-break in the Urtext. (In other cases, e.g. 4406-7, it seems clear that the bad break was introduced by the copyist of C, since PP has no break or glossing division in the form.)
34. C 4189 qurimlaquy|tur
35. C 4231 eüten|ece, with what may be an improperly located column-break; PP has the sequence in one column, with space between the parts.
36. C 4303 Tatar|tur
37. C 4316 ergü|ed with what I take to be an improperly located column-break; PP has both parts in a single column, with a space between. See note to 4074.
38. C 4359 quladu|ad with what I take to be an improperly located column-break; PP has the whole sequence within a single column, with a glossing division at the point where C has the column-break. See note to 4074.
39. C 4388 şilür|tejü with what I take to be an improperly located column-break; PP has the whole sequence within a single column, with a glossing division at the point where C has the column-break. See note to 4074.
40. C 4397 dotoaj|tu with what I take to be an improperly located column-break; PP has the whole sequence within a single column, with a glossing division at the point where C has the column-break. See note to 4074.
41. C 4407 ügü|lerün, with improperly located column-break. (PP has the whole sequence within a column, with no glossing division or space).
42. C 4462 ceri|üd, with what I take to be an improperly located column-break; PP has the same division over a column-break. See note to 4704.
43. C 4492 iquri|qaldun with what I take to be an improperly located column-break; PP has the whole sequence within a single column, with a glossing division at the point where C has the column-break. See note to 4074.

44. C 5077 mököriül|dekün
45. C 5116 saal|duju
46. C 5118 qan|lua
47. C 5153 ügü|lerün, with improperly located column-break.
48. C 5157 deünere|ce
49. C 5174 qadqul|duquyin, with improperly located column-break.
50. C 5181 Ulquyşilügeljid|te
51. C 5199 ger|tece
52. C 5205 qorqalaq|sad
53. C 5233 soyur|qaasu, with improperly located column-break at the point where PP has a misplaced glossing division, before the qa rather than after.
54. C 5238 üje|ed
55. C 5239 saurin|duriyan
56. C 5261 taniq|daqu
57. C 5274 Tögüs|bekiyi with improperly located column-break.
58. C 5283 gödöl|be
59. C 5284 daba|ulun
60. C 5309 qoco|rBA with improperly located column-break.
61. C 5366 amu|suqay
62. C 5369 ecige|lüe
63. C 5391 alau|na
64. C 5426 ügü|lejü, with improperly located column-break.
65. C 5459 keel|däjü with improperly located column-break.
66. C 5483 kee|jüüy
67. C 5494 Amancaqaan|keer with improperly located column-break.
68. C 5496 ügü|lerün with improperly located column-break (this fact indicated here by omission of bracket-ends at end and beginning of the columns).
69. C 5501 Merkidey|caqaan with improperly located column-break.
70. C 6025 ebü|riyer
71. C 6031 Jamuqa|daca

72. C 6053 köün|tür
73. C 6078 Quyildarse|cen
74. C 6094 Qorişilemüntaysi-yi
75. C 6113 ügü|lerün, with improperly located column-break.
76. C 6122 mökeeled|be
77. C 6137 Öködey|yin
78. C 6164 qacar|tur
79. C 6222 södürgen|tür
80. C 6238\* Taytemür|taysi; so PP
81. C 6269 keel|dügsenü, with improperly located column break; PP correctly has the glossing division after the dü rather than before.
82. C 6282 ecige|de
83. C 6302 ecige|düriyen
84. C 6305 külüü|diyen
85. C 6358 aqsa|ar
86. C 6359 dee|reecce, with improperly located column-break; PP also has the glossing division before the re rather than after.
87. C 6363 olondayin|tur, with incorrectly located column-break. (PP has a glossing division after olon but not after yin.)
88. C 6425 Sügegeyjeü|nü
89. C 6509 Jejee|ründürün
90. C 7161 qornumun|lüeben
91. C 7211 kebteül|tür
92. C 7220 irgen|tür
93. C 7270 Moñqol|tur
94. C 7455 köüd|lüeben
95. C 8121 Nayman|lua~
96. C 8170 anda|lua
97. C 8298 yisun~ aldall|tur
98. C 8340 qal|tur

99. C 8383 yisünalda|tur
100. C 9113 köl|düriyen
101. C 9215 Narintoori|la, with improper column-break. (PP has a glossing division before the la.)
102. C 9223 ciulqa|suqay
103. C 9281 Tarqutaykiril|tugi, with improper column-break. (PP correctly has a glossing division before gi.)
104. C 9340 qubi|aca
105. C X073 kebteül|lü
106. C X154 Bajigi|daca
107. C X215 bariqda|juu
108. C X332 Tebtengeri|tür
109. C X333 Temüge|odcigina
110. C X350 sögöd|ge|jüü; exactly so in PP. Surely the glossing division belonged after the ge rather than before, but in that case the error must have been in the Urtext.
111. C Y304 üges|türiyen
112. C Y307 üges|türiyen
113. C Y382 soltan|tur
114. C Y435 Iruisebür|tan
115. C Y508 daruqas|lua
116. C Z102 auljaquy|tur
117. C Z160 irgen|tür
118. See footnote to Kiwa in Z278.
119. C Z348 güün|tür
120. C Z369 ecige|tür
121. C Z466 keşigten|tür
122. C Z505 barilduul|tuqay
123. C Z539 tutum|tur
124. C Z573 öyisüledügse|niyen, with column-break at a point where PP has a glossing division.